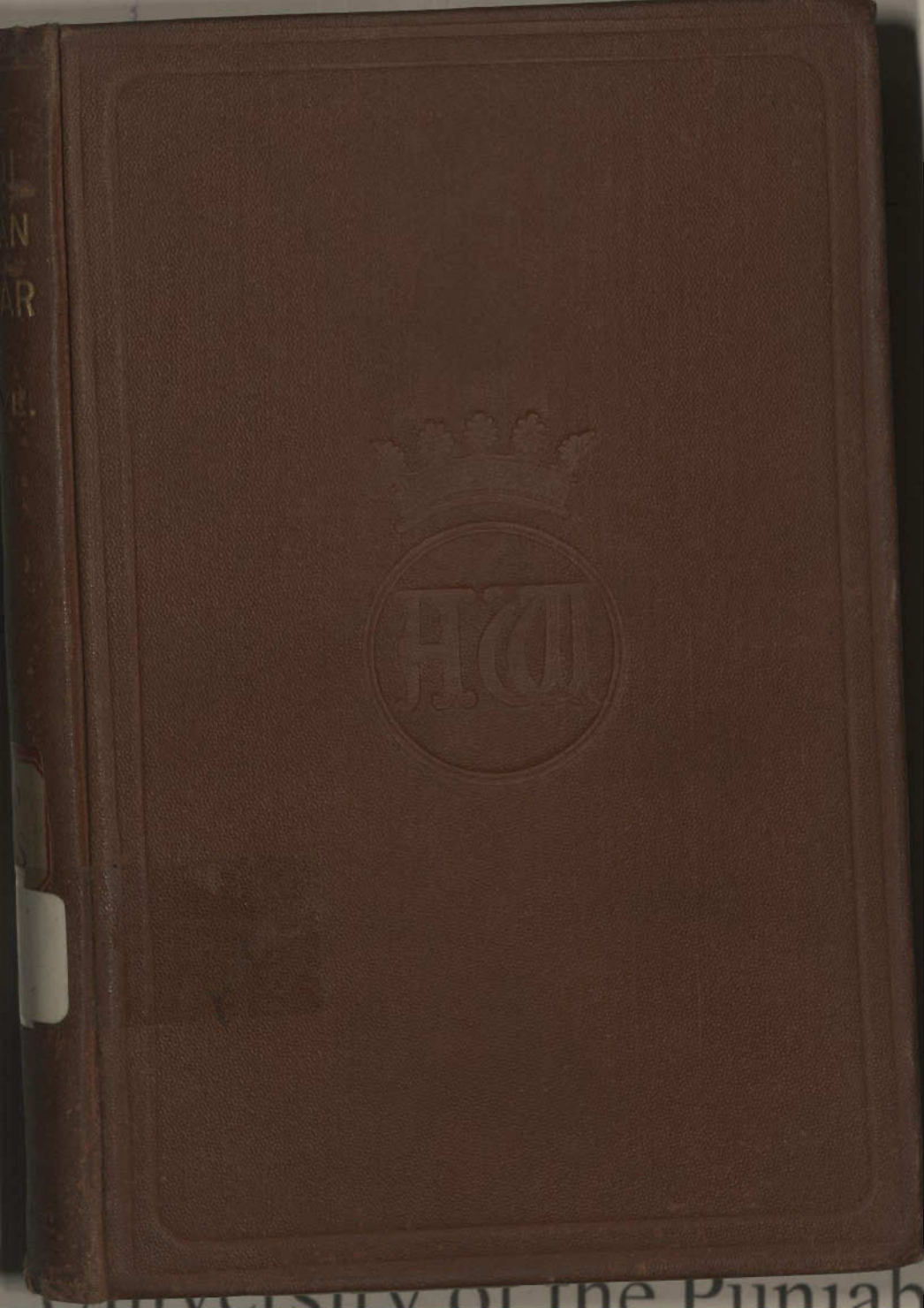
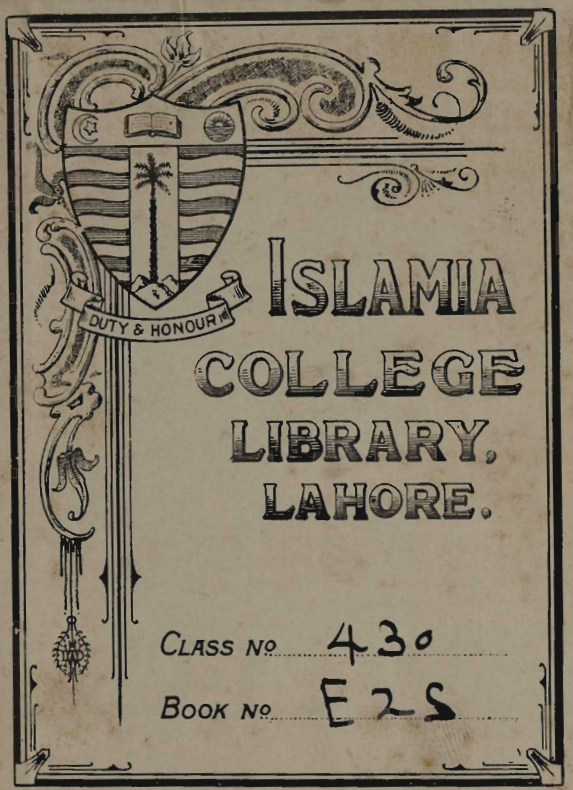


~~16359~~ 389
~~430~~ R.I.
LLEGE
3876
D BY



ise Book," and

d.

mois. *Brandt:*
-Chatrian: La
deau: Histoire
nte; Le Cabe-
. *Gautier:* Les
La Preneuse"
Napoléon avec

The Wellington
gives extracts
rs. It would
scribes a naval
Englishman to
nglish scholars
ach would be
icalities of the
setting these
that they are
ong'), it is well

this *Reader* is
modern French
authors. . . . Each extract is complete in itself, consisting either of a short story or of a description of some particular episode or phase of society."

Literary World.—"Amongst the means now adopted in order to increase the pleasure and relieve the drudgery of learning a foreign language, one of the best is the selection of more interesting extracts for reading than was formerly the case, and this tendency is very marked in *The Wellington College French Reader*. Pupils who have it placed in their hands are greatly privileged in comparison with those of a former generation. Stories and sketches from Erckmann-Chatrian, Jules Sandeau, Alphonse Daudet, and other writers who appeal to a contemporary French-reading public, are decidedly more entertaining than the models of correct writing who were formerly in vogue, while the advantage is gained of becoming accustomed to French as it is spoken and written at the present day. The *Reader* is intended for Middle School forms, as well as for some forms of an Upper School. The notes supplement the ordinary dictionaries by explaining difficult idiomatic passages."

LONDON: D. NUTT, 57-59, LONG ACRE.

M.A. SECTION

4
38

Uniform with the Wellington College French Grammar.

A SCHOOL GERMAN GRAMMAR.

By H. W. EVE, M.A.

SIXTH EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED.

Crown 8vo, xviii, 369 pp., cloth, 4s. 6d.

EXTRACTS FROM PRESS NOTICES.

Practical Teacher.—"We have carefully compared this Grammar with the best German Grammars, and we have no hesitation in saying that for lucidity of arrangement, quantity of matter, and general excellence, it surpasses every other German grammar with which we have compared it."

Literary World.—"Goes very thoroughly into the subject of which the author is evidently a complete master. . . . Mr. Eve has succeeded in producing a most complete and thorough Grammar . . . especially well adapted for advanced scholars and for self-teaching."

Scotsman.—"The methods in the accidence and syntax are excellent, the explanations perspicuous, the illustrations apt and illuminative."

Schoolmaster.—"We consider this a very good German grammar. The rules, paradigms, and examples are given with the utmost clearness, and presented in a form well adapted for committing to memory. The printing is remarkably clear and distinct. An admirable feature of the work is the multitude of short extracts, many of them small literary gems, from German authors, presented for the purpose of illustrating the rules of syntax. A separate translation of these is given in an Appendix."

An Abridgment of the above Work is

A SHORT

GERMAN ACCIDENCE & MINOR SYNTAX.

Crown 8vo, xv, 102 pp., cloth, 2s.

EXTRACTS FROM PRESS NOTICES.

Practical Teacher.—"To those who are familiar with the larger work, the present volume will stand in no need of an introduction."

Glasgow Herald.—"Handy and well-arranged."

Scotsman.—"Useful for pupils not far advanced enough to be able to cope with the more exacting work."

Educational Times.—"The rules are concise, and in general clearly given, and both examples and paradigms are well chosen. It is quite refreshing to meet with a short grammar based on the whole on scientific principles, which has also the merit of not professing to teach German conversation by the means of impossible sentences."

LONDON: D. NUTT, 57-59, LONG ACRE.

PUBLISHED BY DAVID NUTT.

WELLINGTON COLLEGE SERIES

FOR THE

STUDY OF FRENCH AND GERMAN.

By H. W. Eve, M.A., late Head Master of University College School, London; F. de Baudiss, Modern Language Master at University College School; the Rev. J. H. D. Matthews, Head Master of the Grammar School, Leeds; A. I. Calais, B.L.

THE WELLINGTON COLLEGE FRENCH GRAMMAR. By H. W. Eve & F. de Baudiss. Sixteenth Edition. 1904. 4s. (Embodying the *tolérances* approved by the French Ministry of Education.) ACCIDENCE, separately, 1s. 6d. Syntax, separately, 3s. 6d.

EXERCISES to accompany the above. By H. W. Eve and the Rev. J. H. D. Matthews. Eighth Edition. 1903. 1s. 6d.

KEY to ditto. For Teachers only. 5s. net.

THE WELLINGTON COLLEGE FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Adapted to the Wellington College French Grammar, and containing copious Exercises on the Accidence and the Minor Syntax. With full Vocabulary. By A. I. Calais. Crown 8vo. New Edition. 1905. Cloth, 3s. 6d.

KEY to the above, by L. A. Caumont (supplied to Teachers only). Cloth, 5s. net.

DITTO, EXERCISES ON THE LONGER SYNTAX. By A. I. Calais. Crown 8vo. Cloth, 1s. 6d.

THE WELLINGTON COLLEGE FRENCH READER. Comprising stirring complete stories and narrative extracts from Alphonse Daudet, Erckmann-Chatrian, Jules Sandeau, Th. Gautier, Alf. de Vigny, J. H. de Brandt, L. Garneray, E. Souvestre, selected and annotated by A. I. Calais. Crown 8vo. Cloth, 2s. 6d.

A SCHOOL GERMAN GRAMMAR. Uniform with "The Wellington College French Grammar". By H. W. Eve. Sixth thoroughly Revised Edition. 1903. 4s. 6d.

A SHORT GERMAN ACCIDENCE AND MINOR SYNTAX. Abridged from the German Grammar. By H. W. Eve. Crown 8vo, xiv-106 pp., cloth, 2s.

FIRST GERMAN EXERCISES to accompany the German Accidence. By H. W. Eve and F. de Baudiss. Fifth Edition. 1904. Crown 8vo, 99 pp. Cloth, 2s.

KEY to ditto. For Teachers only. 5s. nett.

SECOND GERMAN EXERCISES to accompany the German Grammar. By H. W. Eve and F. de Baudiss. Crown 8vo, 140 pp. Cloth, 2s.

KEY to ditto. For Teachers only. 5s. nett.

AN ELEMENTARY GERMAN GRAMMAR for the use of Wellington College. By J. Y. Pearson and A. H. Fox Strangways. 3rd Edition. Cr. 8vo, vii-138. Cloth, 2s.

FRENCH AND GERMAN SELECTIONS FOR TRANSLATION AT SIGHT. By J. H. D. Matthews and H. A. Bull. 2nd edn. 1891. Two vols., each 1s. 6d.

ISLAMIA COLLEGE LIBRARY
Bk. No.....
LAHORE.

A SCHOOL GERMAN GRAMMAR

ALLAMA IQBAL'S
No. 259
PERSONAL COLLECTION



262

JAMIA COLLEGE LIBRARY
Bk. No.....
LAHORE.

A SCHOOL
GERMAN GRAMMAR

ALLAMA IQBAL'S
No. 259
PERSONAL COLLECTION

BY

H. W. EVE, M.A.

Head Master of University College School, London.
Late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Uniform with the Wellington College French Grammar.

SIXTH EDITION.

SEVENTEENTH TO NINETEENTH THOUSAND

REVISED AND ENLARGED.

LONDON:
DAVID NUTT, 57–59, LONG ACRE.

1903.

ALLAMA IQBAL'S
No. 259
PERSONAL COLLECTION

16359/3876
430
E25

LONDON :
PRINTED BY WERTHEIMER, LEA & CO.,
46 & 47, LONDON WALL, AND CLIFTON HOUSE,
WORSHIP STREET, FINSBURY E.C.

TO

THE REV. P. BOWDEN SMITH,

SENIOR ASSISTANT MASTER OF RUGBY SCHOOL,

THIS WORK

IS AFFECTIONATELY DEDICATED

BY HIS OLD PUPIL,

THE AUTHOR.



ALLAMA IQBAL'S
No. 259
PERSONAL COLLECTION

PREFACE TO THE FIFTH AND SIXTH EDITIONS.

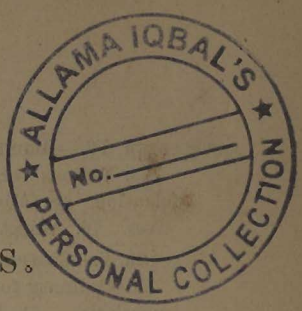
DR SIR MUHAMMAD IQBAL'S
COLLECTION.
Date.....

THESE editions have undergone further revision. In addition to the help given in revising previous editions by Professor Pogatscher, of Graz, and my colleagues, the late Professor Althaus and the late Mr. W. H. Widgery, my hearty thanks are due to Professor Walter Rippmann, of Bedford and Queen's Colleges. To his accuracy and scholarship, which he most generously placed at my disposal, I owe not only many minor corrections, but suggestions of great value. I have also to thank Mr. Bernard Gehrke, Ph.D., for some useful suggestions. The following paragraphs are new, or partly or wholly re-written:—6, 6A, 6B, 6C, 9, 36, 39, 203, 217A, 263, 269, 271, 280, 293B *Obs.*, 312, 313, 320 *Obs.* 2, 336A, 370 *Obs.* 1, 446, 446A, 446B, 467A, 488A, 517, 518, 518A, 547, 564.*

H. W. EVE.

LONDON, 2*nd January*, 1903.

* In the Sixth Edition, §§ 222, 283, 284, 355A, 366, 522, 583, 584, are new or re-written.



CONTENTS.

ACCIDENCE.

Page.

CHAPTER I.—INTRODUCTORY 1

1. Alphabet. 2. Modified vowels. 3. Other combinations of vowels. 4. Combinations of consonants. 5. Classification of consonants. 5A. Table. 5B. The glottal stop. 6. Grimm's Law. 6A. First shifting. 6B. Verner's Law. 6C. Second shifting. 7. The new orthography. 8. Notes on the characters. 9. Capitals and small letters. 10. Accent. 11. Quantity. 12. Emphasis—Stops. 13. Parts of speech. 14. The articles.

CHAPTER II.—DECLENSION OF NOUNS 13

15. General remarks. 16. Strong and weak declensions. 17. General rules. 18, 19. Weak declension—masculine. 20, 21. Weak declension—feminine. 22, 23. Strong declension—plural in er. 24—27. Strong declension—plural in e. 28, 29. Strong declension—plural without suffix. 30. Syncopated nouns. 31, 32. Mixed declension. 33. Declension of some Latin words. 34. Modern foreign nouns. 35. Proper names. 36. Surnames. 37. Christian names. 38. Classical names. 39. Geographical names. 40. Nouns with two plurals. 41. No plural of measures. 42. Borrowed plurals. 43. Compounds of Mann. 44. Nouns without singular.

CHAPTER III.—GENDER 31

45. Gender and sex. 46. Names of animals. 47. Trees, plants, &c. 48. Collective nouns. 49. Infinitives, &c. 50. Geographical names. 51. Roots of verbs. 52. Roots of verbs with t added. 53. Masculine endings. 54. Feminine endings. 55. Neuter endings. 56. Nouns ending in e. 57. Terminations el, en, er. 58. Exceptions—feminines in el 59. neuters in el; 60. feminines in er; 61. neuters in er; 62. neuters in en. 63. Nouns with double gender. 64. Compound nouns.

Page.

CHAPTER IV.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES 40

65. Various forms. 66. Strong declension. 67. Weak declension. 68. Mixed declension. 69. Notes on some adjectives. 70. Adjectives used as nouns.

CHAPTER V.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 45

71. Ordinary formation. 72. Modification. 73. eſt or ſt in superlative. 74. Irregular comparisons. 75. Comparison of adverbs. 76. Comparison with mehr and meiſt. 77. Declension of comparatives and superlatives.

CHAPTER VI.—SUFFIXES OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES 48

78. Noun-endings. 79. er. 80. el. 81. in. 82. ung. 83. ing (ung). 84. chen and lein. 85. heit, keit. 86. e (feminine). 87. ſchaft. 88. tum. 89. niš. 90. ſal, ſel. 91. ei. 92. Adjectival endings en, ern. 93. ig. 94. icht. 95. iſch. 96. bar. 97. ſam. 98. lich. 99. haft, haftig.

CHAPTER VII.—PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES ... 55

100. Declension of personal pronouns. 101. Notes on declension. 102. Pronouns of address. 103. Reflexive pronouns. 104. Reflexive for reciprocal. 105. Use of ſelbſt. 106. Possessive adjectives. 107. Declension of possessive adjectives. 108. Correspondence of pronouns. 109. Possessive pronouns. 110. Mein, dein, undeclined. 111. Notes on possessives. 112. Demonstrative der. 113. Dieſer and jener. 114. Neuters dieſes and das. 115. Other demonstratives. 116. Solch, *such*. 117. Relative pronouns. 118. *Whoever*, *whatever*. 119. Interrogative pronouns. 120. Interrogative adjectives. 121. Indefinite pronouns and adjectives. 122. Ein and kein. 123. Man, *one*, *people*. 124. Etwas, nichts. 125. Jemand, niemand. 126. *Some*, *any*. 127. Distributive pronouns and adjectives. 128. Reciprocal pronoun.

CHAPTER VIII.—NUMERALS 67

129. List of numerals. 130. Use of ein. 131. Declension of cardinals. 132. Form in er. 133. Use of beide. 134. Fractions. 135. Decimals, &c. 136. Time, days of month. 137. Miscellaneous numerals.

CHAPTER IX.—VERBS, INTRODUCTORY AND AUXILIARIES ... 72

138. Moods. 139. Tenses. 140. Conditional mood. 141. Use of auxiliaries. 142. Strong and weak conjugations. 143. Conjugation of haben. 144. Conjugation of ſein. 145. Conjugation of werden.

Page.

CHAPTER X.—VERBS CONTINUED—SPECIMENS OF CONJUGATION 77

146. Conjugation of weak verb with haben; 147. of strong verb; 148. of neuter verb with ſein; 149. of passive voice. 150. Notes on the passive. 151. Passive form with ſein. 152. Reflexive verbs. 153. Compound verbs. 154. Conjugation of separable verb; 155. of inseparable verb. 156. Impersonal verbs. 157. Conjugation of es giebt, &c. 158. Persons with impersonals.

CHAPTER XI.—VERBS CONTINUED—FORMATION OF TENSES, PREFIXES, &c. ... ...

159. General Principles. 160. Participles. 161. Omission of ge. 162. Subjunctive. 163. Imperative. 164. Classes of strong verbs. 165. First group—brechen. 166. Second—meſſen. 167. Third—ſcheinen, reiten. 168. Fourth—fliegen. 169. Fifth—ſchlagen. 170. Sixth—ſingen, bergen. 171. Seventh—reduplicating. 172. Peculiarities of weak conjugation. 173. Mixed conjugation. 174. Verbs of mood. 175. Conjugation of verbs of mood. 176. Inseparable prefixes. 177. Doubtful prefixes. 178. Miß and voll. 179. Separable prefixes. 180. Combinations of prefixes. 181. Miscellaneous compounds. 182. Factitive verbs. 183. Strong participles.

CHAPTER XII.—ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS 110

184. Classification of adverbs. 185. Pronominal adverbs. 186. Adjectives as adverbs. 187. Adverbs formed by terminations. 188. Compound adverbs. 189. Miscellaneous adverbs. 190. Comparison of adverbs. 191. Superlative adverbs. 192. Erſt. 193. Schon. 194. Noch. 195. Doch. 195A. Wohl. 196. Auch. 197. Concessive adverbs. 198. *Now.* 199. *Therefore.* 200. *Then.* 201. *When.* 202. So. 203. Other adverbs. 204. Prepositions with accusative; 205. with dative; 206. with dative and accusative. 207. So-called prepositions with genitive. 208. Place of prepositions. 209. Classes of conjunctions. 210. *And, or, nor.* 210A. *Nor.* 211. Disjunctives. 212. Aber, ſondern. 213. Other adversatives. 214. *The—the.* 215. *As.* 216. *Before* and *after.* 217. *Since.* 217A. Adverbs as conjunctions.

CHAPTER XIII.—PREFIXES TO VERBS 117

218. General.

Page.

A.—Inseparable Prefixes 117

219. Be. 220. Ent. 221. Er. 222. Ge. 223. Hinter. 224. Ver. 225. Wider. 226. Zer.

B.—Separable Prefixes 125

227. Ab. 228. An. 229. Auf. 230. Aus. 231. Bei. 232. Dar. 233. Ein. 234. Empor. 235. Fort. 236. Hin and her. 237. Los. 238. Mit. 239. Nach. 240. Nieder. 241. Ob. 242. Vor. 242A. Weg. 243. Wieder. 244. Zu. 245. Compound prefixes.

C.—Doubtful Prefixes 134

246. General principles. 247. Transitive compounds of intransitives. 248. Change of accusative. 249. Other compounds of transitive verbs. 250. Durch. 251. Über. 252. Um. 253. Unter. 254. Hinter. 254A. Prefixes to nouns.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.—PRELIMINARY REMARKS 142

255. Simple sentence. 256. Subject and attribute. 257. Finite verb. 258. Copulative verbs. 259. Extension of predicate, &c. 260. Imperative and interrogative sentences. 261. Complex sentences.

CHAPTER II.—CONCORD OF VERB AND SUBJECT 145

262. First concord. 263. Two or more nouns. 264. Different persons. 265. Collective nouns and nouns of multitude. 266. Agreement with logical subject. 267. Sein agreeing with complement. 268. Impersonal use of verbs. 269. Titles with plural verbs. 270. Ellipsis of subject.

CHAPTER III.—APPOSITION—THE APPOSITIVE COMPLEMENT ... 149

271. Apposition—Agreement in case. 272. Agreement of gender. 273. Names of towns, &c. 274. Noun in apposition to sentence. 275. Complement after copulative verbs. 276. Other constructions after copulative verbs. 277. Verbs of naming, making. 278. Construction after such verbs. 279. Als inserted. 280. Exceptions to rules of apposition, etc.

CHAPTER IV.—THE ARTICLES—DIFFERENT CLASSES OF NOUNS 153

281. Proper and common nouns. 282. Abstract and concrete. 283. Definite article with abstract nouns. 284. Ar-

Page.

ticle with proper nouns. 285. Parts of the body. 286. Indefinite article and numeral. 287. Coupled nouns. 288. Article omitted in proverbs, &c. 289. Familiar combinations. 290. Genitive before governing noun. 291. Plural of measures. 292. Article repeated. 293. Nouns without article uninflected. 293A. Indefinite article in apposition. 293B. Coalescence of article with preposition.

CHAPTER V.—ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES 160

294. Second concord. 295. Ellipsis of nouns. 296. Compound nouns. 297. Adjective with dependent words. 298. Adjectives uninflected. 299. Adjectives as appositive complements. 300. Secondary predicates. 301. Undeclined participle refers to subject. 302. Adjectives not epithets. 303. Epithets only. 304. Two forms of superlative. 305. Comparison of participles, &c. 306. Mehr not comparative. 307. *A most.* 308. Neuter adjective as noun. 309. Neuter used for persons. 310. Strong and weak form. 311. Inflexion after einige, &c. 312. Manch. 313. All. 314. Viel, wenig. 315. Mehr, mehrere. 316. Solch. 317. Ganz, halb, undeclined. 318. Adjective after personal pronouns. 319. Indeclinables in er. 320. Inflexion dropt.

CHAPTER VI.—ACCUSATIVE CASE 172

321. Meaning of accusative. 322. Space and time. 323. Time when. 324. Extent, weight, measure. 325. Nearer object. 326. German and English transitives. 327. Compounds of be. 328. Cognate accusative. 329. Accusative analogous to cognate. 330. Double accusative. 331. Reflexive verbs. 332. Impersonal verbs. 333. Es giebt. 334. Construction of laſſen, &c. 335. Adjectives with accusatives. 336. Accusative absolute. 336A. Intransitive verbs with object.

CHAPTER VII.—DATIVE CASE 179

337. Uses of dative. 338. Remoter object. 339. *To belong, to be due.* 340. Taking away. 341. Adjective with *to be.* 342. Sein, &c., impersonal. 343. Other impersonals. 344. Elliptical expressions. 345. Intransitive verbs. 346. Folgen, begegnen. 347. Dative of person interested. 348. Dative for possessive. 349. Ethic dative. 350. Prepositions with dative. 351. Compound verbs. 352. Passive of verbs with dative. 353. Verbs of motion. 354. Compounds with be. 355. Dative for possessive.

Page

CHAPTER VIII.—GENITIVE CASE 1-8

356. Meaning of the genitive. 357. Genitive depending on a noun. 358. Genitive or von after nouns. 359. Subjective and objective. 360. Subjective and possessive. 361. Objective genitive. 362. Equivalent of objective genitive. 363. Partitive genitive. 364. After adverbs of quantity. 365. Elliptical after verb. 366. Apposition for partitive genitive. 367. Material or quality. 368. With verbs and adjectives. 369. Participation. 370. Fulness, emptiness. 371. Removal, separation. 372. Verbs. &c., of feeling. 373. Remembering, desiring. 374. Accusing, reminding. 375. Adjectives with genitive. 376. Adverbial expressions.

CHAPTER IX.—THE CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS 200

377. Original meaning. 378. Metaphorical. 379. Place of preposition and case in sentence. 380. Combinations of preposition and adverb of place.

CHAPTER X.—PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE ... 202

381. General. 382. An. 383. Auf. 384. Hinter. 385. In. 386. Neben. 387. Über. 388. Unter. 389. Vor. 390. Zwiſchen.

CHAPTER XI.—PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE ONLY 214

391. Aus. 392. Außer. 393. Bei. 394. Binnen. 395. Entgegen. 396. Gegenüber. 397. Gemäß. 398. Mit. 399. Nach. 400. Nebſt, ſamt. 401. Seit. 402. Von. 403. Zu.

CHAPTER XII.—PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE ONLY ... 224

404. Durch. 405. Für. 406. Gegen and wider. 407. Ohne, ſonder. 408. Um.

CHAPTER XIII.—PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES ... 227

409. Pronouns of address. 410. Du. 411. Ihr. 412. Sie. 413. Er or Sie singular. 414. Es representing noun, &c. 415. When es cannot be so used. 416. Es introductory. 417. Es with impersonals. 418. Es pleonastic. 419. Sich reciprocal. 420. *His, its.* 421. Dieſer, jener. 422. Relative and antecedent. 423. Antecedent of third person. 424. Antecedent of personal pronoun. 425. Der in genitive. 426. Der or welcher. 427. Der or welcher continued. 428. Antecedent omitted. 429. Was as relative. 430. Adjective in relative clause. 431. *Such as.* 432. Compounds of wo. 433. Wer interrogative. 434. *Any.*

Page.

CHAPTER XIV.—THE TENSES 239

435. Classification of tenses. 436. Present. 437. Historical present. 438. Present for future. 439. Present indicative for imperative. 440. Present imperfect for present perfect. 441. Past imperfect for past perfect. 442. Imperfect and perfect. 443. Future. 443A. Conditional. 444. Double perfect and pluperfect. 445. Imperative. 446. Substitutes for imperative. 446A. Wishes, &c. 446B. Periphrastic forms.

CHAPTER XV.—INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES 247

447. Infinitive a verbal noun. 448. Infinitive converted into a noun. 449. Infinitive with zu, or supine. 450. Infinitive or supine as subject. 451. Supine in apposition. 452. Infinitive or supine as appositive complement. 453. Infinitive as object. 454. Supine as object. 455. Supine depending on nouns. 456. Supine denoting purpose. 457. Supine after haben. 458. Supine with adjectives. 459. Supine with prepositions. 460. English gerund after prepositions. 461. Supine as complement in passive sense. 462. Participial form. 463. Loose use of present participle. 464. Ellipsis. 465. Participles as adjectives. 466. Past participle of neuter verbs. 467. Past participle with verbs of motion. 467A. Impersonal use.

CHAPTER XVI.—AUXILIARIES—PASSIVE VOICE 253

468. Intransitives with ſein. 469. Variable auxiliary. 470. Ellipsis of auxiliaries. 471. Auxiliaries of passive. 472. Passive of intransitives. 473. Middle voice. 474. Imperative passive.

CHAPTER XVII.—THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD 259

475. Omission of zu. 476. Compound tenses. 477. Place of auxiliary. 478. *Could have, should have.* 479. Perfect infinitive with verbs of mood. 480. Verbs used as auxiliaries. 481. Müſſen. 482. Sollen. 483. Können. 484. Dürfen. 485. Mögen. 486. Laſſen. 487. Wollen. 488. Pleonastic use. 488A. Elliptical use.

CHAPTER XVIII.—ORDER OF WORDS 267

489. Parts of a simple sentence. 490. Declaratory sentence. 491. Verbs always second. 492. Interrogative sentences. 493. Place of complement. 494. Place of objects. 495. Adverbial additions. 496. Participles and infinitives. 497. Co-ordinate sentences. 498. Subordinate sentences. 499. Apparent exception after als. 500. Adverbial sentences. 501. Irregularities.

Page.

CHAPTER XIX.—THE COMPLEX SENTENCE—INTRODUCTORY ... 275

502. Substantival sentences. 503. Enunciation. 504. Interrogation. 505. Petition. 506. Adjectival sentences. 507. Adjectival sentences with antecedent omitted. 508. Adverbial sentences.

CHAPTER XX.—SUBSTANTIVAL SENTENCES 279

509. Declaratory sentences. 510. Declaratory sentences as subject, object, &c. 511. In apposition to compounds of da. 512. Subjunctive with dadurch, &c., daß. 513. Supine in apposition. 514. Supine as object. 515. Subject of supine. 516. Interrogative sentences.

CHAPTER XXI.—OBLIQUE ORATION... 282

517. Meaning of oblique oration. 518. Mood and tense. 518A. Verb of saying implied. 519. Form and order. 520. Apposition. 521. Imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. 522. Untrue statements. 523. True statements. 524. Als ob nearly equals *that*. 525. Sequence of tenses. 526. Imperative. 527. Oblique petition. 528. Infinitive in oblique petition. 529. Hoping and fearing. 530. Oblique interrogation. 531. Repeated questions. 532. Subordinate sentences in oblique oration. 533. Implied oblique oration.

CHAPTER XXII.—CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES 291

534. Dependent on ſo, derart, &c. 535. Ellipsis of ſo. 536. Subjunctive in consecutive sentences. 537. Adjectival sentences. 538. Als daß. 539. Ohne daß. 540. Supine.

CHAPTER XXIII.—FINAL SENTENCES 294

541. Adverbial with damit, daß. 542. Indicative. 543. Supine. 544. Auxiliaries of mood. 545. Adjectival final sentences.

CHAPTER XXIV.—SENTENCES OF TIME, PLACE, CAUSE, &c. ... 296

546. Wenn and other words. 547. Als, da. 548. Wie. 549. Während, indem. 550. Tenses with ſeit, ſeitdem. 551. Subjunctive with bis, ehe. 552. *Hardly...when; no sooner ...than.* 553. *Only when.* 554. *When* with antecedent. 555. *Wherever, whenever.* 556. *When* rendered by worauf. 557. Indicative in causal sentences. 558. Da and weil. 559. Use of da. 560. Als, wie. 561. Insertion of negative. 562. Sentences beginning with ſo. 563. *The...the* before comparatives. 564. *As if.*

Page

CHAPTER XXV.—CONDITIONAL AND CONCESSIVE SENTENCES... 302

565. Protasis and apodosis. 566. Forms of conditional sentence. 567. Present time. 568. Past time. 569. Future time. 570. Other conjunctions meaning *if*. 571. Ellipsis of *if*. 572. Condition in another form. 573. Modest statement. 574. Apodosis in another form. 575. Inconsistency of tenses. 576. Conditional sentence adjectival. 577. Concessive sentences. 578. Compounds of ob. 579. Omission of ob and wenn. 580. Es sei denn, daß. 581. Adjectival form. 582. *Whether...or*. 583. Wer for wenn einer. 584. Imperfect subjunctive in reported news.

APPENDIX I.

TRANSLATIONS OF EXAMPLES IN SYNTAX.

(*See Page* 311.)

APPENDIX II.

GOVERNMENT OF SOME VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

(*See Page* 334.)

APPENDIX III.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

(*See Page* 343.)

ADDENDA AND CORRIGENDA.

283A. Article with prepositions 154
284. Article with names of persons 155
284A. Geographical Names 155
355A. Rufen, gelten, &c. 187

Chapter I.—Introductory.

1. ALPHABET.—The German alphabet consists of 26 letters, and closely resembles the English alphabet. The Black-letter characters are used in newspapers and works of general literature; the Roman characters in scientific works, including many theological and some historical books.

The letters are as follows, their names being *phonetically* spelt in English :—

𝔄	𝔞,	A	a,	ah	𝔑	𝔫,	N	n,	enn
𝔅	𝔟,	B	b,	bay	𝔒	𝔬,	O	o,	o
ℭ	𝔠,	C	c,	tsay	𝔓	𝔭,	P	p,	pay
𝔇	𝔡,	D	d,	day	𝔔	𝔮,	Q	q,	koo
𝔈	𝔢,	E	e,	ay	𝔯	r,	R	r,	err
𝔉	𝔣,	F	f,	eff	𝔖	𝔰, ſ,	S	s,	ess
𝔊	𝔤,	G	g,	gay	𝔗	𝔱,	T	t,	tay
ℌ	𝔥,	H	h,	hah	𝔘	𝔲,	U	u,	oo
ℑ	𝔦,	I	i,	ee	𝔙	𝔳,	V	v,	fou
𝔍	𝔧,	J	j,	yot	𝔚	𝔴,	W	w,	vay
𝔎	𝔨,	K	k,	kah	𝔛	𝔵,	X	x,	ix
𝔏	𝔩,	L	l,	ell	𝔜	𝔶,	Y	y,	ypsilon
𝔐	𝔪,	M	m,	emm	ℨ	𝔷,	Z	z,	tset.

Beware of confusing 𝔅, 𝔘; ℭ, 𝔈, 𝔊; 𝔎, 𝔑; ſ, ſ.

The following are a few hints on the pronunciation of the letters. The vowels differ somewhat in sound according as they are long (—) or short (⏑). The English words chosen generally contain both the long and short vowel. It should be added that the English equivalents are necessarily only approximate. For further details and a more scientific treatment the student is referred to Sweet, Vietor, &c.

Characters.			Pronunciation.
𝔄	𝔞	...	as *a* in *păpā* (not as in *man*, *hat*), viz., a long or aa (Schaale, Aal) nearly as *calm*, *father*; a short (Schall, all), the same sound shortened (not as *shall*).
𝔅	𝔟	...	generally as *b*; when final, or at the end of a component of a compound word (ab-ſchreiben) like *p*.*
ℭ	𝔠	...	(occurring *alone* in foreign words only) as *k* before a, o, u, l, n, r; as *ts* before e, i, ä, ö, y; (for ch, ſch, ck, see § 4).
𝔇	𝔡	...	generally as *d*; when final or at the end of a syllable before another consonant, like *t*.
𝔈	𝔢	...	as *e* in *dĕmēsne* (pr. *demane*); final e always pronounced.
𝔊	𝔤	...	initial as *g* in *get*; final as ch; in the middle, like ch in the combination ige, with a tendency to the same pronunciation in other cases, as Tage, Züge.
ℌ	𝔥	...	as in English; after a vowel lengthens the sound.
ℑ	𝔦	...	as *i* in *quĭnīne*.
ℑ	𝔧	...	as *y* consonant.
𝔏	𝔩	...	not to be burked as it is in English *calm*.
𝔐	𝔪	...	as ordinary *n*, but before *g* and *k* as in *song*, *thank*.
𝔒	𝔬	...	as *o* in *prŏmōte* (not as in *pot*); a fuller sound than in English.
𝔔	𝔮	...	*qu* is between *kw* and *kv*; in fact = *k* + German *w*.
ℜ	𝔯	...	more burred than in English, but with the tongue rather than with the uvula as in French.
𝔖	𝔰 ſ	...	at the beginning of a word or between two vowels nearly as English *z*; elsewhere as English *s*.
𝔘	𝔲	...	as *u* in *Zūlū*, *i.e.*, as *oo* long or short.†
𝔙	𝔳	...	as *f*, but in foreign words like *v*.
𝔚	𝔴	...	as *v*, or nearly so.
𝔛	𝔵	...	as *ks*.
𝔜	𝔶	...	as *i*, but in obviously Greek words, as Gymnaſium, more like ü.
ℨ	𝔷	...	as *ts*, except in combinations ß and ʒ.

* The change is from a *medial* to the corresponding *tenuis*, as in *scrib-*, *scriptum*, *leg-*, *lectum*. In Middle High German the final consonants were written as pronounced.

† The ⌣ over *u* (*ŭ*) is a relic of *o*, *uo* in Middle High German being now represented by *u*.

2. MODIFIED VOWELS.—The vowels a, o, u, and the diphthong au, are sometimes combined with an *e*-sound to form fresh vowel-sounds, written Ä, Ö, Ü, Äu; ä, ö, ü, äu. The two dots represent an e, which used to be written above the other letter.

With capital letters e *was* written till the recent changes,* but *after* A, O, U; as Aepfel (but ähnlich). Oel (but öde), Uebel (but übel). The German for the modification of the vowel sound is **Umlaut**. It is due to the effort to assimilate the sound of an accented vowel in the first syllable to an i-sound in the following syllable, as in Graf, Gräfin. Hund, Hündin. The i of older German terminations is now often represented by e, as in Gräber, Söhne. But as e now represents, in unaccented syllables, several different vowels of the older language, no universal rule for the use of Umlaut can be given.

Ä, Ae, ä, Ä, Ae, ä...as German e, long or short, but more open (Fr. *è*).
Ö, Oe, ö, Ö, Oe, ö...as French *eu* (often rhymes with *e* short).†
Ü, Ue, ü, Ü, Ue, ü...as French *u* (often rhymes with *i* long).†

Obs. In a few words Ae, &c., belong to different syllables, as Aeronaut, soeben, großthueriſch.

3. OTHER COMBINATIONS OF VOWELS:—

Ai,	ai,	Ai,	ai	... as *ai* in *aisle* (in a few words ay, *ay* is found).
Au,	au,	Au,	au	... nearly as *ow* in *cow*, but with the *a*-sound more distinctly brought out.
Äu, Aeu, Eu,	äu, eu,	Äu, Aeu, Eu,	äu eu	between *oi* in *foil* and *i* in *side*.
Ei,	ei,	Ei,	ei	... as long *ī* in *side*.
Ie,	ie,	Ie,	ie	.. as *ie* in *field*. In many classical words, as Familie, Patrizier, the i and e are sounded separately.
Ui,	ui,	Ui,	ui	... nearly as Eng. *we*, but the stress is on the u.
Aa,	aa,	Aa,	aa	... long *a* (when modified becomes ä).
Oo	oo,	Oo,	oo	... long *o* (when modified becomes ö).

* *See* § 7. † These rhymes are only approximately correct, and generally found in the verses of Suabian poets, as Schiller.

4. COMBINATIONS OF CONSONANTS :—

Ch, ch, ... must be learned by practice—a sound between *h* and *k* is the nearest description * ; but chs in the root of a word=*ks* or *x*.†

— ck, ... as *k*.

— ng, ... as *ng* in *singer* (not as in *finger*, except when *n*, *g* belong to distinct parts of a word, as in un-gern, an-gehen. ‡

Pf pf, ... pronounce both letters with just a pause between.

Sc — ... as *s* followed by *z*, as in Scythe (*s-tseete*).

Sch, ſch, ... as *sh*.

Sp, ſp, ... as *shp* when it begins a word or syllable, as Spaß; in the middle or at the end of a word *s-p* as liſpeln, Taraſp.

St, ſt, ... as *sht* when initial, as Stadt, verſtehen; in the middle or at the end of a word *s-t* as luſtig, Raſt.

Sz, — ... begins a few foreign words, and is then pronounced as *s* if Hungarian (Szegedin=*seggedeen*), if Polish as *sh*.

— ß, ... as *s* (in Roman characters written *ss* (dass = daß).

Th, th, ... as *t* (the English *th* is not a German sound).

Tz, ʒ, ... as *ts* (or German z).

5. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS.—There are several ways of classifying consonants :—

(I.) According to the organs chiefly used in pronouncing them, or rather the place where the breath is stopped. The three principal classes are, *labials* or lip-sounds, *dentals* or tooth-

---

* There are really two pronunciations of ch; palatal (ich-sound), as in ich, durch, Pech, after consonants and front vowels ; and guttural (ach-sound), as in Dach, hoch, Tuch, after back vowels.

† In words derived from foreign languages, *ch* is generally pronounced like *k*, as Chor, Chriſt ; in some French words, as Charlatan, Charlotte, like *sh* In China, Chemie, the German sound is kept.

‡ In spite of the pronunciation, words like Finger, Hoffnungen, when ng is followed by a vowel, are divided into syllables between the consonants : Fin-ger, Hoff-nun-gen, but Eng-land. This is therefore only a rule for writing, not for speaking.

sounds, *gutturals* or throat-sounds. To these, *palatals*, represented in English by *y*, must be added.*

(II.) According to the duration of the sound, into (1) stops, *i.e.*, momentary, called also explosive, or closed sounds, and (2) continuants, or continuous sounds, including the trill *r*, and liquids, aspirates and sibilants.

The distinction is easily seen by comparing the pronunciation of *b* or *k* with that of *r* or *s*. In pronouncing *tar*, *pass*, it is possible to go on burring the *r* or hissing the *s* as long as breath is left in the lungs; we cannot do the same thing in pronouncing *tub*, *rock*; we can dwell on the vowel, but the consonant once passed, we cannot continue the sound, we must make a fresh start.

(III.) According to the absence or presence of *voice*. In pronouncing *p* or *k* we simply stop the breath; in pronouncing *b* or *g* we also set the vocal chords vibrating a little. Thus we have two groups: *voiceless* consonants, known also as *hard* or *tenues*, and *voiced* consonants, known as *soft* or *mediæ*.

As an illustration take the words *tack* and *tag*. In pronouncing the former we are conscious only of stopping the breath; in pronouncing the latter we can also detect a vibration of the vocal chords. The same applies to the two sounds of *th* in *sheath* (voiceless) and *sheathe* (voiced).

5a. TABLE. The following table shows the distribution:

	ENGLISH.				GERMAN.			
	Stops.		Continuants.		Stops.		Continuants.	
	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.
Labial	P	B	F	V	𝔓	𝔅	𝔉 𝔙	𝔚
Dental	T	D	baTH	baTHe	𝔗	𝔇		
Guttural ...	K	G			𝔎	𝔊	aℭ𝔥	iGe
Palatal				Y			iℭ𝔥	𝔍

* In modern books on Phonetics, a more delicate classification is given, which is beyond the scope of this book.

It will be noticed that in the English table the guttural continuants are wanting; the nearest approach to them is found in *y* and *h*. In German *th* is wanting; its place is taken for many purposes by the sibilants *s* and *z*.

The nasals *m*, *n*, *ng* fall into line, *m* belonging to the labial, *n* to the dental, and *ng* to the guttural group.

5*b*. THE GLOTTAL STOP. In English there is a tendency not to dwell on a voiceless stop (*p*, *t*, *k*). In German they are more distinctly pronounced, and the result is that the following vowel comes out with a minute explosion. Thus abirren is pronounced in three parts :—(1) *ap*; (2) an opening of the vocal chords, almost as if to clear the throat; (3) *irren*. The same applies to accented syllables beginning with the voiceless stops, as kann, Schein; the consonant is brought out more forcibly than in English, and it seems as if a fresh effort (breathing) were made in passing to the following vowel. Notice this especially in words like Knie, Gnade, Pferd. A similar breathing can be detected *before* a final voiceless stop following an accented vowel, as in Not dick.

6. GRIMM'S LAW. Teutonic is one branch of the Indo-European stock. For some unknown reason, a shifting (Lautverschiebung) of the original Indo-European consonants took place in Teutonic. In other words, while an Indo-European labial remains a labial in Teutonic, a dental a dental, and a guttural a guttural, the Indo-European tenuis becomes an aspirate in Teutonic, the aspirate a medial, and the medial a tenuis. These consonants are retained in the Low German dialects, of which English is one; High German, represented by the modern literary German, shifted them still further from the original Indo-European, turning the Low German aspirate into a medial, and so on. The law of these two shiftings is called after its discoverer "Grimm's Law." Greek and Latin generally retain the original Indo-European consonants.

6*a*. FIRST SHIFTING. (1.) The Indo-European tenuis (voiced—hard) becomes an aspirate in Teutonic. Thus:

in the labials, to πάτηρ (*pater*) answers *father* (Vater).
in the gutturals, to καρδία (*cor*) answers *heart* (Herz).
in the dentals, to τρεῖς (*tres*) answers *three*.

(2.) The Indo-European aspirate becomes a medial (voiced—soft). Thus:

in the labials, to φέρω (*fero*) answers *bear* (gebären).
in the gutturals, to χόρτος (*hortus*) answers *garden* (Garten).
in the dentals, to θύρα answers *door*.

(3.) The Indo-European medial becomes a tenuis. Thus:

in the labials, to τύρβη (*turba*) answers *thorp*.
in the gutturals, to ἀγρός (*ager*) answers *acre* (Acker).
in the dentals, to δύο (*duo*) answers *two*.

6*b*. VERNER'S LAW. There are, however, certain words in which the Indo-European tenues *p*, *k*, *t*, become not aspirates, as Grimm's Law would require, but medials, *b*, *g*, *d*. Such are heben compared with *capio*, *loud* with κλυτός and *inclitus*, zeigen with δείκνυμι and *dico*. It is found that this change takes place only in words in which the main accent follows the tenuis.

6*c*. SECOND SHIFTING. As above mentioned, High German, the literary language of Germany, exhibits a further set of shiftings, while Low German and English have retained the consonants of the original Teutonic. This shifting is in the same direction as the first shifting, though it does not affect so wide a range of letters. By it the original Teutonic *aspirate* becomes a *medial*, the *medial* a *tenuis*, and the *tenuis* an *aspirate*, or, if that be missing, a *sibilant*.

Thus: to *sheep* (labial tenuis) answers Schaf (aspirate).
to *half* (labial aspirate) answers halb (medial).
to *speak* (guttural tenuis) answers ſprechen (aspirate).
to *yellow* (guttural* aspirate) answers gelb (medial).

* Or rather palatal. Notice also *tallow* and Talg, *borough* and Burg, *draw* and tragen.

to *ten* (dental tenuis) answers zehn (sibilant).
to *foot* (dental tenuis) answers Fuß (sibilant).
to *brother* (dental aspirate) answers Bruder (medial).
to *dead* (dental medial) answers tot (tenuis).

7. THE NEW ORTHOGRAPHY.—The following is the official spelling :—

(1.) The initial capitals Ä, Ö, Ü are written instead of Ae, Oe, Ue, combinations now employed only in words like Aeronaut (but Äther).

(2.) A superfluous h has been dropped after t in all words of German origin, as Heimat, Teil, Wirt, Gote, rot and the ending tum, as Eigentum. The word thun and its derivatives, That, Thaler, Thon (clay), Thor, Thüre, Thräne, in which h was left in 1880, are now written without it, Tat, Taler, &c. Words from the Greek, as Thron, Theolog, Theater, These retain the h. Thee and Tee are both allowed.

(3.) z is dropped in des (deß), and in the termination nis (niß), as Ereignis, but not in the prefix miß.

(4.) d is omitted in töten (tödten), tot (todt), &c. Brot is written, not Brod; bar, not baar; hoffärtig, not hoffährtig; samt, sämtlich, not sammt.

(5.) In borrowed words, K is preferred to C before a, o, u, and consonants, as Konsonant, Krisis, Publikum, faktisch; at the beginning of some words C is retained before e and i. It is also retained in imperfectly naturalised words, as Coiffeur, Coupé, Courage.

(6.) For cc, kz before e, i, or ff before a, o, u, is now written, as Akzent, Akkord.

(7.) z is preferred to c in the middle of a word, as Medizin, offiziell.

(8.) f is preferred to ph in words like Elefant, Sofa, Efeu (ivy). But ph remains in words derived from the Greek, as Philipp, Prophet, Photographie.

8. CHARACTERS.—The only difficulty is with ſ, s, ſſ, ß. The long *s* (ſ) is used in the middle or at the beginning of a word; the short *s* (s)—(1) at the end of a word, (2) at the end of the first component of a compound word, and (3) at the end of a syllable not immediately followed by a vowel, *e.g.*, ſprengen, Gemüſe, es, losgehen, Friedrichshall, weislich, eisig, leſen, Donnerstag.

The sibilant ſſ or ß is denoted by ſſ only when it comes between two vowels, of which the first is short; in all other cases by ß—*e.g.*, weiß, muß, mußte, häßlich, paſſen, Fluß, Fluſſes, Flüſſe, Schoß, Schoßes, Schöße, ſchießen, grüßen, gewiß, gewiſſer, eſſen, iſſeſt, Fuß, Fußes, Füße, groß, größer, am größten, beſſer. In compounds like weisſagen the two letters are independent.

9. CAPITALS AND SMALL LETTERS.—The following are the rules :—

(1.) The first word of a sentence has a capital letter as in English.

(2.) All nouns are written and printed in German with capital letters, The same rule applies to adjectives used as nouns, as der Kranke,* the sick man ; das Ja, the word yes ; die Meinigen, my kinsmen.

(3.) But nouns are written with small letters when used :—(1) as adverbs, as trotz, in spite of, dank, thanks to ; (2) in simple adverbial expressions, as imstande, außer stande sein, zu teil werden, mir zu liebe, im ganzen ; (3) as prefixes to verbs, as not thun, teilnehmen ; (4) ein paar, meaning *a few* (but ein Paar Schuhe).

(4.) Pronouns and adjectives used as pronouns, as jemand, some one, jedermann, every man, alles, everything, keiner, not one, are written with small initial letters.

(5.) Adjectives derived from names of countries, as französisch, French, englisch, English, are printed with small initial letters, except when adjective and noun form together a geographical expression, as der Atlantische Ocean, das Deutsche Reich. So also das Schwarze Meer, der Frische Haff, &c. Those derived from names of persons are printed with capitals when they denote that something entirely belongs to the person (§ 303). So are the forms in er (§ 319), as Schweizer Käse.

10. ACCENT.—The general rule in German is to place the accent on the root-syllable of a word ; thus Begébenheit, not Begebénheit ; der fólgende, not der folgénde ; gébet, give ; Gebét, prayer. Thus no suffix or inflection is accented, except ei in Kinderei, &c., and other foreign suffixes.

(1.) Compound words have two or more accents, the principal accent (Hochton), and the subordinate accent (Mittelton, Nebenton), which may be represented thus : ǻnfángen. (″ denoting the Hochton.) The syllable en is unaccented (tonlos).

(2.) The *separable* prefixes of nouns, adjectives, and verbs have the Hochton, as vőrsichtig, eïngéhen, ǘngedúldig. The strong accent on un (ǘn) (except in únéndlich and one or two other words), which an Englishman is very apt to forget, should be especially noticed. The inseparable prefixes have no accent : begéhen, Begríff. Notice however Ǻntwórt, Éŕzschélm.

(3.) Compounds of two nouns usually take the Hochton on the first component, as Haǘsváter, Väterlánd, Jǻhrgehált, Tődesjáhr. There

---

* A delicate distinction may turn on this use of capitals. Thus—

Es steigt das Riesenmaß der Leiber
Hoch über Menschliches (menschliches) hinaus,

menschliches agrees with Maß understood ; Menschliches *what is human.*

are some exceptions. Jáhrhúndert, Neúéngland, (unless specially distinguished from Old England). In triple compounds there is often a triple gradation of accents.

(4.) The words lebéndig, wahrháftig, Forélle, Holúnder, are exceptions to the general rule; behénde is really from bei Hand, and is therefore accented regularly.

(5.) French nouns, as Phantaſíe, Soldát,* Figúr, Barón, Generál, retain the accent on the last syllable. So do nouns from the Latin and Greek ending in nom, ſoph, krat, &c., as Philoſóph Demokrát, and a few like Altár, Paláſt. The verbs in ieren, as regieren, marſchieren, ſtudieren accent the ie Foreign adjectives again like ätheriſch, apoſtóliſch, do not conform to the general rule.

11. QUANTITY.—Quantity is not of great importance in German grammar, though of course indispensable to correct pronunciation. The following points should be noticed:—

(1.) A doubled vowel, as in Haar, Meer, Boot, is necessarily long.

(2.) A vowel followed by *h* is necessarily long, as in Hahn, Huhn.

(3.) A vowel before a doubled consonant, as in Fülle, meſſen, is always short; a vowel before two or more unlike consonants is frequently so. But if the consonants belong to different syllables, as in vielleicht, dasſelbe, the rule does not apply.

12. EMPHASIS.—STOPS.—In reading German the same rule must be observed as in reading English, *i.e.*, not to lay any stress on unimportant words, such as prepositions, conjunctions, the copulative verb, &c.

The following are the German names for the stops (Satzzeichen) used in punctuation (Interpunktion), and for other signs:—Der Punkt (.), das Fragezeichen (?), das Ausrufungszeichen (!), der Doppelpunkt or das Kolon (:), der Strichpunkt or das Semikolon (;), der Strich or das Komma (,), der Gedankenſtrich (—), das Gänſefüßchen or Anführungszeichen („ "), in which the difference from English should be noticed, die Klammern or Parentheſen ( ) or [], der Apoſtroph ('), die Bindeſtriche (=) or der Bindeſtrich (-).

* But Monat is a German word, § 25 (4).

The chief differences from English in the use of these signs are :—

(1.) A quotation, with or without inverted commas, is preceded by a colon, unless of course it stands at the beginning of a sentence, as—

Sie küßte und ſtreichelte ihren Liebling, der endlich zu ihr ſagte: Undine, wenn dir des alten Mannes Jammer das Herz nicht trifft, ſo trifft er's mir.

Which might also be written :

. . . . zu ihr ſagte: „Undine . . . . trifft er's mir."

(2.) The hyphen is used, not only in dividing words at the end of a line (see § 4 note) but also in connecting two compounds of the same word, as die Haupt- oder Dingwörter, abbreviated for die Hauptwörter oder Dingwörter; in joining double names and their derivatives, as Jung-Stilling, niederſchleſiſch-märkiſche Eiſenbahn, and in very long compounds, as Ober-Landgerichts-Präſident.

13. PARTS OF SPEECH.—The parts of speech are practically the same in all languages, and need not be enumerated here. But two remarks may be made :—

(1.) The article is not, properly speaking, a distinct part of speech. The definite article is a demonstrative adjective, the indefinite article a numeral adjective.

(2.) German grammarians adopt a cross division of words into Begriffswörter and Formwörter. Begriffswörter include nouns, adjectives, verbs (excepting the auxiliaries), and most adverbs. Formwörter include pronouns, prepositions, conjunctions, auxiliary verbs, and some adverbs of time and place, with a few other words. The former represent the objects, actions, qualities, &c., of which we speak, the latter our way of looking at them. In a highly inflected language the place of Formwörter is to a great extent taken by inflections of Begriffswörter, and might conceivably be entirely so taken. For example, τετυφωμαι can be rendered into English or German only by adding to the word *strike* a pronoun, several auxiliary verbs, and an adverb ; ἰχθυοῖν only by adding a preposition and a numeral. The tendency of modern languages is to depend more and more on Formwörter.

14. THE ARTICLES.—There are in German, as in English, two articles, the *definite* article and the *indefinite* article.

They differ from the articles of modern English, inasmuch as they take inflections of gender, number, and case. They are declined as follows :—

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	des	der	des	der
D.	dem	der	dem	den
A.	den	die	das.	die.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Singular.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
N.	ein	eine	ein	
G.	eines	einer	eines	*No plural.*
D.	einem	einer	einem	
A.	einen	eine	ein.	

The articles are always unaccented, and are thus distinguished from the demonstrative der and the numeral ein. Of course the articles are strictly speaking adjectives, but there is some convenience in treating them apart.

Chapter II.—Declension of Nouns.

[NOTE.—*In learning the declensions for the first time, it will be well to postpone committing to memory some, if not all, of the lists of nouns.*]

15. GENERAL REMARKS. — Nouns in German have four cases (Fälle) :—nominative, genitive, dative and accusative. Except in one group of nouns, the nominative and accusative singular are alike. The nominative, genitive and accusative plural of all nouns are alike. The dative plural always ends in **n**.

16. STRONG AND WEAK DECLENSIONS.*— There are two forms of declension :—

(1.) The strong declension, characterised by the addition of the case-inflections **es**, **e**, **er**, as—

Sohn,	Sohnes,	Söhne,
Geiſt,	Geiſtes,	Geiſter,

and in many instances by the modification of the root-vowel in the plural, as—

Sohn,	plural Söhne,
Buch,	plural Bücher.

(2.) The weak declension, marked by the use of the inflection **n** or **en**, and never admitting modification, as :—

Handlung,	Handlung	Handlungen,
Bär,	Bären,	Bären,
Bote,	Boten,	Boten.

* The names *strong* and *weak* are not (says Schleicher) as appropriate in speaking of nouns as of verbs. Strong verbs are simple, weak verbs derived verbs ; but the so-called strong nouns represent the vowel-declensions, the weak nouns the consonant-declensions of the older language, neither of which has any claim to the precedence implied by strong and weak.

The weak declension includes most feminine nouns,* and one or two classes of masculines, but no neuters; the strong declension includes the bulk of masculine nouns, all but six neuters, and a few feminines. A few nouns belong to one declension in the singular, to the other in the plural (p. 24). Adjectives used as nouns are declined as adjectives.

17. GENERAL RULES :—

(1.) The *strong* declension forms the plural by adding **e** or **er**, or, in some cases, no termination at all, and by modifying, in most instances, the root-vowel **a, o, u, au.** It adds **es** or **s** in the genitive singular, and **e** or no termination in the dative singular. But strong feminine nouns are undeclined in the singular.

(2.) The *weak* declension adds **en** or **n** in all cases of the plural, and never modifies the root-vowel. Masculine nouns of this declension add **n** or **en** in the genitive, dative, and accusative singular; feminine nouns remain unchanged in the singular.

(3.) Feminine nouns, whether strong or weak, remain unchanged in the singular number.

(4.) The dative plural of all nouns ends in **n**.

(5.) When the plural is formed by adding **er**, the root-vowel is always modified, when by adding **e** it is generally modified, when by adding **n** or **en** never.

(6.) The influence of the Umlaut or modification never goes back beyond the penultimate, or last syllable but one. Thus Abende, (not Äbende); Paläſte, (not Pälaſte); Wanderer, (not Wänderer).

* Feminine nouns were formerly inflected in the singular both in the strong and weak declensions; the weak inflection is retained in a few phrases, as auf Erden, zu Ehren, and is often found in poetry. Note also Sonnenſchein, Frauenkirche (church of Our Lady), Heidenröslein. The words Bräutigam, Nachtigall, Burgemeiſter, (an older and more correct form than Bürgermeiſter), illustrate the inflection of *strong* feminine nouns in the singular.

18. MODELS OF WEAK DECLENSION—MASCULINE:

Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
N. der Knabe, boy,	der Menſch, man,*	der Soldat, soldier,
G. des Knaben,	des Menſchen,	des Soldaten,
D. dem Knaben,	dem Menſchen,	dem Soldaten,
A. den Knaben.	den Menſchen.	den Soldaten.
Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
N. die Knaben,	die Menſchen,	die Soldaten,
G. der Knaben,	der Menſchen,	der Soldaten,
D. der Knaben,	den Menſchen,	den Soldaten,
A. die Knaben	die Menſchen.	die Soldaten.

19. WEAK MASCULINE NOUNS.

(1.) Names of male persons and male animals ending in e, as, der Affe, ape ; der Rabe, raven ; der Matroſe, sailor.

(2.) A few monosyllables and one or two polysyllables denoting persons or animals, which originally ended in e.

Menſch, Hirt, Geck,	Hageſtolz, Geſell,
Graf, Held, Herr,†	Ahn, Chriſt, Mohr,
Fürſt, Prinz,‡ Ochs,	Lump, Schenk, Spatz,
Narr, Fink, Bär,	Vorfahr, Thor.§

Also Oberſt or Obriſt, colonel (really der Oberſte, the highest). Ochſe, Finke, Geſelle, are used as well as the shorter forms. Schultheiß, Steinmetz, Truchſeß also take en.

(3.) National and tribal names accented on the last syllable, and not having the suffix er; as, der Koſák, der Tatár; also der Barbár, der Huſár, and der Pommer, der Bayer, in which er is part of the stem.

(4.) Nouns of foreign origin and form (especially Greek derivatives in log, graph, nom, arch, krat, ſoph) denoting male persons, accented on the last syllable, and *not* ending in **al**, **an**, **ar**, **ier**, **on**, **or**; as, der Juriſt, der Monárch, der Tyránn, der Demokrát, der Katholík, der Proteſtánt, der Aſtronóm, der Philoſóph.‖

---

* Menſch=*homo*, Mann=*vir*. † Herrn in singular, Herren in plural.

‡ Fürſt—(1) applied to a reigning sovereign ; (2) a title of nobility. Thus, Fürſt is equally applicable to the Emperor of Germany and to Prince Bismarck. Prinz, a sovereign's son.

§ man, shepherd, coxcomb, bachelor, mate,
count, hero, lord, ancestor, Christian, Moor,
prince, prince, ox, vagabond, butler, sparrow,
buffoon, finch, bear, ancestor (" forbear "), fool.
Senat, Granat are strong nouns.

‖ Add a few foreign names of animals—Elefant, Leopard, &c., and a very few foreign words denoting things—Planét, Komet, Konſonánt, &c.

20. MODELS OF WEAK DECLENSION.—FEMININE:

	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
N.	die Frau, woman,	die Blume, flower,	die Freundin, friend,
G.	der Frau,	der Blume,	der Freundin,
D.	der Frau,	der Blume,	der Freundin,
A.	die Frau.	die Blume.	die Freundin.
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
N.	die Frauen,	die Blumen,	die Freundinnen,
G.	der Frauen,	der Blumen,	der Freundinnen,
D.	den Frauen,	den Blumen,	den Freundinnen,
A.	die Frauen.	die Blumen.	die Freundinnen.

21. WEAK FEMININE NOUNS.

(1.) All feminine nouns of more than one syllable, except (1) Mutter, Tochter, and (2) those ending in nis and ſal, as die Kenntnis, knowledge; die Trübſal, affliction.

The chief feminine *suffixes* are — **in**, **ei**, **heit**, **keit**, **ſchaft**, **ung**.* Abstract nouns and nouns denoting inanimate objects are feminine if they end in **e**,† as die Liebe, love; die Wieſe, meadow.

(2.) About 30 monosyllables :—

Art, Bahn, Flur.	Schar, Schrift, Schlacht,
Bucht, Burg, Spur,	Schuld, That, Tracht,
Form, Frau, Uhr,	Welt, Zeit, Qual,
Jagd, Laſt, Flut,	Thür, Wahl, Zahl,
Pflicht, Poſt, Glut.	Fahrt, Saat, Schlucht, Brut.‡

Obs. 1. Notice that **n** only (not **en**) is added to the terminations **e**, **el**, **er**, as Fabel, Fabeln not Fabelen; on the contrary, **en** is added to words ending with a diphthong, as die Arznei, medicine; die Melodie, tune; though with much license of dropping the **e** in pronunciation.§

Obs. 2. Nouns ending in **in** double the consonant in the plural, as Freundin, Freundinnen.

Obs. 3. No neuter nouns belong to the weak declension.

---

* *See* § 54.

† For a few exceptions *see* § 56.

‡ manner, path, field, bight, castle, trace, mould, woman, watch, chase, load, flood, duty (plight), post, glow, host, writing, battle, debt (*or* guilt), deed, dress, world, time (-tide), torture, door, choice, number (tale), ferry, seed, chasm, brood.

§ Notice Ceremonie (four syllables), Ceremonien or ieen (five syllables).

22. MODELS OF STRONG DECLENSION—PLURAL IN er.

	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
N.	der Mann, man,	das Dorf, village,	das Fürſtentum, principality,
G.	des Mann(e)s,	des Dorf(e)s	des Fürſtentum(e)s,
D.	dem Mann(e),	dem Dorf(e),	dem Fürſtentum(e),
A.	den Mann.	das Dorf.	das Fürſtentum.
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
N.	die Männer,	die Dörfer,	die Fürſtentümer,
G.	der Männer,	der Dörfer,	der Fürſtentümer,
D.	den Männern,	den Dörfern,	den Fürſtentümern,
A.	die Männer.	die Dörfer.	die Fürſtentümer.

23. NOUNS WITH PLURAL IN er. To this declension belong :—

(1.) Twelve masculine nouns, *i.e.* :—

Leib, Geiſt, Mann, Wald, Wurm, Gott, Vormund, Reichtum, Rand, Ort, Irrtum, Böſewicht.*

(2.) Neuters in **tum** ; as das Herzogtum, and a few compounds in **mal** ; as Grabmal, Grabmäler; Denkmal, Denkmäler (makes also Denkmale). Notice that the modification here affects the second constituent, **tum** and **mal** being really nouns.

(3.) About sixty neuter monosyllables, and a few neuter polysyllables, of which the chief are :—

Ei, Neſt, Huhn, Volk, Weib, Kind, Haupt, Maul, Horn, Lamm, Kalb, Rind, Dorf, Gut, Land, Pfand, Schloß, Haus, Dach, Bild, Geſicht, Glied, Holz, Licht.† Glas, Tuch, Kleid, Gewand, Brett, Faß, Fach, Buch, Wort, Lied, Blatt, Kraut, Gras,

---

* body, spirit, man, wood (wold), worm, God, guardian, wealth, edge (rim), place, error, villain (bad wight).

Der Wicht (wight) makes Wichte. Böſewicht also makes Böſe wichte.

† In modern German often makes Lichte, in the sense of candles.

Stift,* Gemach, Hoſpital,
Feld, Korn, Thal,
Grab, Geſpenſt, Aas,†
Amt, Schild,* Rad,
Schwert, Regiment,
Loch, Gemüt, Bad,
Reis, Geld, Geſchlecht ‡

Obs. 1. All nouns forming the plural in **er** modify the root-vowel in the plural, if that vowel be **a, o, u,** or **au.** These become **ä, ö, ü, äu.**

Obs. 2. No feminines form the plural by adding **er.**

24. STRONG DECLENSION.—PLURAL IN e.

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
N. der Fluß, river,	die Stadt, town,	das Jahr, year,
G. des Fluſſes,	der Stadt,	des Jahr(e)s,
D. dem Fluſſe,	der Stadt,	dem Jahr(e),
A. den Fluß.	die Stadt.	das Jahr.
Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
N. die Flüſſe,	die Städ'e,	die Jahre,
G. der Flüſſe,	der Städte,	der Jahre,
D. den Flüſſen,	den Städten,	den Jahren,
A. die Flüſſe.	die Städte.	die Jahre.

Obs. 1. Feminine monosyllables making the plural in e always modify the root-vowel; masculines generally; neuters never.

Obs. 2. The following important strong masculines do not modify :—

Aft, Arm, Tag, Hund, Laut, Punkt, Gemahl, Grad,
Huf, Schuh, Mond, Mund, Monat, Hauch, Bord, Pfad.§

---

* For Stift and Schild see § 63.

† Plural Äſer, rare.

‡ egg, nest, fowl (hen, *in* moor-hen, &c.). cloth, gown, robe,
people (folk), woman, child, board, cask (vat), shelf,
head, mouth, horn, book, word (*single*), song,
lamb, calf, beast (cattle), pledge, leaf (blade), herb, grass,
village (thorp), estate, land, foundation, room, hospital,
castle (*or* lock), house, roof, field, grain, dale,
picture, face, limb, grave, ghost, carrion,
wood (holt), light, glass, office, sign-board, wheel,
sword, regiment,
hole, mind, bath,
twig, money, race (*or* sex).

§ Add to these Aar (also Aaren), Amboß, Baſtard, Beſuch, -bold (Raufbold, &c.), Born, Docht, Dolch, Dom, Druck (but Abdrucke, Ein-

Obs. 3. The retention or dropping of e in the genitive and dative of the strong declension, masculine and neuter (§§ 22, 24), is a question of euphony. In the genitive e must be retained if the word ends in a sibilant (ſ, z, ß, tz), or in ſch, ſt. As a general rule it is kept if it ends in ld, nd, mpf, or b, d, preceded by a vowel. It is mostly retained in monosyllables. It is usually dropped in words with unaccented endings, ig, ing, end, rig, ſal, tum. In words of more than one syllable, accented on the last, it may be dropped, so that we may have Edelſteins side by side with Steines, Reitpferds side by side with Pferdes. Lastly, it is dropped in certain idiomatic phrases, as von Rechtswegen, Tags darauf.

The e of the dative is more freely dropped. It is regularly dropped (1) in words ending in a vowel, as Heu, mostly in those ending in l or r, Pfahl, Geſchirr; (2) in combinations of a noun and preposition without article, as mit Recht (compared with von ſeinem Rechte), zu Fuß, von Geiſt, ꝛc. There are, however, a few phrases, as zu Lande, bei Leibe nicht, in which it is retained; (3) in coupled nouns, like von Haus und Hof.

Obs. 4. Nouns ending in nis double the ſ when an inflexion is added, as die Kenntnis, die Kenntniſſe.

25. MASCULINES WITH PLURAL IN e.

(1.) The roots of strong and some weak verbs, or nouns formed from them by only changing the vowel, which are nearly all masculine; as, der Hang, leaning, inclination, from root of hangen; der Schwung, impulse, from root of ſchwingen; der Schlag, blow, from root of ſchlagen; der Fluß, river, from root of fließen; der Spott, mockery, from root of ſpotten.

Notice especially the compounds of such nouns as der Vorſchlag, proposal; der Zuſtand, condition; der Beſuch, visit; der Vorhang, curtain.

---

drücke, &c.), Erfolg, Gau, Golf, Gurt, Hag, Hall, Halm, Hauch, Heiland, Holm, Horſt, Hort, Kalk, Kapaun, Karſt, Knall Kompaß, Lachs, Lack, Leichnam, Luchs, Molch, Mord (but see § 42), Park Patron, Pol, Puls, Ruck, Salat, Salm, Schall, Schuft, Spat, Star, Stoff, Sund, Takt, Talk, Thron, Trupp, Unhold, Verluſt, Verſuch, Vielfraß, Wiedehopf, Zoll (inch) and some less common nouns. With Aal (Aale or Äle), Altar, Anwalt, Dachs, Herzog, Kork, Plan, the usage varies.

Foreign nouns belonging to this declension generally leave the root-vowel unmodified. The following more or less foreign nouns *do* modify:—

Abt, Chor, Choral,
Biſchof, Pabſt, Kardinal,
Probſt, Kaplan, Palaſt,
Marſch (march), Kanal, Moraſt.

(2.) Monosyllabic names of male animals; as, der Dachs, badger; der Fuchs, fox; der Luchs, lynx; der Hund, dog.

(3.) A number of monosyllables denoting things, as der Baum, tree; der Pfad, path; der Tisch, table; in fact, all masculine monosyllables that do not find their place in one of the lists in §§ 19, 23, 32.

(4.) Derivatives with the suffixes **ling, rich, am**; as, der Jüngling, youth; der Fremdling, stranger; der Eidam, son-in-law; der Enterich, drake; der Gänserich, gander; also der Monat,* month (pl. Monate); der König, king; der Palast, palace (pl. Paläste), and a few others.

(5.) Nouns of foreign origin ending in **al, an, ar, ier**, and a few in **on, at**; as, der General (pl. Generale), der Grenadier, der Baron, der Senat.

26. FEMININES WITH PLURAL IN e:—

(1.) About thirty-six monosyllables, and their compounds:

Angst, Axt, Bank, Faust,
Gans, Kraft, Hand,
Not, Kuh, Nuß, Sau,§
Schnur, Schwulst, Wand,
Braut, Lust, Haut, Brust,
Brunst, Kunst, Macht,
Naht, Laus, Stadt, Maus,
Magd, Wurst, Nacht,
Lust, Frucht, Zucht,
and in compounds—flucht,
Gruft, Kluft, Zunft,
and in compounds—kunst.††

All these without exception modify in the plural.

---

* Mónat is a genuine German word, accented on the first syllable. Soldát belongs to the weak declension; Magistrát, magistrate; Ornát, robes; Senát, senate; Episkopát, episcopate, to the strong declension.

† Ausflucht, excuse; Zuflucht, refuge; Ankunft, arrival; Abkunft, descent; Auskunft, information; Zukunft, future; Zusammenkunft, meeting, &c.; also Zeitläufte, periods; Einkünfte, revenues, used in plural only.

‡ anguish, axe, bench, fist,
goose, strength, hand,
need, cow, nut, sow,
string, swelling, wall,
bride, pleasure, skin, breast,
burning, art, might,
seam, louse, town, mouse,
maid, sausage, night,
air, fruit, training,
flight,
grave, cleft, guild,
coming.

§ Also makes Saue.

(2.) Feminine nouns ending in nis, and die Mühſal, affliction; die Trübſal, tribulation; die Drangſal, oppression; (pl. Mühſale, &c.). Those in nis double the s in the plural, as Kenntnis, Kenntniſſe.

27. NEUTERS WITH PLURAL IN e.

(1.) All neuters beginning with the prefix Ge, and not ending in e (for which see § 29 (3)), except :—

Gemüt, Gewand, Geſicht,
Gemach, Geſpenſt, Geſchlecht,*

which belong to § 23, and make Gemüter, &c.

(2.) Eleven monosyllables ending in r :—

Bier, Moor, Haar, Paar, Rohr, Meer,
Öhr, Jahr, Thor, Tier, Heer.†

(3.) The following monosyllables :—

Beil, Bein, Ding, Brot, Reh, Gleis, Pult, Moos,
Fell, Beet, Gift, Boot, Knie, Recht, Reich, Hirn,
Heft, Netz, Stück, Los, Salz, Schwein, Werk, Ziel,
Pferd, Pfund, Joch, Roß, Schaf, Schiff, Seil, Spiel,
Gas, Kinn, Kreuz, Schilf, Zelt.‡

The plurals of the last four are thus distinguished from those of Schäfer, Schiffer &c.

(4.) Neuter nouns ending in nis, ſal, as das Bündnis, covenant, die Bündniſſe; das Scheuſal, monster, die Scheuſale.

(5.) Most nouns ending in tiv, as Motiv, some in at, as Rektorat, and a few other polysyllables of foreign origin.

(6.) Floß, the only neuter of this declension with Umlaut, Flöße.

---

* mind, robe, face, room, ghost, race.

† beer, fen, pair, hair, reed, sea, eye (needle), year, gate, beast, army.

‡ axe, leg, thing, bread (loaf), hide, bed, poison, boat, [lot, handle (*or* copy-book), net, piece, horse, pound, yoke, steed, roe, track, desk, moss, knee, right, empire, brain, salt, pig, work, goal, sheep, ship, rope, game, gas, chin, cross, reed, tent.

Also Blech, Erz, Garn, Harz, Heim, Lot, mal (as Denkmal), Mahl, Öl, Quart, Reck, Ries, Scheit, Schmalz, Zeug &c. From Ding, Dinger is sometimes formed.

28. MODELS OF STRONG DECLENSION. — PLURAL WITHOUT SUFFIX.

	Masculine.		*Feminine.*
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
N.	der Vogel, bird,	der Garten, garden,	die Mutter, mother,
G.	des Vogels,	des Gartens,	der Mutter,
D.	dem Vogel,	dem Garten,	der Mutter,
A.	den Vogel.	den Garten.	die Mutter.
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur.*
N.	die Vögel,	die Gärten,	die Mütter,
G.	der Vögel,	der Gärten,	der Mütter,
D.	den Vögeln,	den Gärten,	den Müttern,
A.	die Vögel.	die Gärten.	die Mütter.

		Neuter.	
	Sing.	*Sing.*	*Sing.*
N.	das Wunder, miracle,	das Kindlein, little	das Gemälde, picture,
G.	des Wunders,	des Kindleins, child,	des Gemäldes,
D.	dem Wunder,	dem Kindlein,	dem Gemälde,
A.	das Wunder.	das Kindlein.	das Gemälde.
	Plur.	*Plur.*	*Plur*
N.	die Wunder,	die Kindlein,	die Gemälde,
G.	der Wunder,	der Kindlein,	der Gemälde,
D.	den Wundern,	den Kindlein,	den Gemälden,
A.	die Wunder.	die Kindlein,	die Gemälde.

29. NOUNS WITHOUT SUFFIX IN PLURAL.

(1.) The two feminine nouns Mutter and Tochter, both of which modify in the plural.

(2.) *Masculine* and *neuter* nouns in **el, en, er.***

---

* Most nouns of this declension remain unmodified in the plural. But the neuter nouns, Kloſter, convent; Lager, camp, and the following masculines modify :—

Mantel, Sattel, Apfel, Nabel, cloak, saddle, apple, navel,
Nagel, Handel, Vogel, Schnabel, nail, trade, bird, beak,
Hammel, Mangel, Wagen, Faden, wether, want, carriage, thread,
Garten, Boden, Ofen, Laden, garden, soil, stove, shop,
Vater, Bruder, Schwager, Schaden, father, brother, brother-in-law, injury,
Hammer, Acker, Hafen, Graben, hammer, field, harbour, ditch.

Magen, Wagen are preferable to Mägen, Wägen: Laden makes Laden or Läden, according to sense (§ 40). Juwel, Kamel are strong nouns.

(3.) Diminutives ending in chen and lein, which are all neuter, as, das Männchen, mannikin; das Fräulein, young lady.

(4.) Neuters ending in e; as, das Gemälde, picture; das Gebirge or (Gebirg), mountain-range.* But das Auge, eye; das Ende, end, belong to the mixed declension; das Erbe, inheritance, has no plural, but borrows from Erbschaft.

(5.) One masculine in e: der Käse, the cheese (des Käses, die Käse).

30. NOUNS LIKE **Name.** — The following masculines:—

Gedanke, Haufe, Funke, Glaube, Same,
Buchstabe,† Wille, Friede, Fels,§ and Name,‡

and the neuter noun Herz, heart, are treated as if the nominative ended in en. They are declined as follows:—

Sing.		*Sing.*	
N.	der Name, name,	das Herz, heart,	
G.	des Namens,	des Herzens,	
D.	dem Namen,	dem Herzen,	
A.	den Namen.	das Herz.	
Plur.		*Plur.*	
N.	die Namen,	die Herzen,	
G.	der Namen,	der Herzen,	
D.	den Namen,	den Herzen,	
A.	die Namen.	die Herzen.	

Schaden, loss, damage‖ (also Schade, especially in es ist schade), is declined like Name, but makes Schäden in the plural; none of the others of this group modify in the plural.

---

* Practically limited to collectives with prefix Ge and ending e.

† Also genitive in n.

‡ thought, heap, spark, faith, seed.
letter (of alphabet), will, peace, rock, name.
All these nouns *may* be used unsyncopated (der Namen ɔc.), but the longer forms are getting obsolete: das Herze is used in poetry.

§ Fels now generally has Fels in the accusative singular, Felsen in the other cases. There is another form Felsen, the genitive of which is Felsens. Reif, Reifes exists side by side with Reifen, Reifens.

‖ The root is found in English *scathless*, *unscathed*.

31. MODELS OF MIXED DECLENSION. — Certain masculine and neuter nouns follow the strong declension in the singular, and the weak declension in the plural.

Sing.	*Sing.*
N. der Strahl, ray,	das Auge, eye,
G. des Strahl(e)s,	des Auges,
D. dem Strahl(e),	dem Auge,
A. den Strahl.	das Auge.
Plur.	*Plur.*
N. die Strahlen,	die Augen,
G. der Strahlen,	der Augen,
D. den Strahlen,	den Augen,
A. die Strahlen.	die Augen.

32. NOUNS OF MIXED DECLENSION.

(1.) The following masculine nouns :—

Zins, Gevatter, Lorbeer, Sporn,
Stachel, Vetter, Schmerz and Dorn,
Staat, Untertan,
Muskel, See, Strahl, Ahn.*

(2.) A few neuters, viz. :—

Auge, Ende, Ohr, Hemd, Bett, Insekt.†

(3.) A few borrowed nouns, as Doktor, Professor.

33. DECLENSION OF SOME LATIN WORDS. Their declension varies according as they are partly or wholly naturalised.

---

* interest, godfather, laurel, spur,
sting, cousin, pain (smart), thorn,
state, subject,
muscle, lake, ray, ancestor.

Ahn, Bauer, Nachbar, Hero, Unterthan are weak in the plural, strong and weak in the singular; as Bauer, des Bauers or Bauern, der Bauern. Mast and Fasan have genitive ens, plural n or e. Forst and Zierat are either masculine and strong or feminine and weak. Zar (Czar) has genitive Zaren, plural Zare. Sporn has plural Sporen not Spornen.

† eye, end, ear, shirt, bed, insect.

(1.) Masculine nouns ending in or, as Doktor, Profeſſor,* follow the mixed declension (des Doktors, die Doktoren, &c.). So do a few other Latin masculines, Tribun, Aedil, Konſul, Triumvir, Präfect; also Muskel. Notice the change of accent, Dóktor, Doktóren, Profeſſor, Profeſſóren.

(2.) Masculine nouns in ius are unchanged in the genitive, and take ien in the plural; as Aktuarius, Aktuarien.

(3.) Masculines in ismus and neuters in isma, when they have a plural, form it in en; as, Syllogismus, -ismen; Sophisma, -ismen. Drama makes Dramen.

(4.) Neuter nouns with the Latin termination ium take an s in the genitive singular, and change um into en to form the plural; as Studium, Studiums, Studien.† The same applies to Lyzeum, Muſeum, Jubiläum, Individuum, and others in eum, äum, uum. Another group, Adverb, Partizip, Prinzip, Kapital‡ (money), Regal, Foſſil, Reptil, take ien in the plural: Adverbien, Kapitalien, &c. Those ending in cium are often written in the plural with z; as Auſpicium, Auſpicien or Auſpizien; so Accidens, Accidentien or Accidenzien.

(5.) Sometimes Latin plurals are used; as, Pronomen, Pronomina; Tempus, Tempora; Modus, Modi; Caſus (or Kaſus), Caſus; Thema, Themata (Themen, or Themas); Lexikon, Lexika (or Lexiken); Faktum, Fakta.

(6.) Statut, Intereſſe follow the mixed declension. Kriſis, Baſis, &c., make Kriſen, Baſen, &c. Verb makes Verba (or Verben); As makes Aſſe.

34. MODERN FOREIGN NOUNS.—These follow the same principles as Latin nouns.

(1.) Many modern foreign nouns of all genders take s in the plural, and if masculine or neuter, s in the genitive singular also. Thus, die Armada, der Armada, die Armadas; der Ballon, des Ballons, die Ballons; der Banquier, des Banquiers, die Banquiers; das Autodafé, des Autodafés, die Autodafés; das Basrelief, des Basreliefs, die Basreliefs; der Lieutenant, des Lieutenants, die Lieutenants.

---

* Except der Majór, plural die Majore, der Tenór, -ore or -öre.

† In a few cases classical nouns in ium are represented by a feminine singular, as die Prämie, die Studie.

‡ Also makes Kapitale, but Kapitäler or äle, capitals in architecture.

(2.) Others more thoroughly incorporated into the language, and especially classical words common to all civilised languages, adopt German inflexions; as, der Dialog, des Dialogs, die Dialoge: die Baſilika, der Baſilika, die Baſiliken; das Bayonett, des Bayonetts, die Bayonette. Sometimes usage varies; thus, die Billets and die Billette are both found.*

(3) Lastly, there is a large group of masculine nouns following the weak declension, like Geograph, Bandit (see § 19).

35. PROPER NAMES.—Proper names may be conveniently divided as follows—(1) surnames; (2) Christian names; (3) classical names of persons; (4) geographical names. All these names, if used with an article preceding, are uninflected, the article being quite sufficient to show the case.

36. SURNAMES (Familiennamen).—Surnames without articles take s in the genitive, unless they end in s, ſ, z, or ß, in which case an apostrophe is added, or the phrase is arranged so as to bring in an article. Thus Herders Werke, Goethes Proſa, Gervinus' Geſchichte des 19ten Jahrhunderts. Occasionally ens is added to names ending in ß, as Voſſens, from Voß. It is not considered good to use the article with surnames not ending in s, ſ, z, ß, thus Luthers, Goethes, &c., are preferable to des Luther, des Goethe.

In the plural ordinary surnames are mostly used with an added s, and no article, as Richters ſind zurück (the Richters are back), ich war bei Hauptmanns (I was at the Hauptmanns'). If an article or other word precede, the name is generally uninflected, as die Grimm, or better, die Brüder Grimm.†

Obs. 1. When several names of the same person are mentioned, the last only—as in English—takes the genitive inflexion: die Werke Johann Sebaſtian Bachs, or des J. S. Bach, or Johann Sebaſtian Bachs Werke. When a name is accompanied by a title, the general rule is that the title takes the genitive inflexion if the article precede, as die Werke des Profeſſors Mommſen; the name if there be no article, as Kaiſer Wilhelms des Erſten lange Regierung, Profeſſor Mommſens Werke,

* The Low German forms Jungens, Mädchens, Fräuleins, Kerls, ɔc., are often used in addressing people.

† The genitive and dative of Jeſus is generally Jeſu, the accusative Jeſum, Jeſu or Jeſum: Chriſtus is declined as in Latin, Chriſti, Chriſto, Chriſtum, as das Leben Jeſu; nach Chriſti Geburt. So also Evangelium des Matthäi, ɔc.

Professor Doktor Kuhns Vorlesungen. Notice that Herr is always inflected, and that the title following it is generally, but not always, unaltered, as des Herrn Professor Bunsen, des Herrn Minister(s) von Bötticher. As to names with von, the last word takes s if the genitive precedes, the name if it follows, as Friedrich von Schillers Werke; Götz von Berlichingens Hand, but die Thaten Friedrichs von Hohenstaufen.

Obs 2. If the name be preceded by an adjective it takes the inflexion only when standing *before* the noun on which it depends – die Werke des berühmten Herder, but des berühmten Herders Werke.

37. CHRISTIAN NAMES (Vornamen), both masculine and feminine, often form the genitive by adding s, as Heinrichs, Fannys, Marthas, Johanns, Idas. A genitive in ens is commonly formed from masculines ending in s, x, z, as Hans, Hansens; Moritz, Moritzens; Franz, Franzens; and from feminines ending in e, ia, as Sophie, Sophiens; Luise, Luisens.*

A dative in en is also often found in poetry. The classical form is given in a line like the following:—

Tancredens Heldenliebe zu Chlorinden.—Goethe.

but Tancreds would be used in prose.

In the plural Karl makes die Karle or die Karls; Haus, die Hause, die Hausen, or die Häuse; Agnes, die Agnese; Marie, die Marien; but Martha, die Marthas; Maria, die Marias.

38. CLASSICAL NAMES, especially those ending in s, &c., are not generally inflected, but their cases are indicated by the article or by the sense, or prepositions are used.

Thus—Agamemnon war der Sohn des Atreus, Königs in Mykene, und der Äsope, und der Bruder des Menelaos. An s in the genitive is often used where there is no objection on the score of euphony, as Agrippinas, Dions, Heros, Leanders.† Notice the following plurals—die Scipionen, die Neronen, die Gracchen, die Meteller, die Fabier, die Horatier, die Curiatier, die Flavier, die Antoninen.

* The usage is by no means uniform. Thus on the same page of Spielhagen's Sturmfluth, one finds G. Ferdinandens and Ferdinande's, D. Ferdinanden. Notice Sophias, Sophiens, or Sophies.

† Forms like Apollens, Ägisthens (from Ägisthus), Hebens, Dianens are also found in classical German. Goethe in his "Iphigenie" declines Diana, Iphigenie like Name. Also Horazens.

39. GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES.—Masculine and neuter names of countries, districts and towns take s in the genitive, and no further inflexion. The few feminines are of course undeclined, but generally stand with the article.

Names of towns ending in a sibilant (s, ß, z, ß) do not add s in the genitive, but are preceded by von or occasionally der Stadt, as die Straßen von Mainz, in der Stadt Mainz. Names of towns (not names of countries) with an adjective are not generally inflected, as des neuen Berlin. In titles von is used, not the genitive, as der König von Sachsen.

40. NOUNS WITH TWO PLURALS.—A number of nouns have two forms of the plural with different meanings. The following are the chief*:—

das Band,	Bande, fetters, ties,	Bänder, bands, ribbons.
der Band,		Bände, volumes.
die Bank,	Bänke, benches.	Banken, banks (for money).
der Bauer,		Bauern, peasants.
der *or* das Bauer,		Bauer, cages.
der Erbe,		Erben, heirs.
das Erbe,		Erbschaften, inheritances.
das Gesicht,	Gesichte, sights, apparitions,	Gesichter, faces.
das Horn,	Horne, sorts of horn,	Hörner, horns.
der Laden,	Laden, shutters,	Läden, shops.
das Land,	Lande, territories of one state (as Niederlande),	Länder, countries (the most common)
der Leiter,		Leiter, leaders.
die Leiter,		Leitern, ladders.
der Mann,	Männer, men (see § 29),	Mannen, vassals (poet.).
die Mark,	Mark, shillings (§ 29),	Marken, counters.*
das Mark, marrow,		no plural.
der See,		Seen, lakes.
die See, ocean,		no plural.
der Strauß,	Sträuße, nosegays,	Strauße(n), ostriches.
der Thor,		Thoren, fools.
das Thor,		Thore, gates.

* For Kiefer, Schild, Steuer, Stift see § 63. From Ort we have Örter for distinct places, as heilige Örter, but andere Orte and aller Orten adverbially.

das Tuch,	Tücher, cloths, shawls,	Tuche, kinds of cloth.
das Wort,	Wörter, disconnected,	Worte, connected words.
der Zoll,	Zölle, tolls,	Zolle, inches (see § 29).

41. NO PLURAL OF MEASURES. — Masculine and neuter names of measures, like Fuß, Zoll, Stück, are not usually inflected in the plural; as, zehn Fuß hoch; drei Zoll lang; vier Stück Leinwand; sechs Faß Wein; zwei Pfund Kirschen; so is Mann, in speaking of troops, fünf hundert Mann, &c., as in English we say 2,000 horse; but zwei Ellen hoch, Elle being a feminine noun.* Notice also that the name of the substance measured does not, in such cases, take the sign of the genitive, ein Glas Bier (not Bieres), but ein Faß alten Weines.

42. BORROWED PLURALS.—The majority of abstract nouns have, as a rule, no plural in German, nor, indeed, strictly speaking, in any language. But, as many abstract nouns have, along with their proper meanings, special significations admitting of a plural, it is often said that they borrow plurals from some of their derivatives. Thus :—

der Bau, building,	Bauten, buildings (rather than Baue).
das Bestreben, effort,	Bestrebungen, efforts,
der Betrug, deceit,	Betrügereien, frauds, acts of deceit.
der Bund, league,	Bündnisse, leagues.
der Dank, thanks,	Danksagungen, Dankbezeugungen, expressions of gratitude.
das Erbe, inheritance,	Erbschaften, inheritances.
der Friede, peace,	Friedensverträge, Friedensschlüsse, peaces.
die Gewalt, force,	Gewaltthätigkeiten, deeds of violence.
das Glück, luck,	Glücksfälle, pieces of good fortune.
die Gunst, favour,	Gunstbezeugungen, favours.
der Kummer, trouble,	Kümmernisse, troubles.
die Liebe, love,	Liebschaften, love-passages.
das Lob, praise,	Lobsprüche, Lobeserhebungen, panegyrics.
der Mord, murder,	Mordthaten, murders,
der Rat, counsel,	Ratschläge, counsels (but Räte, councillors).

* Measures of time are inflected in the plural; as drei Tage Ferien.

der Raub, robbery,	Räubereien, Raubfälle, robberies.
der Segen, blessing,	Segnungen, blessings.
der Schmuck, ornament	Schmucksachen, ornaments.
der Streit, quarrel,	Streitigkeiten, quarrels.
der Tod, death,	Todesfälle, Todesarten, deaths.
die Unbill, injustice,	Unbilden, wrongs.
der Verdruß, vexation,	Verdrießlichkeiten, vexations.
der Zank, quarrel,	Zänkereien, quarrels.

It should be added that all of these plurals have singulars of their own, and that, as in English, many regularly formed plurals of abstract and collective words have a different sense from the singular, or, more strictly speaking, are the plurals of only one of the meanings of the singular. Thus Brot, bread, loaf, Brote, loaves; Glas, Gläser; Bekanntschaft, Bekanntschaften (acquaintances); Freiheit, Freiheiten (liberties, immunities).

43. COMPOUNDS OF **Mann** take Leute in the plural; as Kaufmann, merchant, Kaufleute; Seemann, seaman, Seeleute.

But others have Männer only: Biedermänner, honest men; Ehrenmänner, men of honour; Staatsmänner, statesmen, &c. Notice Ehemänner, husbands; Eheleute, married people.

44. NOUNS WITHOUT SINGULAR.—As in English some nouns are used in the plural only.

Such are die Leute, people, die Eltern, parents, die Ferien, holidays, die Einkünfte, revenues, die Manen, manes, die Cerealien, cereals, die Fasten, Fasti, die Saturnalien, Saturnalia, and other borrowed words. With these may be classed some names of diseases, die Masern, measles, die Blattern, small-pox, which have singulars existing, but are commonly used in the plural; so again, die Kosten, die Unkosten, expenses, die Trümmer, ruins (Trumm being obsolete). The names of some ecclesiastical seasons, Ostern, Easter; Pfingsten, Whitsuntide; Weihnachten, Christmas, were originally plurals, but are often used as singular.

Chapter III.—Gender.

45. GENDER AND SEX. — In German, as in other languages, the most obvious differences of gender are based on sex. There are a certain number of pairs of male and female names; as, Vater, father, Mutter, mother; Neffe, nephew, Nichte, niece; Vetter, male cousin, Base, female cousin; Gänserich, gander, Gans, goose (where the masculine is formed from the feminine).

Obs. 1. Sometimes there is a set of three names, masculine, feminine, and neuter, the last being the *generic* name or noun of the class. Such are :—

der Sohn, son,	die Tochter, daughter,	das Kind, child.
der Hengst, stallion,	die Stute, mare,	das Pferd, das Roß, } horse.
der Stier, bull, der Ochs, ox, }	die Kuh, cow,	das Rind, beast.
der Eber, boar,	die Sau, sow,	das Schwein, pig.
der Hahn, cock,	die Henne, hen,	das Huhn, fowl.
der Widder, ram,	das Mutterschaf, die Schafmutter, } ewe,	das Schaf, sheep.

46. NAMES OF ANIMALS.—For most animals only a generic name exists; the generic names of larger animals and birds are generally masculine, as der Luchs, lynx, der Adler, eagle; those of smaller ones feminine, as, die Maus, mouse, die Nachtigall, nightingale. But there is no certain rule.

Obs. 1. When both a masculine and a feminine form exist, the masculine is usually the primitive, and is used as the generic form; as, der Löwe (fem. Löwin), der Bär (fem. Bärin). In a few cases—as, die Gans, goose (masc. der Gänserich); die Ente, duck (masc. der Enterich); die Katze, cat (masc. der Kater)—the feminine is the simpler and therefore the generic form.

Obs. 2. A few borrowed names, as Kamel, Dromedar, Krokodil, Zebra, Lama, Känguruh, are neuter.

Obs. 3. Names of the young of animals are neuter; das Kalb, calf; das Lamm, lamb; das Füllen, foal; das Kind, child.

47. TREES, PLANTS, &c.—Most names of trees, except those compounded with Baum and Dorn, are feminine; as, die Eiche, oak; die Pappel, poplar; die Linde, lime; so are a great many names of plants.

Notice, however, der Ahorn, maple; der Lorbeer, laurel; der Epheu, ivy; also der Waizen, wheat; der Roggen, rye; der Hafer, oats; der Mais, maize; der Reis, rice.

48. COLLECTIVE NOUNS.—Collective nouns beginning with Ge are neuter; as, das Gebirge, chain of mountains; das Gelächter, laughter; das Gerede, gossip.

Obs. A great many nouns beginning with the prefix Ge are not collectives, and therefore their gender is determined by other considerations. Thus, der Genosse, der Gefährte, &c., denote male persons; der Gesang, der Geschmack, der Gewinn, &c., fall under § 51; die Geburt, die Gemeinde, die Geschichte, &c., under other rules.

49. INFINITIVES, &c.—To the neuter gender belong:—

(1.) All infinitives used as nouns; as, das Leben, life; das Wissen, knowledge.

(2.) Undeclined adjectives used as nouns; as, das Berliner Blau, Prussian blue.

16359/3876

(3.) Names of letters, musical notes, &c.; as, das A.

(4.) Lastly, any word may be neuter when we wish to speak of it as a word only; as, das Ja, the word *yes;* ein großes Aber, a great *but;* das vertrauliche Du, the confidential *thou.*

50. GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES.—Most names of rivers are feminine, as die Themſe, die Donau, many of them as compounds of the old noun *aha=aqua*, others by analogy. But der Rhein, der Main, der Neckar, der Po, der Lech, der Inn.

Names of countries, provinces, and towns are neuter; as (das) Frankreich, (das) Baiern. But,—

(1.) Those ending in gau are masculine; as, der Rheingau.

(2.) Those ending in ei, au (not gau), feminine; as die Türkei, Turkey; die Moldau, Moldavia; and some in a, as die Herzegowina; die Dobrudſcha. On the other hand, China, Europa, Afrika, Amerika, are neuter.

(3.) Die Schweiz, Switzerland, die Lauſitz, Lusatia, die Krim, the Crimea, die Pfalz, the Palatinate, are feminine; der Peloponnes, der Cherſones, masculine. Elſaß, Alsace, is masculine or neuter.

51. ROOTS OF VERBS.—The roots of verbs, especially strong verbs, form, either of themselves or with the change of a vowel, nouns which are, with a very few exceptions, masculine and of the strong declension; as der Lauf, course (laufen); der Haß, hatred (haſſen); der Trug, deceit (trügen). The same rule applies, of course, to their compounds; as der Vorhang, curtain; der Verſuch, attempt; der Entſchluß, resolution; der Gebrauch, use.

Obs.—The most obvious exceptions are:—das Lob, praise; das Leid, suffering; das Spiel, play; das Schloß, lock, castle (but der Schluß, conclusion); die Wehr, defence; die Zier, ornament; die Willkür, caprice; die Scheu, awe (but der Abſcheu, horror).

52. ROOTS OF VERBS WITH t ADDED. — A considerable number of abstract nouns are formed by adding t* to

* The remains of a longer suffix.

the roots of verbs, changing at the same time b, g into f, ch; r, d into s, and in-erting s after a liquid. Such nouns are feminine; as, die Schrift, writing (ſchreiben); die Schlacht, battle (ſchlagen); die Laſt, burden (laden); die Brunſt, burning (brennen); die Kunſt, art (können).

Obs. 1. Except der Froſt, frost (frieren, fror); der Verluſt, loss (verlieren, verlor); das Gift, poison (geben—but die Mitgift, dowry, from the original meaning of Gift); der Verdacht, suspicion.

Obs. 2. Among other nouns ending in t notice die Heimat, home; die Heirat, marriage; der Monat, month; der Ernſt, earnestness; der Herbſt, harvest, autumn; der Dienſt, service, and Aſt, Baſt, Durſt, Geiſt, Gaſt, Maſt, Miſt, Roſt, all masculine.

53. MASCULINE ENDINGS.—Nouns ending in **ich, ig, ling** are masculine: as, der Lattich, lettuce; der Käfig, cage; der Sperling, sparrow. So also are those ending in ch after a consonant; as, der Marſch, march, except die Milch, milk, das Fleiſch, flesh, meat.

54. FEMININE ENDINGS. — Nouns ending in **in, ei, ie** (mostly borrowed), **ung, heit, keit, ſchaft** are feminine; as, die Arznei, medicine; die Philoſophie, philosophy; die Freundſchaft, friendship; die Sicherheit, safety; die Heiterkeit, cheerfulness; die Meinung, opinion.

The sole exceptions are patronymics, like der Nibelung, der Hornung, (a name for February), and das Petſchaft,* seal.

55. NEUTER ENDINGS. — Nouns ending in **tum, nis,**† **ſal, ſel** are mostly neuter; as, das Bistum, bishopric, das Ereignis, occurrence; das Scheuſal, monster; das Rätſel, riddle. Diminutives in **chen** and **lein** and foreign nouns in **ier** not denoting persons, as, das Revier, district, are neuter.

---

* A Slavonic word (Bohemian pecet) altered to look like German, much as we turn *écrevisse* into *crayfish*.

† The following are feminine or neuter: Ärgernis, Begegnis, Erſparnis, Fördernis, Schreckniſ, Verderbnis, Verſäumnis. In the sense of recognition Erkenntnis is feminine, in the sense of a judicial decision, neuter. Firnis, varnish, is masculine, but nis is not a suffix.

Except (1.) in tum; der Irrtum, error; der Reichtum, wealth.

(2.) in nis, die Bekümmernis, anxiety; die Besorgnis, apprehension; die Betrübnis, perplexity; die Empfängnis, conception; die Erlaubnis, permission; die Fäulnis, rottenness; die Finsternis, darkness; die Kenntnis, knowledge; die Erkenntnis, recognition; die Trocknis, drought; die Wildnis, wilderness; die Bedrängnis, oppression; die Bewandtnis, state; die Befugnis, authorisation, die Verdamnis, damnation.

(3.) in sel, sal: der Stöpsel, stopper of a bottle; die Drangsal, oppression; die Mühsal, trouble; die Trübsal, affliction; also der Wechsel, change; die Amsel, ousel; die Deichsel, pole of carriage; die Achsel, shoulder (from *axilla*); in the last four sel is not a suffix.

(4.) die Manier, manner.

56. NOUNS ENDING IN e. — Three classes of nouns end in e:—

(1.) Names of persons and animals. These are mostly masculine, excepting the names of insects, small birds, &c., mentioned in § 46, and, of course, obviously feminine nouns; as, die Nichte, niece. Notice die Waise, orphan, generally but not always feminine.

(2.) Abstract nouns, especially those derived from monosyllabic adjectives, and some other nouns connected with verbs and denoting things. These are feminine; as, die Gabe, gift; die Tiefe, depth; die Kälte, cold.

(3.) Collective nouns, which are neuter; as, das Gemälde, picture;* das Gebirge, range of mountains.

Notice der Käse, cheese; das Ende, end; das Auge, eye; das Erbe, inheritance.

57. TERMINATIONS el, en, er.—Most nouns ending in el, en, er are masculine, except the large class of infinitives used as nouns, which are, of course, neuter.

58. EXCEPTIONS.–FEMININES IN el.—The chief are:

Orgel, Kanzel, Trommel, Bibel, Pappel, Eichel, Fessel, Fabel, Geißel (scourge), Kartoffel, Zwiebel, Nadel, Kugel, Regel, Gabel,

* *i.e.*, a collection of details painted, a composition.

Schaufel, Stoppel, Sichel, Fibel, Schachtel, Fiedel, Inſel, Staffel, Schüſſel, Neſſel, Dattel, Diſtel, Achſel, Fackel, Klingel, Spindel, Wurzel, Wachtel, Droſſel, Miſtel, Tafel.*

Obs. The gender of several of these nouns is obvious from their Latin origin, viz.: Fabel from *fabula*, Inſel from *insula*, Regel from *regula*, Tafel from *tabula*, Schüſſel from *scutella*, Pappel from *populus*. Bibel and Orgel are from the neuter plurals *biblia*, *organa*, and have become feminine, as have in French, *bible* from *biblia*, *feuille* from *folia*, *étable* from *stabula*. Semmel comes from *simila*, Sichel from *secula*.

59. EXCEPTIONS.—NEUTERS IN el.—The chief are: Mittel, means; Segel, sail: Siegel, seal; Ueberbleibſel, remnant; Uebel, evil: Mündel, ward (also masculine and feminine); and all fractions in tel, as Drittel, third; Viertel, quarter, &c.†

---

* The following is a tolerably complete list:—

Achſel, shoulder,	Gurgel, throat,	Ranunkel, ranunculus,
Ampel, lamp,	Haſel, hazel,	Raſpel, rasp,
Amſel, ousel,	Hechel, heckle,	Raſſel, rattle,
Angel, fish-hook,	Hummel, humble-bee,	Schachtel, box,
Aſſel, woodlouse,	Inſel, island,	Schaufel, shovel,
Bibel, Bible,	Kachel, earthen-pot,	Schaukel, swing,
Brezel, cake in figure of 8.	Kartoffel, potato,	Schindel, shingle,
Cymbel, cymbal,	Klingel, bell,	Schüſſel, dish,
Dattel, date,	Koppel, brace, leash,	Semmel, roll,
Deichſel, carriage-pole,	Kugel, ball,	Sichel, sickle,
Diſtel, thistle,	Kuppel, cupola,	Spindel, spindle,
Droſſel, thrush,	Kurbel, crank,	Staffel, rung (of ladder),
Eichel, acorn,	Mandel, almond,	Stoppel, stubble,
Fabel, fable,	Mangel, mangle,	Tafel, table, board,
Fackel, torch,	Miſpel, medlar,	Trommel, drum,
Feſſel, fetter,	Miſtel, mistletoe,	Vokabel, word, vocable,
Fibel, primer,	Muſchel, cockle, mussel,	Wachtel, quail,
Fiedel, fiddle,	Nadel, needle,	Waffel, wafer-bread,
Fuchtel, broad-sword,	Neſſel, nettle,	Windel, swathing-cloth,
Gabel, fork,	Nudel, vermicelli,	Wurzel, root,
Geißel, scourge,	Pappel, poplar,	Zwiebel, onion.

† Also Mandel, set of 15; Nößel, pint; Rudel, herd; Takel, tackle.

60. FEMININES IN **er**.—The chief are :—

Ader, Auſter, Butter, Blatter, Schulter, Wimper, Faſer, Lauer,
Feder, Zither, Leier, Natter, Leiter (ladder), Elſter, Mauer,
Folter, Kammer, Nummer, Dauer, Kelter, Kiefer, Feier, Trauer,

and, of course, Mutter, Tochter, Schweſter.*

61. NEUTERS IN **er**.—The chief are :—

Alter, Lager, Futter, Laſter, Wetter, Ufer, Ruder, Muſter,
Wunder, Zimmer, Fieber, Pflaſter, Leder, Polſter, Abenteuer,
Kupfer, Silber, Meſſer, Kloſter, Pulver, Fenſter, Waſſer, Feuer.†

For neuters ending in ier, see § 55.

62. NEUTERS IN **en** :—

Almoſen, alms; Becken, basin; Eiſen, iron; Füllen, foal; Kiſſen, cushion; Laken, sheet (also masc.); Lehen, fief; Wappen, coat of arms; Zeichen, token, as well as all infinitives, as mentioned above.

---

* The following is a pretty complete list :—

Ader, vein,
Ammer, yellow-hammer
Auſter, oyster,
Blatter, blister,
Butter, butter,
Dauer, duration,
Elſter, magpie,
Faſer, fibre,
Feder, pen,
Folter, rack, torture,
Feier, festival,
Halfter, halter,
Kammer, chamber,
Kelter, wine-press,
Kiefer, pine,
Klafter, fathom,
Klammer, clamp,
Klapper, rattle,
Lauer, ambush,
Leber, liver,
Leier, lyre,
Leiter, ladder,
Maſer, spot, mark, (in pl.) measles,
Marter, torture,
Mutter, mother,
Natter, adder,
Nummer, number,
Nüſter, nostril (horse's),
Otter, otter,
Rüſter, elm,
Scheuer, barn,
Schleuder, sling,
Schulter, shoulder,
Steuer, tax,
Schweſter, sister,
Tochter, daughter,
Wimper, eye-lash,
Zither, guitar.

† The following is a more complete list :—

Abenteuer, adventure,
Alter, age,
Bauer, cage (see § 63),
Euter, udder,
Fenſter, window,
Feuer, fire,
Fieber, fever,
Fuder, load, barrel of wine,
Futter, fodder, lining,
Gitter, lattice, railings,
Kloſter, convent,
Kupfer, copper,
Lager, couch, camp,
Laſter, vice, sin,
Leder, leather,
Luder, carrion,
Malter, (measure),
Meſſer, knife,
Mieder, bodice,
Muſter, pattern, sample,
Pflaſter, plaster, pavement,
Polſter, bolster,
Pulver, powder,
Ruder, oar,
Silber, silver,
Ufer, shore,
Waſſer, water,
Wetter, weather,
Wunder, miracle,
Zimmer, room.

63. NOUNS WITH DOUBLE GENDER.

der Band (pl. Bände), volume,	das Band (pl. Bänder), ribbon ; (pl. Bande), fetter.
der Bauer (pl. Bauern), peasant (English *boor*),	der or das Bauer (pl. Bauer), cage (English *bower*).
der Buckel (pl. Buckel), hump (from biegen,)	die Buckel (pl. Buckeln), boss (*buccula* through *boucle*).
der Chor, body of singers,	das Chor, choir, as part of a church.
der Erbe (pl. Erben), heir,	das Erbe (no pl.), inheritance.
der Gehalt, capacity (of a vessel),	das Gehalt, salary.
der Geisel (pl. Geisel), hostage,*	die Geißel (pl. Geißeln), scourge.
der Haft (pl. Hafte), holdfast, clasp,	die Haft, (no pl.), custody
	das Haft, (pl. Hafte), ephemera.
der Harz, Harz mountains,	das Harz, resin, turpentine.
der Heide, (pl. Heiden), heathen,	die Heide, (pl. Heiden), heath.
der Hut, (pl. Hüte), hat,	die Hut, guard, watchfulness.†
der Kiefer, (pl. Kiefer), jawbone (kauen),	die Kiefer, (pl. Kiefern), pine (Kienföhre).
der Koller, vertigo (χολέρα),	das Koller, (pl. Koller), cape, (*collarium*, through *collier*).
der Kunde§ (pl. Kunden), customer,	die Kunde (pl. Kunden), tidings.
der Leiter (pl. Leiter), leader, (leiten),	die Leiter (pl. Leitern), ladder (lehnen).
der Mangel (pl. Mängel), want,	die Mangel‡ (pl. Mangeln), mangle.
die Mark (pl. Mark), mark, shilling.	die Mark (pl. Marken), march, frontier-land.
das Mark, (no pl.), marrow,	
der Marsch (pl. Märsche), march,	die Marsch (pl. Marschen), marsh.
der Mast (pl. Maste(n)), ship's mast,	die Mast (no pl.), mast for hogs.
der Messer (pl. Messer), measurer (messen),	das Messer (pl. Messer), knife.
der Moment (pl. Momente), of time,	das Moment (pl. Momente), of force, momentum.

* Also spelt, but not so correctly, Geißel. Notice zur Geisel geben.

† Almost exclusively in phrases with prepositions, as auf der Hut sein, to be on one's guard. It has obviously no plural.

‡ Or Mange, originally same as *mangonel*. § Sometimes feminine.

der Ohm (pl. Ohme), uncle,	die Ohm (pl. Ohme),* 40 gallons (same root as English *awme*).
der Reis (no pl.), rice,	das Reis (pl. Reiser), twig.
der Schenk (pl. Schenken), butler,	die Schenke (pl. Schenken), wine-shop.
der Schild (pl. Schilde), shield,	das Schild (pl. Schilder), sign board.
der See (pl. Seen), lake,	die See (no pl.), ocean.
die Steuer (pl. Steuern), tax,	das Steuer (pl. Steuer), helm.
der Stift (pl. Stifte), peg,	das Stift (pl. Stifter or Stifte), ecclesiastical foundation.
der Thor (pl. Thoren), fool,	das Thor (pl. Thore), gate.
der Verdienst, earnings,	das Verdienst, merit.
der Vorwand (pl. -wände), pretext,	die Vorwand (pl. -wände), fore-wall, screen.
der or die Weihe ‡ (pl. Weihen), kite,	die Weihe, consecration. †

64. COMPOUND NOUNS. — The general rule in all languages is that compound nouns take the gender of the last part of the compound. There are, however, in German one or two exceptions to this rule.

(1.) Mitgift, dowry, is feminine, as Gift naturally would be, while Gift, which is only used in the meaning of poison, is neuter; Abscheu, horror, is masculine, while Scheu, terror, is feminine; Antwort, answer, is feminine, while Wort, word, is neuter.

(2.) Some of the compounds of Mut are feminine, viz., Anmut, grace; Demut, humility; Großmut, magnanimity; Langmut, long-suffering; Sanftmut, meekness; Schwermut, melancholy; Wehmut, grief, sadness. Other compounds of Mut, as Übermut, Hochmut, pride; Unmut, despondency, displeasure; Kleinmut, pusillanimity; Mismut, ill-humour, are masculine. The feminine word Armut, poverty, has nothing to do with Mut.

(3.) Of the compounds of Teil, Anteil, share, Bestandteil, component part, Vorteil, advantage, are masculine; Erbteil, inheritance, Gegenteil, opposite, Nachteil, disadvantage, are neuter.

---

* Also plural as singular, § 41. ‡ Or der Weih (pl. Weihen).

† Notice der or das Floß, der or die Haspel, der or die Hirse, der or das Juwel, der or das Kamin, der or das Knäbel, die or das Neunauge, der or die Pacht, der or das Szepter, der or das Ungestüm, der or die Zierat. (Andresen.)

Chapter IV.—Declension of Adjectives.

65. VARIOUS FORMS. — Adjectives used as epithets, and immediately preceding the nouns to which they belong, are declined to agree with those nouns in gender, number and case. But adjectives separated from nouns are not declined. Thus German stands midway between modern English, on the one hand, and the classical languages and French on the other. Note the following examples:—

Dieſes Kind iſt **arm**,	this child is poor.
Ein **armes** Kind,	a poor child.
Das macht die Mutter **ſtolz**,	that makes the mother proud.
Die **guten** Männer,	the good men.
Die Wünſche **guter** Männer,	the wishes of good men.

Further, adjectives may be declined in three ways, according as they stand (1) without article or pronoun; (2) after the indefinite article or a pronominal adjective declined like it; (3) after the definite article or a pronominal adjective declined like it. These inflections are the relics of longer forms. In modern German the general principle is that there should be enough inflection to show the case, and no more. Thus ein guter Mann, because ein has no characteristic termination, but dieſer guten Männer, because **er** of dieſer shows the case.

66. STRONG DECLENSION. — Adjectives without article or pronominal adjective preceding are declined as follows :—

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	guter,	gute,	gutes,	gute,
G.	guten,	guter,	guten,	guter,
D.	gutem,	guter,	gutem,	guten,
A.	guten,	gute,	gutes,	gute.

The genitive masculine and neuter used to end in **es**, which is retained in some phrases.—**en** is now the usual form.

Examples with nouns :—

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Masc.		Masc.	
N. guter Wein, good wine,		zehn kleine Neger, ten little	
G. guten Weines,		zehn kleiner Neger,	[negroes.
D. gutem Weine,		zehn kleinen Negern,	
A. guten Wein,		zehn kleine Neger.	
Singular.		*Plural.*	
Masc.		Masc.	
N. wenig guter Wein,	not much good wine.	allerlei gute Weine,	all sorts of good wines.
G. wenig guten Weines,		allerlei guter Weine,	
D. wenig gutem Weine,		allerlei guten Weinen,	
A. wenig guten Wein,		allerlei gute Weine,	
Singular.		*Singular.*	
Fem.		Neut.	
N. etwas süße Milch, some sweet		grünes Gras, green grass.	
G. etwas süßer Milch,	[milk,	grünen Grases,	
D. etwas süßer Milch,		grünem Grase,	
A. etwas süße Milch.		grünes Gras.	

This declension can obviously be used after numerals* and the indeclinable words etwas, vielerlei, allerlei. Also after viel, wenig, when undeclined, and after manch, solch, welch, when, as often happens, they are also undeclined.

* Except after the inflected parts of zwei, drei.

67. WEAK DECLENSION.—After the definite article, and after the pronominal adjectives dieſer, jener, jeder, derſelbe, welcher:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem	Neut.	All genders.
N.	der kleine,	die kleine,	das kleine,	die kleinen,
G.	des kleinen,	der kleinen,	des kleinen,	der kleinen,
D.	dem kleinen,	der kleinen,	dem kleinen,	den kleinen,
A.	den kleinen,	die kleine,	das kleine,	die kleinen.

or with nouns:—

	Singular.	
	Masc.	Neut.
N.	der dicke Knabe, the fat boy,	dieſes neue Buch, this new book,
G.	des dicken Knaben,	dieſes neuen Buches,
D.	dem dicken Knaben,	dieſem neuen Buche,
A.	den dicken Knaben.	dieſes neue Buch.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
	Fem.	Fem.
N.	dieſe blinde Maus, this blind	jene blinden Mäuſe,
G.	dieſer blinden Maus, [mouse,	jener blinden Mäuſe,
D.	dieſer blinden Maus,	jenen blinden Mäuſen,
A.	dieſe blinde Maus.	jene blinden Mäuſe.

	Singular.		*Plural.*	
	Masc.		Fem.	
N.	welcher alte Hut.	} which old hat,	dieſelben ſchönen Frauen,	} the same fair ladies.
G.	welches alten Hutes,		derſelben ſchönen Frauen,	
D.	welchem alten Hute,		denſelben ſchönen Frauen,	
A.	welchen alten Hut,		dieſelben ſchönen Frauen,	

68. MIXED DECLENSION.—After the indefinite article, the word kein, and possessive adjectives, the adjective follows the strong declension in the nominative and accusative singular, but the weak declension in all other cases:—

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter.	All genders.
N.	mein guter,	meine gute,	mein gutes,	meine guten,
G.	meines guten,	meiner guten,	meines guten,	meiner guten,
D.	meinem guten,	meiner guten,	meinem guten,	meinen guten,
A.	meinen guten,	meine gute.	mein gutes,	meine guten.

Examples with nouns :—

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.
N.	ein ſchöner Tag, a fine day,	ihre hübſche Tochter, her pretty
G.	eines ſchönen Tages,	ihrer hübſchen Tochter, [daughter
D.	einem ſchönen Tage,	ihrer hübſchen Tochter,
A.	einen ſchönen Tag.	ihre hübſche Tochter.

Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	unſer altes Pferd, our old	unſere alten Pferde, our old
G.	unſeres alten Pferdes, [horse,	unſerer alten Pferde, [horses,
D.	unſerem alten Pferde,	unſeren alten Pferden,
A.	unſer altes Pferd.	unſere alten Pferde.

Lastly, after einige, etliche, keine, andere, viele, wenige, mehrere, einzelne, manche, ſolche, welche, the Nom. and Acc. Plural may have the strong form ; as, einige gute Männer, einiger guten Männer.

Further details especially about manch, ſolch, &c., are given in the syntax of adjectives.

69. NOTES ON SOME ADJECTIVES.

(1.) When an inflexion is added to adjectives ending in el, en, er, like edel, finſter, verborgen, golden, we have two e's on each side of a liquid. One of them is generally dropped for the sake of euphony. Thus :—

edel gives edle, (edlen or) edeln, edler, edles, (edlem or) edelm.
heiter ,, heitere, heitern (or heitren), heitrer, heitres, (heitrem or) heiterm, but
golden ,, goldne, goldnen, goldner, goldnes, goldnem, only.

(2.) Adjectives ending in e, like träge, are declined as if the e did not exist: träger, träge, träges, &c.

(3.) In hoch, ch becomes h when followed by a vowel, making hoher, hohe, hohes, hohen, &c.

70. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS.—Any adjective may be used as a noun, by prefixing an article or pronominal adjective, writing it with a capital letter, and declining as if the noun Mann, &c., were still present. The commonest are such adjectives as gelehrt, fremd, deutſch, bedient, with Mann understood. Some feminine adjectives are so used, and very often neuters like das Schöne, the beautiful, beauty in the abstract. All such nouns retain their declension as adjectives. Thus—

Singular.

Mixed.	Masc.	*Weak.*
N. ein Bedienter, a servant,		der Bediente, the servant,
G. eines Bedienten,		des Bedienten,
D. einem Bedienten,		dem Bedienten,
A. einen Bedienten.		den Bedienten.

Plural.

Weak.	*Strong.*
N. unſere Bedienten,	vier Bediente,
G. unſerer Bedienten,	vier Bedienter,
D. unſeren Bedienten,	vier Bedienten.
A. unſere Bedienten.	vier Bediente.

Singular.

Fem.—*Mixed.*	Neuter.—*Weak.*
N. eine Fremde,* a foreign woman,	das Schöne, the beautiful
G. einer Fremden,	des Schönen, [(beauty),
D. einer Fremden,	dem Schönen,
A. eine Fremde.	das Schöne.

Singular. *Plural.*

Fem.—*Weak.*	*Strong.*
N. die Fremde, the foreign woman,	acht Fremde, eight foreigners.
G. der Fremden,	acht Fremder,
D. der Fremden,	acht Fremden,
A. die Fremde.	acht Fremde.

* To be distinguished from the weak noun die Fremde, foreign country, genitive der Fremde.

Chapter V.—Comparison of Adjectives.

71. ORDINARY FORMATION.—The comparative and superlative are formed, as in English, by adding er and eſt or ſt; as, mild, benevolent, milder, mildeſt (der mildeſte); reizend, charming, reizender, reizendſt (der reizendſte.) Some of the commonest monosyllabic adjectives modify the root-vowel, but the great bulk of adjectives do not.

72. MODIFICATION — The following common monosyllabic adjectives modify the root-vowel a, o, u:—

arg, hart, alt,	bad, hard, old,
krank, lang, kalt,	sick, long, cold,
rot,* ſcharf, ſchwarz, arm,	red, sharp, black, poor,
jung, kurz, klug, warm,	young, short, wise, warm;

so also does the adverb oft, and the adjectives groß, hoch, nahe, which are slightly irregular.

Adjectives of more than one syllable do not modify, except now and then geſund, sound, healthy. Even the compounds of the above list, as blutarm, desperately poor, todkrank, sick unto death, do not modify, or it may perhaps be said, scarcely admit of comparison.

The following sometimes modify: bang, fearful, blaß, pale, dumm, stupid, fromm, pious, glatt, smooth, karg, scanty, naß, wet, rund, round, ſchmal, narrow, zart, tender.

73. **eſt** OR **ſt** IN SUPERLATIVE.—If the final syllable has an accent, and ends in a vowel, a dental (t, d, th) or a sibilant (s, ſt, ſch, z), eſt is added to form the superlative; in other cases ſt only. The e can, however, easily be dropped after a t sound not preceded by ſ. Present participles and uncontracted past participles having an unaccented e in their last syllable, do not insert the e. Examples are:—dreiſt, der

* rot in its metaphorical sense, as der roteſte Demokrat, does not modify.

dreiſteſte; grau, der graueſte (grau'ſte); hübſch, der hübſcheſte; beliebt, der beliebteſte; wild, der wild(e)ſte; gebildet, der gebildetſte; reizend, der reizendſte.

Obs. Adjectives ending in er drop the e of the root in the comparative, as ein heitrerer Morgen, ein heitreres Feſt. Both bitterern and bittrern, muntererm and muntrerm are admissible.

74. IRREGULAR COMPARISONS (forms in brackets are regular):—

groß, great,	(größer),	der größte,
gut, good,	beſſer,	der beſte,
hoch, high,	höher,	(der höchſte),
nahe, nigh, near,	(näher),	der nächſte,
viel, much,	mehr,	der meiſte.

There are also a certain number of comparative and superlative adjectives, of which the only positive is an adverb or preposition. Such are:—

(aus),	der äußere,	der äußerſte,
(in, innen),	der innere,	der innerſte,
(hinten),	der hintere,	der hinterſte,
(mitten),*	der mittlere,	der mittelſte,
(oben),	der obere,	der oberſte,
(unten),	der untere,	der unterſte,
(vorn),	der vordere,	der vorderſte.

Adjectives ending in iſch form, according to some authorities, the superlative by adding t only, as kindiſch, am kindiſchten; but am kindiſcheſten is generally preferred, or a form with am meiſten (§ 76). Groß adds t only, and so in Goethe do ſüß and some other adjectives, *i.e.*, am ſüßten instead of am ſüßeſten.

75. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.—As most adjectives in German are used as adverbs, the comparison of adverbs presents no difficulty, except as to the use of the forms of the superlative (höchſt, höchſtens, am höchſten, aufs höchſte), which is given under adverbs. There are a few genuine adverbs that have noteworthy or borrowed forms:—

* The adjective form mittel is still used in composition and in a few expressions, as von mittlerer Größe.

bald, früh,	eher, früher,	am eheſten, am früh(e)ſten,
gern,	lieber,	am liebſten,
(wenig),	minder,	am mindeſten,
gut, wohl,	beſſer,	am beſten.
oft,	öfter,	am öfteſten

Wohl and unwohl, used of health, have a regular comparison: wohler, am wohlſten; öfters, *comparatively often*, differs from öfter, *more often*.

76. COMPARISON WITH **mehr** AND **meiſt.** — The periphrastic comparison is used:—

(1.) With many participles which cannot be considered exactly adjectives: thus mehr verachtet, am meiſten verachtet. On the other hand, geliebter, geliebteſt are quite legitimate, the participle having practically become an adjective.

(2.) Sometimes in the comparative of adjectives ending in r, and the superlative of those ending in iſch, for the sake of euphony.

(3.) In comparing adjectives like gram, feind, &c., which are never used as epithets: er iſt mir am meiſten feind.

77. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.—Comparatives and superlatives are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives. The only point to be remembered is that the final er of the comparative has become part of the stem, and must have a further inflexion. We have, for example:—ein beſſ(e)rer Mann (not ein beſſer Mann); ein finſtrerer Wald *a darker wood* (not ein finſtrer Wald, which means *a dark wood*). Thus:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	ein beſſ(e)rer Mann,	beſſ(e)re Männer,
G.	eines beſſer(e)n Mannes,	beſſ(e)rer Männer,
D.	einem beſſer(e)n Manne,	beſſer(e)n Männern,
A.	einen beſſer(e)n Mann,	beſſ(e)re Männer,

and so on.

Superlatives are nearly always preceded by the definite article, occasionally by a pronominal adjective. When the superlative is used as a predicate, either the ordinary form with the definite article (der, die, das größte), or an adverbial form with am (am größten) is used according to meaning. *See* Syntax § 304.

Chapter VI.—Suffixes of Nouns and Adjectives.*

78. NOUN-ENDINGS.—We shall confine ourselves to those endings which are obviously so to a student of modern German, omitting such as presuppose a knowledge of the earlier forms of the language. The chief are as follow :—

79. **er** denotes a person, frequently an agent. It is added—

(1.) To roots of verbs, as : der Jäger, hunter, from jag-en; der Käufer, buyer, from kauf-en; der Erhalter, preserver, from erhalt-en.

(2.) To nouns, as der Vogler, fowler, from Vogel; der Wagner, waggoner, from Wagen; der Gärtner, gardener, from Garten.

(3.) To names of places, as der Schweizer, Swiss; der Frankfurter, Frankforter, inhabitant of Frankfort.†

Modification of the root-vowel is generally required in (1), less frequently in (2), and not at all in (3).

Obs. 1. er, not representing a person, is a tolerably common termination of all three genders, as der Teller, das Gewitter, die Feder; ier is a masculine or neuter ending of some borrowed words, as der Juwelier, das Papier.

Obs. 2. Söldner, Glöckner, Schuldner, &c., seem formed by analogy with Gärtner, &c.

---

* Abbreviated from Becker.

† For the curious form der Kölner Dom, &c., see Syntax, 319.

Obs. 3. When the masculine ends in erer, a form in which the first e is often dropped, a double form of the feminine exists, as from der Abenteu(e)rer, Abenteurerin or Abenteuerin, from der Eroberer, die Eroberin or Eroberin, &c.

Obs. 4. Nouns denoting relationship ending in ter, as Mutter, and one or two like Leiter (ladder), in which ter denotes an instrument, are etymologically interesting.

80. **el** forms masculine, and occasionally feminine and neuter nouns; many of them are from roots of verbs, and denote an instrument, as der Schlüſſel, key, from ſchluß- (ſchließen)*; der Würfel, die, from wurf- (werfen); der Flügel, wing, from flug- (fliegen); Hebel, lever, from heb-en.

The root-vowel is generally modified when possible. In some words e is dropped, as der Stahl, steel; das Beil, axe. el is also, especially in provincial German, a diminutive ending, as das Mädel, der Hänſel.

81. **in** is used to form feminines, as: die Fürſtin, princess, from der Fürſt; die Bärin, she-bear, from der Bär; die Hündin, bitch, from der Hund; die Gräfin, countess, from der Graf; die Negerin, negress, from der Neger; (compare English *vixen*, feminine of *fox*).

The addition of in generally entails the modification of the root-vowel, but from der Sklave, slave, is formed die Sklavin, from der Mohr, Moor, die Mohrin.

82. **ung** forms verbal nouns like the English *ing*, denoting the action of the verb, as: die Befreiung, deliverance; die Eroberung, conquest, &c.

They easily pass into describing the result of the action. Thus we can say either die Erfindung des Pulvers, the invention (finding-out) of gunpowder, or die nützlichen Erfindungen dieſes Jahrhunderts, the useful inventions (things found out) of this century. Occasionally it forms collectives, as die Waldung, wooded country; die Kleidung, dress.

* But Schüſſel, *dish*, from *scutella*. The roots given as ſchluß-, &c., have been "levelled out" in the modern conjugation.

83. **ing (ung)** is a masculine patronymic, as in Döring, Breiting, Nibelung, and the English *Woking*, *Etheling*; compare also Merovinger, Karolinger.

el+ing=**ling** is a masculine ending, as in der Jüngling, youth, and a few names of animals, &c., as der Hänfling, linnet; der Häckerling, chopped straw. It is not unfrequently contemptuous, as in der Höfling, courtier: der Emporkömmling, upstart. ling involves the modification of the root-vowel.

84. **chen** AND **lein** are compound terminations—ch+en and el+ein, form diminutives, as das Männchen, from der Mann; das Fräulein, from die Frau; das Söhnchen, from der Sohn; das Mägdlein, das Mädchen, from die Magd; they are all neuter.

They generally require the modification of the root-vowel. Nouns ending in el do not add lein, but simply ein, as der Vogel, bird, das Vöglein; der Esel, ass, das Eselein. To words ending in g or ch, or in those letters followed by e, the double diminutive elchen is added, as das Büchelchen, from das Buch: das Züngelchen, from die Zunge, (but Büchlein, Zünglein are far more common). The English *kin* in *mannikin*, *pannikin*, *bodkin*, answers to chen.

85. **heit, keit**, are feminine terminations, forming abstract nouns from other nouns or from adjectives, as die Kindheit, childhood, from Kind; die Wahrheit, truth, from wahr. Heit (our *head*, *hood*, as in *Godhead*, *maidenhood**) is an old noun meaning *state*. †

(1.) As a general rule heit is added to nouns and to simple adjectives, as die Kindheit, childishness; die Dummheit, stupidity; and to derived adjectives ending in en, as die Trockenheit, dryness.

(2.) keit is added to other derived adjectives, as die Eitelkeit, vanity; die Fröhlichkeit, cheerfulness (except die Sicherheit, die Dunkelheit die Einzelheit).

(3.) A number of adjectives insert ig before keit, as die Süßigkeit, from süß, sweet; die Standhaftigkeit, from standhaft, steadfast; die Leichtigkeit, from leicht, easy. Forms in heit, as die Süßheit, die Leichtheit, often exist side by side with these forms.

---

* Which Mr. Morris writes *maidenhead*.

† -keit, originally from the coalescence of heit with the ending ig, as in Ewigkeit, has come to be a distinct ending.

86. **e** (feminine) forms abstract nouns from adjectives, as die Güte, goodness, from gut; die Tiefe, depth, from tief.

It modifies the root-vowel. Like many similar words, some of the abstract nouns in e get a concrete meaning; and where derivatives in e and in heit from the same root exist side by side, that in e is generally used for a concrete, that in heit for an abstract idea, as die Fläche, surface, die Flachheit, flatness; die Ebene, plain, die Ebenheit, evenness.*

87. **ſchaft** is another feminine termination, forming,

(1.) abstract nouns from other nouns and adjectives, as die Feindſchaft, enmity, from Feind; die Gefangenſchaft, captivity, from gefangen.

(2.) collective nouns, as die Dienerſchaft, body of servants; die Burſchenſchaft, union of students.† It is a noun (English *ship* in *lordship*); compare die Landſchaft with English *landscape*.

88. **tum** is a neuter‡ termination, forming nouns either abstract or collective from other nouns, as das Papſttum, papacy; das Rittertum, chivalry or body of knights; das Herzogtum, duchy. It is likewise a noun, connected with thun, to do (English *dom*).

89. **nis** (English *ness*) forms some feminine and a good many neuter nouns. They are formed from adjectives, verbs, and even from other nouns, as das Bündnis, alliance; die Fäulnis, rottenness; das Hindernis, obstacle.

The root-vowel is sometimes modified. Most of them have passed from denoting abstract qualities to denote the result of an action, &c. It is worth noticing that das Ereignis, das Verhältnis, are associated with the reflexive verbs. ſich ereignen, to occur, ſich verhalten, to stand in relation.

---

* There are also masculine and neuter words ending in **e**; of course the letter is all that is left of some longer suffix.

† Notice Grafſchaft, *county*, just as we use *lordship* of a district.

‡ Except in der Reichtum, der Irrtum, which are masculine.

90. **ſal, ſel,** form nouns, almost all neuter and mostly from verbs, as das Drangſal, tribulation; das Überbleibſel, remnant; das Schickſal, fate; das Scheuſal, monster.

91. **ei** is a feminine ending with the following meanings:

(1.) An abstract idea, or an action, occupation, as die Malerei, painting; die Sklaverei, slavery. Many of the nouns in ei, especially those formed from verbs in eln, ern, have a depreciatory meaning, as die Schwätzerei, chattering; die Kinderei, childishness; die Heuchelei, hypocrisy; die Würfelei, dicing.

(2.) The place where work is done, as die Meierei, farm-house; die Druckerei, printing-office.

(3.) Collective, as die Reiterei, cavalry.

There are many half-foreign words ending in ie, as die Theorie, die Melodie, die Artillerie.

92. ADJECTIVAL ENDINGS.—**en, ern.** Adjectives are formed from the names of materials by adding en, or n only, as golden, golden; wollen, woollen; ledern, leathern; from Gold, Wolle, Leder.

The root-vowel is not modified, except in the archaic gülden. Sometimes such adjectives are formed from the plural as hölzern, gläſern, and in imitation of them we have adjectives in ern, like ſteinern from Stein; thönern from Thon; eiſern from Eiſen.

93. **ig** corresponds to the English *y*, and might be rendered *having to do with.* It forms adjectives chiefly from nouns denoting things or qualities, and generally requires the modification of the root-vowel,* as künftig, future, from Kunft (Ankunft, &c.); mächtig, mighty, from Macht; einäugig, one-eyed, from Auge; but blutig, bloody, from Blut; artig, pretty, from Art. Notice lebendig, ſelbſtändig.

There is another group of adjectives in ig, formed from adverbs of place and time, as hieſig from hier; dortig, from dort, &c. They do not modify the root-vowel. As to their use, *see* Syntax, § 303.

* It represents not only *ie*, which would require the Umlaut, but *ee* and *ae* which would not.

94. **icht** denotes likeness, or the possession of a quality. Its older form is *oht*, and therefore it does not require the Umlaut —felsicht, rocky; sumpficht, marshy, &c. There are a few nouns in icht, as Habicht, hawk; Dickicht, thicket.

Obs. Compare eine steinerne Bank, a bench made of stone, ein steiniger Acker, a field full of stones, steiniges Obst, stone-fruit (plums, peaches, &c.), steinichtes Obst, fruit as hard as a stone.

95. **isch** means *appertaining to*, as our *ish*, while ig denotes the possession of a thing or quality. It forms adjectives— (1.) from nouns denoting persons, especially the names of agents in er, as diebisch, thievish, from Dieb; närrisch, foolish, from Narr; verräterisch, treacherous; kriegerisch, warlike.

(2.) From names of countries, towns, and even of persons, as preußisch, Prussian; jüdisch, Jewish; kölnisch, belonging to Cologne; Homerisch, Homeric.

(3.) It is also used largely to form new words, or to naturalise foreign ones, as physikalisch, musikalisch, &c.

Most of the older words taking isch have the Umlaut, as närrisch, pfälzisch (Palatine), darmstädtisch.

Some words in isch have a depreciatory meaning, as kindisch, childish, compared with kindlich, childlike; höfisch,* courtier-like, compared with höflich, courteous.

96. **bar**, connected with the root *to bear*, means *capable of* (English *able*), and forms adjectives—

(1.) From the roots of verbs, as lesbar, readable, genießbar, enjoyable;

(2.) From nouns, mostly roots of verbs, as gangbar, accessible, current, sichtbar, visible, fruchtbar, fruitful.

Most of the adjectives ending in bar have a passive meaning; a few, as dankbar, thankful, dienstbar, serviceable, have an active meaning.

97. **sam** (English *some*), means *inclined to*, *adapted to*, and forms adjectives from nouns, from other adjectives, and from

* Contracted into hübsch, which retains the earlier and undegraded meaning of the word; deutsch is *diutsch*, *popular*. Mensch is also a contraction of Mann with a suffix.

the roots of verbs, as arbeitſam, industrious (work-some); ſorgſam, careful; gemeinſam, common; empfindſam, sensitive; biegſam, pliant (cf. Engl. *buxom*).

Nearly all the adjectives in ſam have an active sense, and are thus contrasted with those in bar, as furchtſam, timid; furchtbar, terrible; heilſam, wholesome (healing); heilbar, curable. On the other hand biegſam, lenkſam, &c., have a passive sense.

98. **lich** (English *like*, *ly*) means characteristic of, acting like. It forms adjectives —

(1.) From nouns, as menſchlich, human; brüderlich, brotherly; täglich, daily. Some of them pass into the meaning *belonging to*, as königlich, royal, in the sense of being the king's property as well as in that of kinglike.

(2.) From the roots of verbs, as ſterblich, mortal (given to die); vergänglich, transitory; verehrlich, worthy of honour; unvermeidlich, unavoidable. Some have an active, some a passive sense.

(3.) From adjectives, often but not necessarily conveying the idea of the English *ish*; *i.e.*, an idea of diminished intensity, as ſchwärzlich, blackish; ältlich, oldish; gewöhnlich, customary.

This termination generally requires the Umlaut. It should be noticed that many of the adjectives with lich are now used only as adverbs, so that lich is often called an adverbial termination.

99. **haft, haftig** are derived from the root of haben, and properly mean *having*, so that teilhaftig really means having a share; ernſthaft, serious (having earnestness); rieſenhaft, gigantic (like a giant).

When adjectives in haft and lich come from the same roots, those in haft refer rather to persons, those in lich to things. Thus, a house is wohnlich, habitable, but a person is wohnhaft, settled, domiciled in a place; glaubhaft, is trustworthy (of a man); glaublich, credible (of a story).

The Prefixes of nouns and adjectives are discussed after the Prefixes of verbs.

Chapter VII.—Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives.

100. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—The German personal pronouns answer exactly to the English, and are declined as follows :—

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. **ich**, I,	**wir**, we,
G. **meiner (mein)**,	**unſer**,
D. **mir**,	**uns**,
A. **mich**,	**uns**.

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. **du**, thou,	**ihr**, ye,
G. **deiner (dein)**,	**euer**,
D. **dir**,	**euch**,
A. **dich**.	**euch**.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
N. **er**, he,	**ſie** she,	**es**, it,	**ſie**, they,
G. **ſeiner (ſein)**,	**ihrer**,	[**ſeiner (ſein)**],*	**ihrer**
D. **ihm**,	**ihr**,	[**ihm**],	**ihnen**,
A. **ihn**,	**ſie**,	**es**,	**ſie**.

101. NOTES.—The following points should be noticed :—

(1.) The genitive and dative of the third person neuter given above are not very much used; deſſen or desſelben is often substituted for the Genitive, dem or demſelben for the Dative.

* The original genitive of the third person was es. This explains the use of es with many adjectives otherwise governing a genitive. § 335.

(2.) After prepositions governing the accusative, es is generally avoided, but Grimm strongly advocates it, and often uses it. (*See* Grimm's Dict. es.)

(3.) When *it* is the object of a preposition, compounds of dar, da are used; as, davon, *therefrom*, *thereof*, *from it;* daraus, *out of it*, &c. (*See* § 114.)

(4.) The forms mein, dein, for the genitive singular are the original forms, but are now to be found chiefly in poetry, as Goethe's Ich denke dein, I think of thee, and in phrases like Vergiß mein nicht, forget me not.

(5.) When compounded with the preposition willen, halben, wegen, the genitives of the personal pronouns insert an euphonic t, as meinet-wegen, um unſertwegen. Notice besides: allen-t-halben, deſſen-t-wegen, deren-t-wegen, um deſſen-t-willen.

102. PRONOUNS OF ADDRESS.—In addressing young children, animals, near relations, or intimate friends, du is used in the singular, and ihr in the plural; in ordinary intercourse the plural pronoun of the third person (Sie) for both numbers; it is then written with a capital letter (*see* Syntax §§ 409—413).

103. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. — The reflexive pronouns are identical with the personal pronouns except in the third person. Sich is used as the dative and accusative of the reflexive pronoun of the third person in all genders and in both numbers, as :—

Sie führte das Kind mit ſich, she took the child with her (self).

Ich ſchmeichle mir, I flatter myself.

Er ſchmeichelt ſich, he flatters himself.

Wir haben uns gerühmt, we boasted ourselves.

104. REFLEXIVE FOR RECIPROCAL.—The reflexive pronoun is often used as a reciprocal pronoun, *i.e.*, to mean *each other*, as :—

Dieſe Freunde ſind ſich treu und lieben ſich innig, these friends are faithful to each other, and love each other dearly.

105. USE OF ſelbſt.—In English the words *myself*, *himself*, *herself*, &c., are used in two ways :—

(i.) They are reflexive pronouns properly so called, and stand as the objects of verbs or prepositions. They are then, of course, to be translated as in the above examples, § 103.

(ii.) *Himself*, *myself*, *yourselves*, are often put in apposition to *he*, *I*, *you*, &c. They must then be rendered in German by the indeclinable word ſelbſt (less frequently ſelber) :

Ich habe es ſelbſt gethan, I did it myself, *or* I myself did it.

Ich ſelber kann ſie retten, I myself can save her, *or* I can save her myself.

Obs. 1. Selbſt is also used with the oblique cases of the reflexive pronouns, when emphasis is required, as:—

Er ſchadet ſich ſelbſt, he injures himself.

Obs. 2. Selbſt *before* a noun or pronoun is rendered by *even*.

106. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. — The possessive adjectives corresponding to the personal pronouns are :—

mein, meine, mein, my...	corresponding	to	ich, I.
dein, deine, dein, thy ...	„	„	du, thou.
ſein, ſeine, ſein, his	„	„	er, he.
ihr, ihre, ihr, her	„	„	ſie, she.
ſein, ſeine, ſein, its	„	„	es, it.
unſer, unſere, unſer, our..	„	„	wir, we.
euer, eure, euer, your ...	„	„	ihr, ye.
ihr, ihre, ihr, their	„	„	ſie, they.
(Ihr, Ihre, Ihr, your ...	„	„	Sie, you).

107. DECLENSION OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. —Possessive adjectives are declined exactly like the indefinite article. They produce the same effect on adjectives following them :—

	Singular			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	dein,	deine,	dein,	deine,
G.	deines,	deiner,	deines,	deiner,
D.	deinem,	deiner,	deinem,	deinen,
A.	deinen,	deine,	dein.	deine.
N.	unſer,	unſere,	unſer,	unſere,
G.	unſeres,	unſerer,	unſeres,	unſerer,
D.	unſerem,	unſerer,	unſerem,	unſeren,
A.	unſeren,	unſere,	unſer.	unſere.

Obs. 1. The same contractions take place as in ordinary adjectives. Thus we have eurer, euren, eurem, eures, unſrer, unſren, unſers, unſerm, &c.

Obs. 2. It is important to remember that er in unſer, euer, is part of the word, as it is in heiter, finſter, and not an inflectional termination.

108. CORRESPONDENCE OF PRONOUNS. — As there is more than one pronoun of the second person, it is very important to use corresponding possessives and personals. Thus :—

du und deine Schweſter,
ihr und eure Schweſter,
Sie und Ihre Schweſter.

109. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. — It often happens that a possessive, instead of qualifying a noun, stands for a noun, or at least qualifies a noun understood. For this purpose there are three forms in German, used almost indifferently. They are as follows :—

(1.) der meinige, die meinige, das meinige,
des meinigen, &c.

exactly like der gute (the commonest in ordinary German).

(2.) der meine, die meine, das meine,
des meinen, &c.

exactly like der gute.

(3.) meiner, &c., declined as follows :—

	Singular		*Plural.*
Masc	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N. meiner,	meine,	meines,	meine,
G. meines,	meiner,	meines,	meiner,
D. meinem,	meiner,	meinem,	meinen,
A. meinen,	meine,	meines,	meine,

exactly like the definite article.

Thus, *his book and mine* is in German :—

Sein Buch und das meinige,
or Sein Buch und das meine,
or Sein Buch und mein(e)s.

There are similar forms for all the other persons, as :—

der unſ(e)rige,	der unſere,	unſerer,
der eurige,	der eure,	eurer,
&c.	&c.	

110. **Mein, dein,** &c., UNDECLINED. — When *mine, thine*, &c., in English follow the verb *to be* or a similar verb, they are rendered in German by the indeclinable mein, dein, &c.; as, der Hut iſt mein, dein iſt die Ehre.

111. NOTES ON POSSESSIVES. — The following should be noticed :—

(1.) The pronouns der meinige, &c., are written with a small initial letter, when they refer to a preceding noun ; with a capital letter when used as independent substantives, *i.e.*, when die Meinigen means *my family ;* das Seinige, *his due, what belongs to him*, &c., referring to no foregoing substantive. Thus we write mein Bruder und der deinige, but gieb jedem das Seine (*suum cuique*). Of course der Ihre, der Ihrige, Ihrer (meaning *yours*) take a capital for another reason.

(2.) Note the abbreviations Ew. for Eure or Euer; Se., Sr. for Seine, Seiner, especially before titles like Majeſtät, Excellenz. Ihro is sometimes used with Majeſtät, instead of Ihre, whether meaning *her, their*, or *your*, but not of course *his*. (So Dero, *see* next §). Both Ihro and Dero are almost obsolete.

112. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN **der.**—The simple demonstrative *Pronoun* is thus declined :–

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	der,	die,	das,	die,
G.	deſſen (des),	deren,	deſſen (des),	derer, deren,
D.	dem,	der,	dem,	denen,
A.	den.	die.	das.	die,

differing from the definite article (with which it is really identical) in the Genitive Singular and Genitive and Dative Plural.

Obs. 1. The definite article with a slight stress is used as a demonstrative *adjective*, and is then almost synonymous with dieſer or jener.

Obs. 2. The genitive plural derer is used as the antecedent to a relative, as ein Bürger derer, welche kommen werden,* or before a genitive; deren in other cases, as behalte die Äpfel, ich habe deren genug. Further, derer generally refers to persons, deren to things.

Obs. 3. The genitive neuter des is often used. as des rühme der blut'ge Tyrann ſich nicht, especially in compounds deswegen, deshalb, desgleichen.

Obs. 4. Notice the form um derenthalben, deſſentwegen, cf. § 102, 4.

Obs. 5. In older German Dero (gen. pl. meaning *of them*) is often used in addressing distinguished persons, instead of the possessive Ihr.

113. **Dieſer** AND **Jener** correspond very nearly to the English *this* and *that*, and are declined like the definite article. They are used both as pronouns and as adjectives:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	dieſer,	dieſe,	dieſes,	dieſe,
G.	dieſes,	dieſer,	dieſes,	dieſer,
D.	dieſem,	dieſer,	dieſem	dieſen,
A.	dieſen.	dieſe.	dieſes.	dieſe.
N.	jener,	jene,	jenes,	jene,
G.	jenes,	jener,	jenes,	jener,
D.	jenem,	jener,	jenem,	jenen,
A.	jenen.	jene.	jenes.	jene.

* A citizen of those (centuries) which are to come. (Don Carlos.)

Obs. 1. The neuter dieſes is often, when used as a *pronoun*, contracted into dies.

Obs. 2. The neuter dieſes (or dies) and das are frequently used in the nominative and accusative singular, much as we use *this* and *that*. They are often employed with the plural of the verb *to be;* as, das ſind deine Götter, Iſrael, these be thy gods, O Israel. Jenes is less frequently so used.

Obs. 3. The genitive of dieſer and jener is not generally used without a noun; the dative is constantly so used.

114. COMPOUNDS OF da.—Instead of using the cases of das or dieſes, with prepositions, the adverbs da, hier, are used; as daraus, out of it, out of that, therefrom; hieraus, out of this; dazu, to it, to that, thereto; hierin, in it, in this, herein, &c. Before a vowel dar, the old form, corresponding to the English *there*, is retained; as darauf, darin; also sometimes before n, darnach, darneben, being equally correct with danach, daneben.

115. OTHER DEMONSTRATIVES.—**Derſelbe**, (occasionally **derſelbige**), **der nämliche**, the same; **derjenige**, that one, are declined as adjectives with the definitive article.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	derſelbe,	dieſelbe,	dasſelbe,	dieſelben,
G.	desſelben,	derſelben,	desſelben,	derſelben,
D.	demſelben,	derſelben,	demſelben,	denſelben,
A.	denſelben.	dieſelbe.	dasſelbe.	dieſelben.
N.	derjenige,	diejenige,	dasjenige,	diejenigen,
G.	desjenigen,	derjenigen,	desjenigen,	derjenigen,
D.	demjenigen,	derjenigen,	demjenigen,	denjenigen,
A.	denjenigen.	diejenige.	dasjenige.	diejenigen.

Obs. 1. Derſelbe is used indifferently as adjective or pronoun; derjenige almost exclusively as a pronoun, and nearly always as the antecedent to a relative, as derjenige, welcher, *he who*.

Obs. 2. Derſelbe is frequently employed as a substitute for the personal pronoun of the third person.

116. **Solch**, *such*, is generally classed as a demonstrative. It is used in three ways :—

(1.) undeclined, followed by ein ; as, ſolch ein Mann.

(2.) declined, preceded by ein; as, ein ſolcher Mann.

(3.) declined, without article ; as, ſolches Waſſer.

In the plural only the third form is possible ; as, ſolche Männer.

Obs. 1. So ein adjective, ſo einer pronoun, is often used as the equivalent of ſolch; ſo was, ſo etwas means *something of that kind.*

Obs. 2. *Such* is often expressed by dergleichen (Art or Weiſe understood) *of that kind*, dergeſtalt *of that form*, both, of course, incapable of further inflection (cf. Latin *ejusmodi*).

117. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—There are two relative pronouns in German, just as in English we have *that* and *who* or *which*. The first is **der**, the word which serves also as the demonstrative and as the definite article.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N.	**der,**	**die,**	**das,**	**die,**
G.	**deſſen,**	**deren,**	**deſſen,**	**deren,**
D.	**dem,**	**der,**	**dem,**	**denen,**
A.	**den.**	**die.**	**das.**	**die.**

differing from the commonest form of the demonstrative pronoun in the genitive plural.

The other is **welcher**, declined exactly like dieſer and jener.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
N.	welcher,	welche,	welches,	welche,
G.	(welches,)	(welcher,)	(welches,)	(welcher,)
D.	welchem,	welcher,	welchem,	welchen,
A.	welchen.	welche.	welches.	welche.

Obs. 1. The pronoun **wer, was** (§ 110) is used as a relative, (1) as equivalent to *he who, that which*, exactly like *what* (and occasionally *who*) in English ; (2) after an antecedent like alles. *See* §§ 428, 429.

Obs. 2. The English *whose* (relative) is rendered by deſſen, deren, deſſen, plural deren, the genitive of welcher not being used except when qualifying a noun in the same case. For further distinctions between the use of the two pronouns *see* §§ 426, 427.

118. WHOEVER, WHATEVER—are used in two different ways in English.

(1.) They may mean *every one who*, *everything which*, the clause containing them being the subject or object of a verb. They are then rendered by wer, was (alles was), *e.g.*,

Ich lobe alles was du thuſt, I praise whatever you do;

(2.) They may introduce an *adverbial* clause and are then rendered by wer auch, was auch.

Was du auch thun magſt, ich bin zufrieden. Whatever you do, I am satisfied.

119. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.—Wer is declined as follows :—

Masc. and Fem.		Neut.
N. **wer,**		**was,**
G.	**weſſen,**	
D.	**wem,**	
A. **wen,**		**was.**

It has no plural, but we may say :—Wer ſeid ihr, &c.

Obs. 1. Welcher, pronoun and adjective, is declined as in § 117.

Obs. 2. Instead of using the cases of was with a preposition governing the dative or accusative, the compounds wovon, woran, &c., are employed, r being retained before a vowel, as in § 114.

Obs. 3. The genitive wes (weß) is found in older writers and in poetry; also in expressions like wes Geiſtes Kind iſt er? and in the compounds weshalb, weswegen.

120. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES.—Welch is also used as an interrogative adjective: Welcher Mann? welche Frauen? &c.

Was für ein means *what sort of*. It is important to remember that the noun it precedes *is not governed by* für. Thus we say: was für ein Mann? what sort of a man? was für Männer? what sort of men? was für Einer? was für Eine? was für Eines? what sort of one? Occasionally one or more words are inserted between was and für.

121. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.—It is convenient to group together under this heading the words meaning *some*, *any*, &c. They do not, however, form as marked a class as personal or relative pronouns.

122. Ein AND kein.—Ein, *one*, and kein, *not any*, *not one*, *none*, are used both as pronouns and as adjectives. As pronouns they are declined like the definite article, as adjectives like the indefinite article. When they stand without a noun depending on them, they used to be written with a capital.

PRONOUN.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	All genders.
N. keiner,	keine,	keines,	keine,
G. keines,	keiner,	keines,	keiner,
D. keinem,	keiner,	keinem,	keinen,
A. keinen.	keine.	keines.	keine.

ADJECTIVE.

N. kein,	keine,	kein,	keine,
G. keines,	keiner,	keines,	keiner,
D. keinem,	keiner,	keinem,	keinen,
A. keinen.	keine.	kein.	keine.

Thus we say: kein Freund, not a friend, no friend; but keiner von meinen Freunden, eines von diesen Büchern.

123. Man, ONE, PEOPLE.—This pronoun corresponds to the French *on*. It is used in the nominative singular only; as, man sagt, *one says*, *they say*, *people say*; the oblique cases are supplied by einer, which is sometimes used even in the nominative in the sense of man.

So was erinnert einen manchmal an etwas, woran man nicht gern erinnert sein will. A thing of this kind reminds one of things of which one had rather not be reminded.

The corresponding possessive is sein, the reflexive sich.

124. **Etwas, nichts**, SOMETHING, NOTHING.—These two indeclinable words may either stand alone as nouns, as Ich habe nichts zu thun, I have nothing to do; or they may precede neuter adjectives, as, etwas Gutes, something good, das führt zu nichts Gutem, that leads to nothing good.

In the latter case the adjectives following them are used as nouns, and therefore written with capitals; they are declined according to the strong declension. Etwas is often used with nouns; as etwas Wein, some wine. It may also refer back to a definite noun, and is then translated *some, any*, not *something, anything*; as Sie haben kein Geld; wenn Sie etwas brauchen, so kann ich Ihnen helfen, *You have no money, if you want some* (*i.e., some money*, not *something*), *I can help you.* Was is frequently used colloquially for etwas. Both etwas and nichts are written with a small initial letter.

125. **Jemand, niemand**, SOME ONE, NO ONE, take es in the genitive, en in the dative and accusative; they often, however, remain uninflected in the last two cases.

N. jemand,
G. jemand(e)s,
D. jemand, jemanden or -em,
A. jemand or jemanden.

Obs. 1. It should be noticed that the final d has no meaning, but is simply phonetic. The words are really je-man, ever a man; nie-man, never a man.

Obs. 2. Wer is occasionally used as equivalent to jemand.

126. SOME, ANY, &c.—Besides jemand, *some one*, etwas, *something*, there are in German several adjectives meaning *some*, viz., einige, meaning some (but not many), a few; etliche, some out of a large number; welche, some. Welche, in this meaning, is only used without a noun; etwelche is obsolete. Mehrere means *several*.

Any, in a negative sentence, is combined with the negative; as, keine, *not any*; niemand, *not any one*; nichts, *not anything*. When *any* means *any you please* (Latin *quilibet*), jeder, jedermann, &c., are used. (*See* § 127.)

Irgend einer, irgend jemand, means *some one or other*.

Mancher, declined like dieser, jener, is used both in the singular and plural; in the singular it answers to *many a*, in the plural to *many*.

Beide, *both*, is used both as pronoun and adjective in the plural; the neuter singular Beides is often used as a pronoun.

Either is rendered by einer (e, es) von beiden; *neither* by keiner (e, es) von beiden.

127. DISTRIBUTIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.—Jeder, *every*, *any*, *each*, is declined like dieser, and used either with or without a noun, but naturally in the singular only. Sometimes we find ein jeder. Jeglicher, jedweder, have the same meaning as jeder. Jedermann, *everyone*, *anyone*, takes s in the genitive, jedermanns, but is otherwise unchanged; *everything*, *anything* is generally translated by alles, which, of course, cannot be classed as a distributive.

128. RECIPROCAL PRONOUN.—Einander, *each other*, is used both in the dative and accusative; as, sie lieben einander, sie fielen einander in die Arme. The reflexive pronoun sich may be substituted for it when there is no ambiguity. (§ 104.)

To express the genitive *of each other*, we must use the two pronouns: Sie gedenken einer des anderen. With prepositions either form may be used: ganz in einander verloren, or ganz verloren, der eine in den andern.

Chapter VIII.—Numerals.

129. LIST OF NUMERALS.—The numerals are :—

	Cardinal.	*Ordinal.*
1	ein (eins)	der, die, das erſte
2	zwei	der zweite*
3	drei	der dritte
4	vier	der vierte
5	fünf	der fünfte
6	ſechs	der ſechſte
7	ſieben	der ſiebente
8	acht	der achte
9	neun	der neunte
10	zehn	der zehnte
11	elf (eilf)	der elfte (eilfte)
12	zwölf	der zwölfte
13	dreizehn	der dreizehnte
14	vierzehn	der vierzehnte
15	fünfzehn	der fünfzehnte
16	ſechzehn	der ſechzehnte
17	ſiebzehn (ſiebenzehn)	der ſiebzehnte (ſiebenzehnte)
18	achtzehn	der achtzehnte
19	neunzehn	der neunzehnte
20	zwanzig	der zwanzigſte
21	einundzwanzig	der einundzwanzigſte
22	zweiundzwanzig	der zweiundzwanzigſte

* Der andere was formerly used as an ordinal; hence anderthalb, am andern Tag, next day.

Cardinal.	*Ordinal.*
23 dreiundzwanzig	der dreiundzwanzigſte
24 vierundzwanzig	der vierundzwanzigſte
25 fünfundzwanzig	der fünfundzwanzigſte
30 dreißig	der dreißigſte
40 vierzig	der vierzigſte
50 fünfzig	der fünfzigſte
60 ſechzig	der ſechzigſte
70 ſiebzig	der ſiebzigſte
80 achtzig	der achtzigſte
90 neunzig	der neunzigſte
100 hundert (einhundert)	der hundertſte
101 (ein) hundert und eins	der hundert und erſte
200 zweihundert	der zweihundertſte
1000 (ein) tauſend	der tauſendſte
2000 zweitauſend	der zweitauſendſte

Long numbers are arranged as in English, except that the units are put before the tens wherever they occur; as 1878, (ein) tauſend achthundert (or more usually achtzehnhundert) achtundſiebzig; 275,343, zwei hundert fünfundſiebzig tauſend drei hundert dreiundvierzig. The word und is used between units and tens.

130. USE OF Ein.—Ein, *one*, is declined in two ways:—

(i.) as an adjective, when the nominative is ein, eine, ein.

(ii.) as a pronoun, when it is einer, eine, eines (and acc. neut. eines).

For the rest of the declension see page 64.

Sometimes it is necessary to distinguish ein, *one*, from ein used as the indefinite article. This is done by emphasis in speaking, by the use of a capital or of spaced letters (geſperrte Schrift), in printing.

So biſt du mein durch mehr als e i n Geſetz. (Goe.)
Thus art thou mine by more than one law.

When *one* stands alone eins is used; as, es hat eins geſchlagen, it has struck one; einmal eins iſt eins, one times one is one.

131. DECLENSION OF CARDINALS.—The general rule is that cardinal numerals are indeclinable; but note the following:—

(1.) Zwei, drei, have genitive and dative zweier, zweien; dreier, dreien; these forms, however, are only used when absolutely necessary to distinguish the case, that is when the numerals are not preceded by an article, or pronoun, or followed by an adjective.

(2.) The earlier numerals (up to 12) take an inflection e (en in dative) in a few familiar phrases; as alle viere von ſich ſtrecken (used of dying animals); auf allen vieren kriechen, to creep on all fours; mit ſechſen fahren, to drive six-in-hand; alle neune werfen, to knock down all the ninepins; er ſchlachte der Opfer zweie (Schiller), let him slay two victims; wir kamen zu ſechſen or zu ſechs, six of us came, which may be equally well expressed, es kamen unſer ſechs.

(3.) Zwanzige, hunderte, tauſende are used just as we use scores, hundreds, thousands.

(4.) Notice, in den dreißigen, vierzigen ſtehen, to be between 30 and 40, 40 and 50.

(5.) The cardinal numerals are generally feminine when standing alone (suggested by the feminine Zahl or Nummer). Die Null, nought; die Eins, the ace; die Herzſieben, the seven of hearts; die heil'gen Zahlen liegen in der Zwölfe, the sacred numbers are contained in 12; and even eine Hundert, eine Tauſend, as names of the numbers, though Hundert, Tauſend are generally neuters.*

132. FORMS IN er.—Indeclinable derivatives from the numerals ending in er are much used, both as nouns and as adjectives; as, zwanziger, of or belonging to 20.

Thus, ſiebenundvierziger Wein, '47 wine, wine grown in 1847;† die Einer (singular der Einer), Zehner, Hunderter, units, tens, hundreds, in numeration; ein Vierziger, a man of 40, or one of a body of 40 members, like the French academy; ein Dreier, a 3-pfennig or kreuzer piece; ein Zwanziger, a 20-kreuzer piece. One of the most convenient uses of this form is to denote the decades of a century: in den zwanziger Jahren des neunzehnten Jahrhunderts, between 1820 and 1830.

---

* Elf, zwölf probably come from the root of bleiben, really be-leiben, root *lip*, making elf mean *one over* (*ten*), zwölf *two over* (*ten*). zig in zwanzig is easily referred to a Gothic noun—*tigus*=δεκας; the n is the nominative plural termination of zwei.

† Also ein Schoppen Zehner, a pint of wine at 10 kreuzers, &c.

133. USE OF **beide**.—Beide, meaning *both*, or *the two*, is used in the plural either alone or with the definite article, and is declined like an ordinary adjective: beide, or die beiden, beider or der beiden, &c. It is also used like a substantive in the neuter singular without article, and is then written with a capital: beides hat Recht, both (speakers) are right; in beidem iſt er wohl erfahren, he is experienced in both (operations).

134. FRACTIONS. — The names of fractions, except a half, are formed by adding tel, an abbreviation of Teil, to the ordinal numerals, and dropping one of the *t*'s; as, Viertel, Fünftel. A third is Drittel.

Obs. 1. Half is either the substantive die Hälfte, or the adjective halb: ein halber Thaler, half a dollar; in ſechs und einem halben Jahre, in six years and a half.

Obs. 2. There is a convenient form for $1\frac{1}{2}$, $2\frac{1}{2}$, &c., viz., anderthalb (literally second half), one and a half; dritthalb (literally third half), two and a half; vierthalb, three and a half, and so on. These words are indeclinable; the words that follow them are plural.

Obs. 3. The *numerator* of a fraction is called Zähler, the denominator Nenner. Fractions in German are generally printed with a slanting line, as $^3/_4$.

135. DECIMALS AND ALGEBRAICAL EXPRESSIONS.—Note the following:—

Instead of a decimal point a comma is often used in German, as 3,1416 instead of 3·1416. x^2 is read x Quadrat, or x zur zweiten (Potenz); x^3 is read x Kubus, or x zur dritten (Potenz); $x^{\frac{1}{8}}$ is read x zur ſieben achten (Potenz), or x hoch ſieben Achtel; $\sqrt{x}$, Quadratwurzel (or simply Wurzel) von x.

136. DAYS OF MONTH, TIME OF DAY. — In naming the days of the month, *of* is not inserted as in English: der achte Juni, der einundzwanzigſte Dezember (Tag understood). In giving the date, the accusative without preposition or the dative with an is generally used; as, den erſten or am erſten Januar.

The German reckoning of the time of day differs from the English in always looking forward to the next hour. Thus:—

neun Uhr, 9 o'clock; ein Viertel auf zehn, a quarter past 9 (literally a quarter towards 10); zwanzig Minuten auf zehn, 20 past 9; halb zehn, half-past 9; drei Viertel auf zehn, a quarter to 10.

It is, however, not unusual, instead of ein Viertel auf zehn, to say ein Viertel nach (or über) neun, and instead of drei Viertel auf zehn to say ein Viertel vor zehn. Of course, too, the railway form, neun Uhr zwanzig, &c., is common enough.

137. MISCELLANEOUS NUMERAL FORMS.—German is richer than English in derivatives of the numerals. Thus: —

(1.) Einerlei, zweierlei, dreierlei, viererlei, zwanzigerlei; beiderlei, vielerlei of 1, 2, 3, 4, 20, both, many kinds; er is here a genitive termination. Einerlei, &c., are indeclinable. From all are formed both allerlei and allerhand.

(2.) Einfach, zweifach, dreifach, &c., and einfältig, zweifältig, dreifältig &c. (declined like ordinary adjectives); single, double, or twofold, triple or threefold. Naturally einfach, einfältig have, as in English, derived meanings.* Notice without Umlaut: die Dreifaltigkeit, the Trinity; mannigfaltig, manifold.

(3.) Erstens (occasionally erstlich), zweitens, drittens, zwanzigstens, firstly or in the first place, secondly or in the second place, &c.

(4.) The place of distributives (two apiece, &c.) is supplied by the use of je or jeder: je einer erhielt einen Thaler, or sie erhielten je einen Thaler, they received a dollar apiece. Also, sie gingen je zwei und zwei, they walked two and two.

(5.) Einmal, zweimal, dreimal, &c., once, twice, thrice, &c.; ein für allemal, once for all. They are also used in the multiplication table, dreimal vier, &c. Mal with a capital is used in ordinal numbers, and with adjectives like mehrere, einige, verschiedene, das erste Mal, the first time, verschiedene Male, several times. Notice in this connection the difference between Mal (*fois*) and Zeit (*temps*), both rendered by *time* in English.

(6.) Of the forms selbander, selbdritter, &c., usually uninflected, corresponding to the Greek *τέταρτος αὐτός*, *himself with three companions*, only selbander is much used.

---

* einfach, simple, frugal, unadorned: einfältig, simple, in the sense of stupid; its better meaning is obsolete.

Chapter IX.—Verbs.—Introductory, and Auxiliaries.

138. MOODS.—There are in German, as in English, five moods—the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Conditional, and Infinitive. A verb has also two Participles, a Present (or Imperfect) Participle (*speaking*), and a Past (or Perfect) Participle (*spoken*).

139. TENSES.—German verbs have only two tenses formed by inflection—the Present and the Past. The remaining tenses are formed, as in English, by the use of Auxiliaries. The following are the Indicative tenses of lieben, to love :—

Present (Present Imperfect)..... ich liebe, I love, I am loving,
Past (Past Imperfect or Aorist)* .. ich liebte, I loved, I was loving,
Perfect (Present Perfect or Aorist) ich habe geliebt, I have loved, I loved,
Pluperfect (Past Perfect) ..... ich hatte geliebt, I had loved,
Future Imperfect ..... ich werde lieben, I shall love,
Future Perfect... ..... ich werde geliebt haben, I shall have loved.

The tenses of the Subjunctive mood correspond exactly to those of the Indicative. The Imperative has only one tense ; the Infinitive a simple (Present, Imperfect) and a compound (Perfect) tense.

140. CONDITIONAL MOOD.—The Conditional mood, which is used, not to denote a condition, but the result that would happen if the condition were fulfilled, has a present and a past tense :—

Present Conditional ... ich würde lieben, I should love,
Past Conditional ..... ich würde geliebt haben, I should have loved.

The Past (or Imperfect) and Pluperfect of the Subjunctive Mood are often used instead of the Present and Past Conditional.

* For the exact force of the tenses, *see* Syntax.

141. USE OF AUXILIARIES.—There are three auxiliaries employed to form the ordinary tenses of a German verb :— haben, to have ; ſein, to be ; and werden, to become.

Haben is used like the English *have* to form the compound past tenses of all transitive and many intransitive verbs.

Sein is used—

(1.) like the French *être* to form the compound past tenses of intransitive verbs denoting motion or a change of state, such as kommen, ſterben ;

(2.) like the English *to be* to make passive forms, not strictly belonging to the regular passive conjugation.

Werden forms—

(1.) the future tenses of both voices ;

(2.) the whole of the regular passive voice.

Obs. It should be added that there are several verbs in German, called Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, and answering to the English *may*, *must*, *should*, &c., which play a very similar part to the three verbs above mentioned.

142. STRONG AND WEAK CONJUGATIONS.—These conjugations differ in the way of forming the Past tense and the Perfect Participle from the stem of the Infinitive. In the strong conjugation, the Past tense is formed from the stem by altering the root-vowel, the Perfect Participle by the prefix ge and the suffix en and generally with a further change of vowel. These vowel-changes, known as Ablaut, are among the elementary facts of language. Most of the older and more common verbs in German, as in English, belong to the strong conjugation, as—

ſchwimmen,	ſchwamm,	geſchwommen,
swim,	swam,	swum.

Besides these characteristic changes, verbs of this class often modify or otherwise change the root-vowel in forming the 2nd or 3rd persons singular of the Present tense.

The weak conjugation, which includes the great majority of verbs in the language, but not the oldest or most common, forms the Past tense by adding the suffix te to the root, and the Past Participle by adding the suffix t and prefixing ge.

143. CONJUGATION OF haben.

Haben—TO HAVE.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich habe, I have	[ich habe, I have]*
	du haſt, thou hast	du habeſt, thou have
	er hat, he has	er habe, he have
	wir haben, we have	[wir haben, we have]
	ihr habt, ye have	ihr habet, ye have
	ſie haben, they have.	[ſie haben, they have].
Past Tense.	ich hatte, I had	ich hätte, I had
	du hatteſt, thou hadst	du hätteſt, thou hadst
	er hatte, he had	er hätte, he had
	wir hatten, we had	wir hätten, we had
	ihr hattet, ye had	ihr hättet, ye had
	ſie hatten, they had.	ſie hätten, they had.

Imperative.

habe! have (thou)!	haben wir! let us have!
habe er! let him have!	habt! (or haben Sie!) have (ye)!
	haben ſie! let them have!

The compound tenses are formed exactly like those of lieben. The third persons only are here given.

Perfect.....	er hat gehabt,	er habe gehabt,
Pluperfect	er hatte gehabt,	er hätte gehabt,
Future imperfect	er wird haben,	er werde haben,
Future perfect...	er wird gehabt haben,	er werde gehabt haben.

Conditional Mood.

Present... er würde haben or er hätte.
Past ..... er würde gehabt haben or er hätte gehabt.

Infinitive.

haben, to have. | gehabt haben, to have had.

Participles.

habend, having. | gehabt, had.

Obs. Sie haben, the Sie being written or printed with a capital, is used to mean *you have*, and is addressed to a single person, sometimes to several. To avoid confusion, it is not printed in the paradigms.

* The persons of the Subjunctive enclosed in brackets, being identical with the corresponding persons of the Indicative, are not used.

144. CONJUGATION OF ſein.

Sein—TO BE.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich bin, I am	ich ſei, I be
	du biſt, thou art	du ſeieſt, thou be
	er iſt, he is	er ſei, he be
	wir ſind, we are	wir ſeien, we be
	ihr ſeid, ye are	ihr ſeiet, ye be
	ſie ſind, they are.	ſie ſeien, they be.
Past Tense.	ich war, I was	ich wäre, I were
	du warſt, thou wert	du wäreſt, thou were
	er war, he was	er wäre, he were
	wir waren, we were	wir wären, we were
	ihr war(e)t, ye were	ihr wäret, ye were
	ſie waren, they were.	ſie wären, they were.

Imperative.

	ſeien wir! let us be!
ſei, be (thou)!	ſeid! (or ſeien Sie!) be(ye)!
ſei er! let him be!	ſeien ſie, let them be!

The compound tenses of ſein are formed with ſein as auxiliary. The third persons are here given.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Perfect.....	er iſt geweſen,	er ſei geweſen,
Pluperfect	er war geweſen,	er wäre geweſen,
Future imperfect	er wird ſein,	er werde ſein,
Future perfect...	er wird geweſen ſein.	er werde geweſen ſein.

Conditional Mood.

Present... er würde ſein, or er wäre.
Past ..... er würde geweſen ſein, or er wäre geweſen.

Infinitive.

ſein, to be.	geweſen ſein, to have been.

Participles.

ſeiend, being.	geweſen,* been.

* The verb ſein draws from three sources: (1.) the root *es*—, as seen in iſt, and in ſein, ſeid, ſind, &c., where the *e* is dropped (cf. Latin, *est*, *sumus*, *sunt*); (2.) a root beginning with *b* (Latin *fi-*, Greek *φυ-*, English *be*) appearing in bin, biſt; (3.) the root of war, weſen, geweſen, and the English *was*, akin to währen, to last or remain.

145. CONJUGATION OF werden.

Werden—TO BECOME.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich werde, I become	[ich werde, I become]
	du wirſt	du werdeſt
	er wird	er werde
	wir werden	[wir werden]
	ihr werdet	[ihr werdet]
	ſie werden.	[ſie werden].
Past Tense.	ich wurde (or ward), I became	ich würde, I became
	du wurdeſt (or wardſt)	du würdeſt
	er wurde (or ward)	er würde
	wir wurden	wir würden
	ihr wurdet	ihr würdet
	ſie wurden.	ſie würden.

Imperative.

werde, become (thou)! | werdet, become (ye)!

Infinitive.

Present. werden. | Perf. geworden (or worden) ſein.

Participle.

Present. werdend. | Past. geworden (as auxiliary, worden.)

The compound tenses of werden are formed with ſein, like those of kommen.

Chapter X.—Verbs Continued.—Specimens of Conjugation.

146. CONJUGATION OF A WEAK VERB (with **haben**):—

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich liebe, I love du liebſt, thou lovest er liebt, he loves wir lieben, we love ihr liebt, you love ſie lieben, they love.	[ich liebe, I love] du liebeſt er liebe [wir lieben] ihr liebet [ſie lieben].
Past Tense.	ich liebte, I loved, I was [loving du liebteſt er liebte wir liebten ihr liebtet ſie liebten.	ich liebte, I loved, I were [loving du liebteſt er liebte wir liebten ihr liebtet ſie liebten.
Perfect Tense.	ich habe geliebt, I have loved, [I loved du haſt geliebt, er hat geliebt wir haben geliebt ihr habt geliebt ſie haben geliebt.	[ich habe geliebt], I have loved, [I loved du habeſt geliebt er habe geliebt [wir haben geliebt] ihr habet geliebt [ſie haben geliebt].
Pluperfect.	ich hatte geliebt, I had loved du hatteſt geliebt er hatte geliebt wir hatten geliebt ihr hattet geliebt ſie hatten geliebt.	ich hätte geliebt du hätteſt geliebt er hätte geliebt wir hätten geliebt ihr hättet geliebt ſie hätten geliebt.
Future Imperfect	ich werde lieben, I shall love du wirſt lieben, thou wilt love er wird lieben wir werden lieben ihr werdet lieben ſie werden lieben.	[ich werde lieben] du werdeſt lieben er werde lieben [wir werden lieben] [ihr werdet lieben] [ſie werden lieben].

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Future Perfect.	ich werde geliebt haben, I shall [have loved	[ich werde geliebt haben]
	du wirſt geliebt haben	du werdeſt geliebt haben
	er wird geliebt haben	er werde geliebt haben
	wir werden geliebt haben	[wir werden geliebt haben]
	ihr werdet geliebt haben	[ihr werdet geliebt haben]
	ſie werden geliebt haben.	[ſie werden geliebt haben].

Conditional Mood.

Present.	Past.
ich würde lieben, I should love	ich würde geliebt haben, I should [have loved
du würdeſt lieben, thou wouldst [love	du würdeſt geliebt haben, thou [wouldst have loved
er würde lieben	er würde geliebt haben
wir würden lieben.	wir würden geliebt haben
ihr würdet lieben	ihr würdet geliebt haben
ſie würden lieben.	ſie würden geliebt haben.

or

Present.	Past.
ich liebte	ich hätte geliebt
du liebteſt	du hätteſt geliebt
&c.	&c

Imperative.

	lieben wir! let us love!
liebe! love!	liebet! (or lieben Sie!) love!
liebe er! let him love!	lieben ſie! let them love!

Infinitive and Participle.

lieben, to love.	geliebt haben, to have loved,
liebend, loving.	geliebt, loved.

Obs. 1. The third plural Imperative lieben Sie! (Sie being printed with a capital) is the ordinary form of address to one or more persons except in very familiar intercourse.

Obs. 2. In the Subjunctive no contraction like liebt for liebet is allowed.

147. CONJUGATION OF A STRONG VERB :—

[The parts printed in black type are not formed directly from the root of the infinitive.]

Sprechen—TO SPEAK.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich ſpreche, I speak	[ich ſpreche]
	du **ſprichſt**	du ſprecheſt
	er **ſpricht**	er ſpreche
	wir ſprechen	[wir ſprechen]
	ihr ſprecht	ihr ſprechet
	ſie ſprechen.	[ſie ſprechen].
Past Tense.	ich **ſprach**, I spoke	ich **ſpräche**
	du **ſprachſt**	du **ſprächeſt**
	er **ſprach**	er **ſpräche**
	wir **ſprachen**	wir **ſprächen**
	ihr **ſprach(e)t**	ihr **ſprächet**
	ſie **ſprachen.**	ſie **ſprächen.**

Imperative.

	ſprechen wir! let us speak!
ſprich! speak!	ſprech(e)t! (or ſprechen Sie!) [speak!
ſpreche er! let him speak!	ſprechen ſie! let them speak!

The compound tenses are formed exactly like those of lieben.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Perfect	er hat geſprochen,	er habe geſprochen.
Pluperfect.....	er hatte geſprochen,	er hätte geſprochen.
Future imperfect.	er wird ſprechen,	er werde ſprechen.
Future perfect ..	er wird geſprochen haben,	er werde geſprochen [haben.
	&c., &c.	

148. CONJUGATION OF AN ACTIVE VERB WITH sein:—

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich komme, I come du kommſt, &c.	[ich komme] du kommeſt, &c.
Past Tense.	ich kam, I came du kamſt, &c.	ich käme, I came du kämeſt, &c.
Perfect Tense.	ich bin gekommen, I am come [*or* have come, I came] du biſt gekommen er iſt gekommen wir ſind gekommen ihr ſeid gekommen ſie ſind gekommen.	ich ſei gekommen du ſei(e)ſt gekommen er ſei gekommen wir ſeien gekommen ihr ſeiet gekommen ſie ſeien gekommen.
Pluperfect.	ich war gekommen, I had come [*or* was come, du warſt gekommen er war gekommen wir waren gekommen ihr war(e)t gekommen ſie waren gekommen.	ich wäre gekommen du wäreſt gekommen er wäre gekommen wir wären gekommen ihr wäret gekommen ſie wären gekommen.
Future Imperf.	ich werde kommen du wirſt kommen, &c.	[ich werde kommen] du werdeſt kommen, &c.
Future Perfect.	ich werde gekommen ſein du werdeſt gekommen ſein.	[ich werde gekommen ſein] du werdeſt gekommen ſein, &c.

Conditional.

Present.	Past.
ich würde kommen, &c.	ich würde gekommen ſein, &c.

or

Present.	Past.
ich käme, &c.	ich wäre gekommen, &c.

Imperative.

komm! (komme!) komme er!	kommen wir! komm(e)t! (or kommen Sie!) kommen ſie!

149. CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VOICE.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich werde geliebt, I am loved	[ich werde geliebt, I be loved]
	du wirſt geliebt	du werdeſt geliebt
	er wird geliebt	er werde geliebt
	wir werden geliebt	[wir werden geliebt]
	ihr werdet geliebt	[ihr werdet geliebt]
	ſie werden geliebt.	[ſie werden geliebt].
Past Tense.	ich wurde geliebt, I was loved	ich würde geliebt, I were loved
	du wurdeſt geliebt	du würdeſt geliebt
	er wurde geliebt	er würde geliebt
	wir wurden geliebt	wir würden geliebt
	ihr wurdet geliebt	ihr würdet geliebt
	ſie wurden geliebt.	ſie würden geliebt.
Perfect Tense.	ich bin geliebt worden, I have [been loved, I was loved	ich ſei geliebt worden, I have [been loved
	du biſt geliebt worden	du ſei(e)ſt geliebt worden
	er iſt geliebt worden	er ſei geliebt worden
	wir ſind geliebt worden	wir ſeien geliebt worden
	ihr ſeid geliebt worden	ihr ſeiet geliebt worden
	ſie ſind geliebt worden.	ſie ſeien geliebt worden.
Pluperfect.	ich war geliebt worden	ich wäre geliebt worden
	du warſt geliebt worden	du wäreſt geliebt worden
	er war geliebt worden	er wäre geliebt worden
	wir waren geliebt worden	wir wären geliebt worden
	ihr waret geliebt worden	ihr wäret geliebt worden
	ſie waren geliebt worden.	ſie wären geliebt worden.

(I had been loved — I had been loved)

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
First Future.	ich werde geliebt werden du wirſt geliebt werden &c.	[ich werde geliebt werden] du werdeſt geliebt werden &c.
Second Future.	ich werde geliebt worden ſein du wirſt geliebt worden ſein &c.	[ich werde geliebt worden ſein] du werdeſt geliebt worden ſein &c.

Conditional.

Present.	Past.
ich würde geliebt werden du würdeſt geliebt werden &c.	ich würde geliebt worden ſein du würdeſt geliebt worden ſein &c.
or	
Present.	Past.
ich würde geliebt du würdeſt geliebt &c.	ich wäre geliebt worden du wäreſt geliebt worden &c.

Imperative.

werde geliebt! [er werde geliebt!]	[werden wir geliebt!] werdet (or werden Sie) geliebt! [werden ſie geliebt!]

150. NOTES ON THE PASSIVE.—The difficulties of the Passive voice are more apparent than real. It is essential to remember that werden (*to become*) takes the place of the English *be*, and ſein (*to be*) the place of the English *have*. Thus:—

er iſt geliebt worden,
he has loved been,
er wird geliebt worden ſein,
he will loved been have.

It will be noticed that in the Compound Tenses the Infinitive comes last, and the Participle of the auxiliary after the Participle of the verb.

151. PASSIVE FORM WITH ſein.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Present Tense.	ich bin geliebt, I am loved	ich ſei geliebt, I be loved
	du biſt geliebt	du ſei(e)ſt geliebt
	er iſt geliebt	er ſei geliebt
	wir ſind geliebt	wir ſeien geliebt
	ihr ſeid geliebt	ihr ſeiet geliebt
	ſie ſind geliebt.	ſie ſeien geliebt.
Past Tense.	ich war geliebt, I was loved	ich wäre geliebt, I were loved
	du warſt geliebt	du wäreſt geliebt
	er war geliebt	er wäre geliebt
	wir waren geliebt	wir wären geliebt
	ihr waret geliebt	ihr wäret geliebt
	ſie waren geliebt.	ſie wären geliebt.

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Perfect	.....er iſt geliebt geweſen	er ſei geliebt geweſen
Pluperfect	.....er war geliebt geweſen	er wäre geliebt geweſen
Future Imperfect	..er wird geliebt ſein	er werde geliebt ſein
Future Perfect	...er wird geliebt geweſen [ſein.	er werde geliebt ge- [weſen ſein.

Conditional Mood.

Present.	Past.
er würde geliebt ſein or er wäre geliebt,	er würde geliebt geweſen ſein or er wäre geliebt geweſen,

the Compound Tenses being formed by substituting ſein for werden, geweſen for worden. It must be carefully borne in mind that this is not the true Passive voice, but rather the Passive Participle used as an adjective, and tacked on to the verb ſein.

152. REFLEXIVE VERBS. — Reflexive verbs are conjugated exactly like ordinary active verbs, with the addition of the reflexive Pronoun, mostly in the accusative, but sometimes in the dative case. Many of them, like ſich ſchämen, to be ashamed, ſich freuen, to rejoice, have no reflexive equivalent in English. One or two tenses will suffice to show how they are conjugated.

Present Indicative.

With Accusative.	With Dative.
ich beſinne mich, I bethink	ich ſchmeichle mir, I flatter
du beſinnſt dich [myself	du ſchmeichelſt dir [myself
er beſinnt ſich	er ſchmeichelt ſich
wir beſinnen uns	wir ſchmeicheln uns
ihr beſinnt euch	ihr ſchmeichelt euch
ſie beſinnen ſich.	ſie ſchmeicheln ſich.

Compound Tenses.

ich habe mich beſonnen	ich habe mir geſchmeichelt
ich werde mich beſinnen	ich werde mir ſchmeicheln
&c.	&c.

Obs. Beware of conjugating reflexive verbs with ſein in imitation of French.

153. COMPOUND VERBS. — A great number of compound verbs are formed by putting certain *prefixes*, originally adverbs, before simple verbs. Many of them, as vor, ab, an, heraus, &c., retain their adverbial character and their accent, and are easily separated from the verb; others, as be, ent, zer, have become part of the verb, have lost their accent, and remain attached to the verb throughout its conjugation.

The lists of separable and inseparable prefixes will be found in the next chapter, §§ 176 sq.

154. CONJUGATION OF A SEPARABLE VERB.

Indicative.

Present.	Past.
ich ziehe.....vor, I prefer	ich zog .....vor, I preferred
du ziehſt.....vor	du zogſt.....vor
er zieht .....vor	er zog ..... vor
wir ziehen ...vor &c.	wir zogen ...vor &c.

Perfect.	Future.
ich habe vórgezogen	ich werde vórziehen
du haſt vórgezogen &c.*	du wirſt vórziehen &c.

Imperative.

zieh.....vor!	ziehet.....vor!

Infinitive with zu (*Supine*).	*Past Participle.*
vórzuziehen, to prefer.	vórgezogen.

Should a simple tense of the verb stand at the end of the sentence, the separable prefix remains with the verb.

wenn ich es vorziehe.	wenn ich es vorzöge.

155. CONJUGATION OF AN INSEPARABLE VERB.

Indicative.

Present.	Past.
ich benehme, I take away	ich benahm, I took away
du benimmſt	du benahmſt
er benimmt	er benahm
wir benehmen	wir benahmen
&c.	&c.

Indicative.

Perfect.	Future.
ich habe benommen	ich werde benehmen
du haſt benommen &c.	du wirſt benehmen &c.

Imperative.

benimm!	benehmet!

Infinitive with zu (*Supine*).	*Past Participle.*
zu benehmen.	benommen.

* The accent (vór) is employed here merely to show the stress of the voice, and must not be written.

156. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—A number of verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular. Such are:—

(1.) Verbs denoting natural phenomena; as, es blitzt, it lightens; es regnet, it rains.

(2.) Verbs with a dative or an accusative of a personal pronoun representing an ordinary personal verb in English; as, es hungert mich, I am hungry; es dünft mich, I fancy, methinks.

(3.) The verb es giebt (or gibt), *there is* or *there are* (French *il y a*), literally *nature produces*. It governs, of course, an accusative.

157. CONJUGATION OF **es giebt**, there is, *or* there are.

Indicative.

Present	es giebt, there is *or* there are.
Past	es gab, there was *or* there were.
Perfect	es hat gegeben, there has been *or* there have been.
Pluperfect.....	es hatte gegeben, there had been.
Future Imperf....	es wird geben, there will be.
Future Perfect ...	es wird gegeben haben, there will have been.
Pres. Conditional	es würde geben, there would be.
Past Conditional	es würde gegeben haben, there would have been.

Subjunctive.

Present... es gebe	Perfect ..... es habe gegeben
Past ..... es gäbe	Pluperfect... es hätte gegeben.

&c., &c.

CONJUGATION OF **es geſchieht**, it happens.

Present...es geſchieht	Perfect.....es iſt geſchehen.
Past .....es geſchah	Pluperfect .....es war geſchehen.
Future ...es wird geſchehen	Future Perfect...es wird geſchehen

&c., &c., &c. [ſein

Es gelingt (mir &c.),* I succeed, es geſchieht, it happens, are conjugated with ſein. Other impersonals take haben, unless involving a verb of motion, as es kommt darauf an.

* Gelingen is also used with subject (a thing) in the 3rd sing. and 3rd pl.

158. CONJUGATION OF IMPERSONALS WITH PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Pronoun in Accusative.

Present.

Singular.	Plural.
es hungert mich, I am hungry,	es hungert uns, we are hungry,
es hungert dich, thou art hungry,	es hungert euch, ye are hungry,
es hungert ihn (sie), he (she) is hungry.	es hungert sie, they are hungry.

Perfect.

es hat mich gehungert,	es hat uns gehungert,
es hat dich gehungert,	es hat euch gehungert,
es hat ihn (sie) gehungert.	es hat sie gehungert.

Future.

es wird mich hungern,	es wird uns hungern,
es wird dich hungern.	&c.

Pronoun in Dative.

Present.

es ahnt mir, I expect,	es ahnt uns,
es ahnt dir,	es ahnt euch,
es ahnt ihm (ihr).	es ahnt ihnen.

Perfect.

es hat mir geahnt, I expected,	es hat uns geahnt,
es hat dir geahnt.	&c.

Present.

es gelingt mir, I succeed,	es gelingt uns,
es gelingt dir.	&c.

Perfect.

es ist mir gelungen, I succeeded,	es ist uns gelungen.
es ist dir gelungen.	&c.

Chapter XI.—Verbs continued.—Formation of Tenses—Prefixes, &c.

159. GENERAL PRINCIPLES.—It has been pointed out (§ 142) that there are two ways of conjugating verbs in German. In the one, the weak conjugation, the root-vowel is retained unaltered, and the past tense is formed by the addition of te. All recently introduced verbs follow this conjugation.

In the strong conjugation, that of most of the primitive verbs of the language, the root, which is often, but not necessarily, that of the Present Tense, is almost always subjected to certain vowel changes to form the Past Tense, less frequently to form some persons of the Present Tense and the Past Participle. Thus the verb graben has Past grub (representing an older gruob and a still older *grôb*), and in the 2nd and 3rd singular of the Present the vowel of the root is subjected to Umlaut (gräb).* Again, the verb brechen has in the Past brach, and in the Past Participle gebrochen, while in the Present e is changed by Umlaut into i (bricht).* These changes are found in other derivatives of the root, especially in nouns, and follow definite laws.

160. PARTICIPLES.—The Present Participle is formed, both in strong and in weak verbs, by adding end to the root of the Infinitive, or more simply d to the Infinitive.

Its older form is and, retained in the word Heiland, Saviour. Freund, friend, Feind, enemy,† are really contracted Present Participles.

The Past (or rather Passive) Participle is formed in strong verbs by adding the suffix en to the root or the altered root, and prefixing ge. As to the root-vowel, the Past Participle

* Because these persons originally ended in iš, it. (*See* § 2.) † Our *fiend*.

very often, but not always, retains that of the verb. In the weak conjugation the Past Participle is formed by adding t, and prefixing ge.*

ge is a particle (probably equivalent to the Latin *cum, con*) used as an independent prefix to denote the completion of an action, as in geſchweigen compared with ſchweigen, gedenken compared with denken, and is therefore very appropriate to the Past Participle. It corresponds to the prefix *y* in old English, common enough in Chaucer, now retained only in the word *yclept*, and appearing in an altered form in *enough*; *I wis*.

161. OMISSION OF ge.—If the verb be not accented on the first syllable, ge is not used in the formation of the Past Participle.

By far the largest class of such verbs are the verbs in (iren) ieren, mostly formed from the French, as regieren, ſtudieren, buchſtabieren, which make regiert, ſtudiert, buchſtabiert. There are a few others, as, prophezeien, prophezeit; poſaunen, poſaunt; miáuen (mew), miaut (but mauen, gemaut). Offenbáren makes offenbart, but in its special sense of divine revelation, particularly when used as an adjective, it takes ge.

162. SUBJUNCTIVE.—The Present Subjunctive of both strong and weak verbs has the root vowel of the Infinitive, and never drops e in conjugation. The Past Subjunctive of strong verbs is now ordinarily formed by modifying the root-vowel of the Past Indicative and adding e; but as that tense had originally different vowels in the singular and plural, there are many exceptions (see § 164, *Obs.*). In weak verbs it is identical with the Past Indicative.

The terminations of the Subjunctive in the older German contain the letter i or j, representing *ya* found in the primitive Aryan tongue. The following effects of this should be noticed :—

(1.) In strong verbs the a, o or u of the past Indicative (properly of the *Plural* Past Indicative) is subjected to the Umlaut to form the Past Subjunctive.

(2.) e is retained in the Subjunctive second singular and plural, as the sole representative of the syllable that once differentiated it from the Indicative.

* These suffixes are identified with the verbal adjective endings *to*—, *no*—, the former of which is familiar in Greek and Latin.

163. IMPERATIVE. — The root of strong verbs (to which e is often added) serves as the second singular of the Imperative. If they have i or ie in the 2nd or 3rd singular Present Indicative, the root of those persons is used; as, ſprich, lies, without an added e.* Weak verbs form the 2nd singular Imperative by adding e to the root. The 2nd plural Imperative is identical in form with the 2nd plural Indicative. The other persons of the Imperative are either borrowed from the Subjunctive, or formed with auxiliaries: Laß (or laßt) uns gehen! Let us go! Er ſoll bleiben! Let him stay!

164. CLASSIFICATION OF STRONG VERBS. — It is usual to divide the verbs of the strong conjugation into six classes of ablautende Verben, and one class of reduplizierende Verben. The arrangement here adopted is to give (1) a typical verb, specifying the Infinitive, the Present 3rd singular, the Past Indicative and Subjunctive, and the Past Participle: (2) a list of the verbs that conform exactly, as far as their vowels are concerned, to the typical form; (3) a list of those verbs that, being placed in the class, deviate slightly from the type. Afterwards a tabular list of all strong verbs and all verbs that deviate at all from the weak conjugation is given.

Obs. 1. When several allied words show the same framework of consonants with varying vowels they are said to form an Ablaut-series, as

werden...	ward...	wurden...	geworden.
ſtecken	Stachel		Stock.

Conjugation and derivation by means of Ablaut are common to all the Aryan languages, and six series, each with regular succession of vowels, have been reconstructed for the primitive Aryan. Each series consists of four vowels, but, as might be expected, a complete set is very rare in any one language. Thus in the Greek

λείπω . . . λέλοιπα . . . ἔλῐπον

the third form λῐπ is missing. In the Teutonic languages, the Ablaut-series have been specially applied to the conjugation of strong verbs, and the six classes of ablautende Verben correspond to the six primitive series.

* Except occasionally ſiehe.

Obs. 2. Originally the vowel in the singular of the Past Indicative differed from that of the plural, as in our *was*, *were*. In German this distinction lasted down to the time of Luther, and it still lingers on in a few verbs, as ich weiß, wir wiſſen (originally a past), but in the modern language the vowel of the plural has for the most part "levelled out" that of the singular. The cases in which the vowel of the *singular* obtained the mastery can be traced by the past (imperfect) subjunctive. This ought regularly to show the vowel of the plural with an Umlaut as wir waren, ich wäre. But in several verbs as in ſterben, we have surviving an imperfect subjunctive, ſtürbe, formed from wir ſtarben, while in the Past Indicative only ich ſtarb, wir ſtarben now exist. Side by side with ſtürbe the form ſtärbe is found, formed by analogy with the verbs which have followed the ordinary rule.

Obs. 3. In verbs like geben, nehmen, the vowel i in the 2nd and 3rd singular is not due to Ablaut, but to secondary changes that took place only in the Teutonic group.

165. FIRST GROUP. — e or ä—i (lengthened ie)—a—o.

TYPE :—**brechen—bricht—brach—(bräche)—gebrochen.***

NORMAL VERBS : — brechen, erſchrecken† (erſchrak), gebären (gebiert or gebärt), nehmen (nimmt, genommen), ſprechen, ſtechen, ſtecken‡ (ſtak), ſtehlen (ſtiehlt), treffen (traf).

VARIATIONS :—bewegen§ (bewegt, bewog), erwägen (erwägt, erwog), berſten (barſt or borſt, bärſte or börſte), dreſchen (droſch), fechten (fichſt, ficht, focht), flechten (flichſt, flicht, flocht), gähren (gährt, gohr), kommen (kommt or kömmt, kam),‖ löſchen (loſch), pflegen (pflegt, pflog),¶ ſcheren (ſchiert or ſchert, ſchor), ſchwören (ſchwört, ſchwor), weben (webt, wob).

166. SECOND GROUP.—e—i (or ie)—a—e.

TYPE :—**meſſen—mißt—maß—(mäße)—gemeſſen.**
geſchehen—geſchieht—geſchah—(geſchähe)—geſchehen.

NORMAL VERBS :—eſſen (gegeſſen), freſſen, geben (giebt), geſchehen, (geſchieht), leſen (lieſt), meſſen, ſehen (ſieht), vergeſſen, treten (tritt).

---

* The imperfect subjunctive is included for convenience.

† To be frightened ; erſchrecken, to frighten, is a weak verb.

‡ Intransitive ; ſtecken, transitive, is a weak verb.

§ To induce ; bewegen, set in motion, is a weak verb.

‖ The e may be traced in bequem.

¶ Is weak, except in a few idiomatic phrases.

VARIATIONS :—bitten (bittet, bat), geneſen (geneſt),* liegen (liegt), and ſitzen (ſitzt), the tenses of which are formed as if from eſſen.

Weſen (for which ſein is used) belongs to this group, and changes ſ into r in the past.

167. THIRD GROUP.—**ei**—**ei** (as weak verbs)—**ie** or **i**—**ie** or **i**.

TYPE:—**ſcheinen—ſcheint—ſchien—(ſchiene)—geſchienen;**
reiten—reitet—ritt—(ritte)—geritten;

the consonant being doubled to show the shortness of the vowel.

NORMAL VERBS: Like ſcheinen:—bleiben, gedeihen, leihen, meiden, preiſen, ſcheiden, ſcheinen, ſchreiben, ſchreien, ſchweigen, ſpeien, ſteigen, weiſen, zeihen.†

Like reiten:—beißen, befleißen, erbleichen, gleichen, gleiten, greifen, kneifen, leiden, (litt), pfeifen, reißen, reiten, ſchleichen, ſchleifen, ſchleißen, ſchmeißen, ſchneiden (ſchnitt), ſchreiten, ſtreiten, ſtreichen, weichen.

168. FOURTH GROUP.—**ie**—**ie** (as weak verbs)—**o**—**o**.

TYPE:—**fliegen—fliegt—flog—(flöge)—geflogen.**

NORMAL VERBS:—biegen, bieten, fliehen, fliegen, frieren, genießen, gießen, kiefen (kor, gekoren), kriechen, riechen, ſchieben, ſchießen, ſchließen, ſieden (ſott, geſotten), ſprießen, ſtieben, triefen, verdrießen, verlieren, wiegen, ziehen (zog, gezogen).

VARIATIONS:—The verbs whose infinitives are betrügen, lügen, ſaugen, ſchrauben, ſaufen (ſoff, geſoffen), belong to this group; lügen, trügen, and several of the verbs in ie, often form, in poetry, the second and third singular Present Indicative in eu; as, leugt, kreucht, ſleugt.

169.—FIFTH GROUP.—**a**—**ä**—**u**—**a**.

TYPE:—**ſchlagen—ſchlägt—ſchlug—(ſchlüge)—geſchlagen.**

NORMAL VERBS:—fahren, graben, laden,‡ ſchlagen, ſchaffen (ſchuf), tragen, wachſen and sometimes backen.

---

* Formerly written ſ't.

† Accuse; take care to distinguish from ziehen, draw.

‡ There are really two verbs—laden, load, a strong verb; and laden, invite, a weak verb. In the Present Tense ladet and lädt are used indifferently in both meanings; in the Past Tense, ladete is occasionally used.

VARIATIONS:—heben (hebt, hob or hub, gehoben);* ſchwören (ſchwört, ſchwur or ſchwor, geſchworen); ſtehen (which has taken the place of *standan*, ſteht, ſtand or ſtund, geſtanden).

170. SIXTH GROUP.—**i** (**e** before **r** and **l**)—**i**—**a**—**u** or **o**.

TYPE:—**ſingen—ſingt—ſang—(ſänge)—geſungen;**
bergen—birgt—barg—(bärge)—geborgen.

NORMAL VERBS:—Like ſingen:—binden, dringen, finden, gelingen, klingen, ringen, ſchlingen, ſingen, ſinken, ſpringen, ſtinken, winken, winden, zwingen.

Like bergen: — befehlen, empfehlen, (befiehlt, Imp. Subj., beföhle), helfen (Imp. Subj., hälfe or hülfe), gelten (gälte or gölte), ſchelte (ſchölte), ſchwimmen, ſterben (ſtürbe), verderben (verdürbe), werben (würbe), werden (würde), werfen (wärfe or würfe).

VARIATIONS:—glimmen, klimmen, make glomm, klomm; ſchallen, ſchallt, ſcholl; ſchmelzen, ſchmolz; ſchwellen, ſchwoll; quellen, quoll, the Imp. Subj. taking ö; dingen makes dang or dung, also dingte; beginnen, rinnen, ſinnen, ſpinnen, take o in the Imp. Subj., with a in the Imp. Ind.

171. SEVENTH GROUP. — REDUPLICATING VERBS.—Infinitive varies—Present as in weak verbs, except that **a** becomes **ä**—Past tense **ie** (or **i**)—Past Participle as Infinitive.

TYPE:—**halten—hält—hielt—(hielte)—gehalten.**

NORMAL VERBS:—blaſen, braten, fallen, fangen (fing), halten, hangen (hing), heißen, laſſen, laufen, raten, rufen, ſtoßen.

VARIATIONS:—hauen, makes haut, hieb; gehen has superseded a form *gangan* (Scotch *gang*), and makes geht, ging, gegangen.

Obs. Reduplication, familiar to us in examples like *momordi*, *spopondi*, *τέτυφα*, does not exist in modern German; but there is a group of verbs (halten, hielt being the type) in which the formation of the Past Tense is clearly traceable to it. Hielt is, in fact, a contraction of a form which appears in Gothic as *haihald*.

---

* The regular participle is preserved in **erhaben**, sublime.

172. PECULIARITIES OF THE WEAK CONJUGATION.—Notice the following:—

(1.) As in the case of adjectives, a contraction takes place when a liquid comes between two e's. In the First Person Singular Present Indicative the e of the root, in other parts the e of the inflection, is dropped; as, ich handle, du handelſt, er handelt, wir handeln; ich wandre, du wanderſt, &c.

(2.) In forming the Past Indicative and Subjunctive, e is retained after d, t, th (as, redete, vermutete), but dropped in all other cases, as lachte.

(3.) The verbs brennen, rennen, kennen, ſenden, wenden, have a in the Past Tense and Perfect Participle; a is the original vowel of the root.*

173. MIXED CONJUGATION, &c.—A few verbs are partly strong, partly weak, or present other anomalies.

(1.) Bringen (brachte, gebracht), denken (dachte, gedacht), dünken, (däuchte, gedäucht), form their Past Tense and Participle as if from brachen, dachen, däuchen; gönnen sometimes makes gonnte, gegonnt, as well as gönnte, gegönnt.

(2.) Thun makes ich thue, du thuſt, er thut; wir thun, ihr thut, ſie thun—that—thäte—gethan. There is a popular form thät for the Past often used with the Infinitive, as in die Augen thäten ihm ſinken.

(3.) Wiſſen makes ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß; wir wiſſen, ihr wiſſet, ſie wiſſen—wußte—wüßte—gewußt. The Present is really a Past.

174. VERBS OF MOOD.—The verbs of mood dürfen, können, mögen, müſſen, ſollen, wollen have several peculiarities of conjugation. In all of them—

(1.) the singular Present Indicative has in all three persons a different vowel from the Infinitive (except in ſollen); it is, in fact, as in wiſſen, really a Past Tense;

(2.) the Past Tense and Past Participle are formed according to the weak conjugation;

(3.) there is another form of the Perfect Participle, identical with the Infinitive, which is used whenever a Compound Tense of the Auxiliary is joined to another Infinitive.

Laſſen, which has the 3rd property, is in other respects a strong verb of the seventh group.

---

* The Gothic form is *brannjan;* the n or j accounts for Umlaut.

175. CONJUGATION OF VERBS OF MOOD:—

	Present.		Past.	
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
dürfen, dare, may, be permitted to.	ich darf du darfſt er darf wir dürfen, &c.	ich dürfe du dürfeſt er dürfe &c.	ich durfte du durfteſt er durfte &c.	ich dürfte du dürfteſt er dürfte &c.
können, can, be able to.	ich kann du kannſt er kann wir können, &c.	ich könne du könneſt er könne &c.	ich konnte du konnteſt er konnte &c.	ich könnte du könnteſt er könnte &c.
mögen, may, like to.	ich mag du magſt er mag wir mögen, &c.	ich möge du mögeſt er möge &c.	ich mochte du mochteſt er mochte &c.	ich möchte du möchteſt er möchte &c.
müſſen, must, be obliged to.	ich muß du mußt er muß wir müſſen, &c.	ich müſſe du müſſeſt er müſſe &c.	ich mußte du mußteſt er mußte &c.	ich müßte du müßteſt er müßte &c.
ſollen, ought, have to.	ich ſoll du ſollſt er ſoll wir ſollen, &c.	ich ſolle du ſolleſt er ſolle &c.	ich ſollte du ſollteſt er ſollte &c.	ich ſollte du ſollteſt er ſollte &c.
wollen, will, want to.	ich will du willſt er will wir wollen, &c.	ich wolle du wolleſt er wolle &c.	ich wollte du wollteſt er wollte &c.	ich wollte du wollteſt er wollte &c.

Perfect Participles:—dürfen or gedurft, können or gekonnt, mögen or gemocht, müſſen or gemußt, ſollen or geſollt, wollen or gewollt.

176. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.—There are six inseparable prefixes, viz.:—

ent or **emp, er,**
be, ge, ver, zer.

Verbs compounded with these are conjugated like benehmen (§ 148). There is then no accent on the prefix.

177. DOUBTFUL PREFIXES. — Verbs compounded with durch, hinter, um, über, unter, wider (wieder) are sometimes conjugated like benehmen, and sometimes like vorziehen, according to meaning. If the prefix retains its accent they are conjugated like vorziehen; if it does not, like entziehen. For details, see Chapter XV.

178. **Miß** AND **voll.**—Miß is used in three ways :—

(1.) It is unaccented and inseparable, as mißlegen, mißbraucht, mißhandelt, zu mißbrauchen. This is the most usual.

(2.) It is accented and ge is prefixed to the whole verb, as gemißbraucht, gemißbilligt.

(3.) In Lessing and Goethe it is sometimes separable in the infinitive and past participle, mißgehandelt, mißgetrieben, but this is not now used. In a few cases of participles used as adjectives, as mißgeformt, mißgestaltet, it is only *apparently* a separable prefix.

Voll is unaccented and inseparable in the verbs vollbringen, vollenden, vollführen, vollziehen. In a compound like vollgießen, *to fill by pouring*, it is really a separate word, accented, and therefore separable.

179. SEPARABLE PREFIXES.—The following prefixes are separable :—ab, an, auf, aus, bei, dar, ein, fort, her, hin, los, mit, nach, ob, vor, weg, zu, empor, nieder, zurück, zusammen, entgegen. Verbs compounded with these prefixes are conjugated like vorziehen.

180. COMBINATIONS OF PREFIXES.—A question arises as to combinations of separable and inseparable prefixes.

(1.) A compound prefix made up of two separable prefixes, as heraus, vorbei, vorüber, herum, umher, is separable. The accent falls on the second of the two.

(2.) A separable prefix preceding an inseparable is, strictly speaking, separable so far as the Present and Past Indicative and the Infinitive with zu are concerned. In the Past Participle, ge is of course not inserted. Thus from vorbehalten the Past Participle is vorbehalten, the infinitive with zu, vorzubehalten, and the Present is used as in the following sentence :—

Das Recht der Überſetzung behält ſich der Verfaſſer vor.

Similar words are anerkennen, anvertrauen, auferſtehen, eingeſtehen, The use of such verbs where separation would be necessary is often avoided ; some authors treat them as entirely inseparable.

(3.) The occurrence of an inseparable prefix before a separable prefix is only apparent, as in beauftragen. (*See* § 181.)

(4.) A combination of two inseparable prefixes, as in mißverſtehen, calls for no remark, being of course inseparable.

181. MISCELLANEOUS COMPOUNDS. — Verbs, which have an adjective or adverb (not included in the list of ordinary prefixes) prefixed, are separable ; as, großthun, brag ; wohlwollen, wish well to ; fehlſchlagen, miscarry ; gutheißen, approve ; gleichkommen, be a match for ; hochachten, esteem highly ; wahrnehmen, perceive. Thus, er that groß, es iſt fehlgeſchlagen.

Combinations of a noun and verb, such as preisgeben, to give up ; ſtattfinden, to take place ; haushalten to keep house ; dankſagen, to thank,—are treated as two separate words.

There are a number of verbs that look like compound verbs, but are really derivatives from compound nouns. Such are, ratſchlagen,* take counsel ; handhaben, handle ; weisſagen, divine, prophesy (not really a compound of weiſe, ſagen) ; mutmaßen, suspect ; willfahren, oblige. They are treated as ordinary verbs—er handhabt, ich habe geratſchlagt. It should be further noticed that we have geratſchlagt, and not geratſchlagen. the verb being a derivative of Ratſchlag, not a compound of ſchlagen.

A few verbs of this kind, with an inseparable prefix, also call for remark. Such are, beobachten, observe (Obacht) ; beauftragen, commission (Auftrag) ; verabſchieden, dismiss (Abſchied) ; veranlaſſen, cause (Anlaß) ; bemitleiden (Mitleid), pity ; beeinfluſſen, influence (Einfluß) ;

* Occasionally strong, ratſchlägt.

beaufſichtigen, superintend (Aufſicht). They are treated as ordinary inseparable verbs—ich habe veranlaßt, er beauftragte mich. Notice as before—veranlaßte, not veranließ; beauftragte, not beauftrug; bemitleidete, not bemitlitt.

182. FACTITIVE VERBS. — There are, in German, a number of pairs of verbs like our *fall* and *fell*—*i.e.*, fall, and cause to fall. Factitive verbs (*cause to fall*) are formed from certain intransitive verbs by modifying the root-vowel, or sometimes by another change. Thus we have :—

dorren, dry up (intrans.), wither,	dörren, dry up, cause to wither.
dringen, press on, make one's way,	drängen, press, crowd (trans.).
erkalten, grow cold,	erkälten,* make cold.
eſſen, eat,	äßen, cause to eat away, etch. §
einſchlafen, go to sleep,	einſchläfern, lull to sleep.
fallen, fall,	fällen, fell.
fließen, flow,	flößen,† cause to flow, float (tr.).
fahren,‡ ride in a carriage, &c.,	führen, lead, take in a carriage.
hangen, hang, be hanging,	hängen, hang (trans.).
haften, stick, be fixed,	heften, fasten, fix.
liegen, lie,	legen, lay.
ſaufen, drink,	erſäufen, drown (make to drink water to excess).
ſaugen, suck,	ſäugen, suckle.
ſchallen, sound (intr.),	ſchellen, ring (a bell).
ſchwimmen, swim,	ſchwemmen, deluge (make to swim).
ſchwinden, vanish,	verſchwenden, squander.
ſinken, sink (intr.),	ſenken, sink (trans.).
ſitzen, sit,	ſetzen, set.
ſpringen, jump,	ſprengen, make to jump, blow up with gunpowder.

* Especially ſich erkälten, catch cold.

† Notice Einem etwas einflößen, to make something flow into a person, inspire him with it.

‡ Old English verb *to fare*. § Also *to feed*, especially of birds.

trinken, drink,	tränken, make to drink, water (a horse, &c.).
wiegen, weigh (intr.)	wägen, weigh (trans.).

183. STRONG PARTICIPLES FROM WEAK VERBS.—The following strong Participles from verbs which have passed into the weak conjugation, should be noticed :—

Class 1...	unverhohlen,	from	hehlen, conceal.
	gerochen,	„	rächen, avenge.
Class 5..	gemahlen,	„	mahlen, grind.
Class 6..	gemolken,	„	melken, milk.
	beklommen,	„	beklemmen, press tight.
	verworren,	„	verwirren, confuse.
Class 7...	gefalten,	„	falten, fold.
	gespalten,	„	spalten, to cleave.
	geschroten,	„	schroten, cut up (shred).
	gesalzen,	„	salzen, salt.

The infinitives of the auxiliary verbs of mood, können, sollen, &c., used with other infinitives, are really the older strong forms of the Past Participle. (*See* Syntax, § 476).

Chapter XII.—Adverbs, Prepositions and Conjunctions.

184. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS. — Adverbs are often classified according to their meaning, as adverbs of time, place, manner, &c. It is perhaps better to treat them according to the parts of speech with which they are most closely associated.

185. PRONOMINAL ADVERBS. — These include adverbs connected with the roots of the relative and interrogative w—, the demonstrative d—, and the obsolete demonstrative h—.

(1.) wo, *where;* wohin, *whither;* woher, *whence;* warum, *why;* worauf, *whereupon;* wie, *how, as;* &c.

(2.) da, *there;* dort, *there;* dahin, *thither;* daher, *thence, therefore;* darauf, *thereupon;* darinnen, *therein;* &c.

(3.) hier, *here;* her, *hither;* hin, *hence;* hierin, *herein;* hierauf, *hereupon;* &c.

186. ADJECTIVES AS ADVERBS. — Nearly all adjectives and many participles can be used in German as adverbs in their uninflected form, as ſchön gekleidet, *beautifully dressed;* ſchwer beladen, *heavily laden;* ausgezeichnet gut, *remarkably good;* eingehend unterſuchen, *to investigate thoroughly,* &c.

Obs. 1. Hence it is very important to distinguish an adjective used adverbially from an adjective proper; *e.g.* neu eingebundene Bücher, *newly-bound books,* from neue, eingebundene Bücher, *new, bound books.*

Obs. 2. In older German, a great number of adverbs were formed from adjectives by a vowel-ending, originally o and then e, which has now almost disappeared, though gerne, ſtrenge, balde, lange are still

found. A similar change has taken place in English, but we have, except in a limited number of phrases, such as to *talk loud*, to *drink hard*, made an effort to compensate the loss by employing a different form. Chaucer has *brighté*, *deepé*, in the sense of *brightly*, *deeply*.

187. ADVERBS FORMED BY TERMINATIONS.—These are—(1) the genitive termination s; (2) lich; (3) en, er; (4) lings, wärts, perhaps better classed under § 188.

(1.) The genitive termination s (*see* § 376) is added both to nouns, as abends, *in the evening*; anfangs, *at the beginning*; and even Nachts, *at night* (though Nacht is feminine); diesseits (though seits is feminine); and to adjectives, as rechts, *to the right*; eilends, *hastily*; anders, *otherwise*; besonders, *especially*; zusehends, *visibly*. Similarly are formed falls, flugs, stracks, bereits, &c. Notice especially the adverbs in ens from superlatives and numerals, as wenigstens, *at least*; zweitens, *in the second place*.

(2.) lich, as *ly* in English, is really an adjective termination, but many words ending in it are used chiefly or exclusively as adverbs, such as freilich, *to be sure*, hoffentlich, *it is to be hoped*. Words like täglich, schriftlich, formed from nouns, are generally capable of being used either as adjectives or adverbs. Even those formed by adding lich to adjectives are not always adverbs only, as gänzlich, *entirely* or *entire*. Notice—

(i.) the modification when lich is added to a monosyllable, as täglich, gänzlich, and occasionally to a dissyllable, as öffentlich, wöchentlich.

(ii.) the change of the final d of participles, into t, as hoffentlich,* and the insertion of t after n, as öffentlich, gelegentlich.

(3.) en and er represent old adverbial endings, and occur in words like hinnen, dannen, draußen, oben, außer, hier, &c.

(4.) lings (English *long* in *headlong*); wärts (English *wards*): as, blindlings, *blindly*; jählings, *abruptly*; abwärts, *downwards*; rückwärts, *backwards*.

188. COMPOUND ADVERBS.—The German language forms compound adverbs with great facility.—Three classes especially call for notice.

---

* But jugendlich, tugendlich, allabendlich.

(1.) Those made up of an adjective and a noun in the genitive case, or of two nouns, one acting as an adjective to the other, in fact, the adverbial genitive treated of in the syntax § 376. Among these are to be noted specially compounds of—

Weiſe, as glücklicherweiſe, *luckily;* vorzugsweiſe, *especially, by preference;* ſtufenweiſe, *step by step.*

Fall, as jedenfalls, *in any case.*

Mal, as abermals, *again;* ehemals, *formerly.*

Weile, as mittlerweile, *meanwhile;* bisweilen, *now and then.*

Seite, as meinerſeits, *for my part;* jenſeits, *on the other side.*

Teil, as größtenteils, *for the most part.*

Ding, as allerdings, *in any case, certainly;* ſchlechterdings, *without more ado (straightway).*

Weg, as keineswegs, *by no means;* geradeswegs, *straightway;* allerwege, *under all circumstances*

Maße, as einigermaßen, *in some measure.*

(2.) Those made up of a preposition and its case, as zuletzt, *at last;* insbeſondere, *especially;* fürwahr, *in truth;* ſeitdem, *since then.*

(3.) Those made up of a noun and an adverb, as bergauf, *uphill;* ſeldein, *afield;* wochenlang, *for weeks.*

Obs. While several of these adverbs, as glücklicherweiſe, keineswegs, are strictly grammatical in form, others are corrupted; thus allenfalls is properly an accusative (allen Fall) to which the s has been added by analogy; ſchlechterdings is a genitive plural (ſchlechter Dinge) treated in the same way; indeſſen looks like a preposition with a genitive, and so on.

189. MISCELLANEOUS ADVERBS.—Many adverbs hardly fall under any of the above-named groups; such are adverbs now used as prepositions like auf, *up;* ab, *down;* and words like nicht, *not* (English *no-whit*); ſehr, *very*, really from an adjective meaning *sore (sair);* geſtern, *yesterday;* heute, *to-day;* gern, *willingly;* immer, *always;* nie, *never;* ſchon, *already*, adverbial form of ſchön; nun, *now* (really from a demonstrative root); faſt, *almost* (adverbial form of feſt); kaum, *scarcely;* nur, *only*, &c. (*See* § 203.)

190. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.—The uninflected comparatives of adjectives are freely used as adverbs; the uninflected superlatives are so used only in a few cases. There are two or three irregular (or rather borrowed) comparisons besides those noticed under the comparison of adjectives, viz.,

gut or wohl... beſſer ... am beſten,
bald ... eher ... am eheſten (baldigſt also used),
gern ... lieber ... am liebſten.

191. FORMS OF SUPERLATIVE ADVERB.—There are four distinct forms of the superlative adverb, from hoch—(1) am höchſten, (2) aufs höchſte, (3) höchſt, (4) höchſtens.

(1.) **am höchſten**, which is often employed to translate the English superlative *adjective* (§ 304), is also used to render the English superlative *adverb*, being a *relative* superlative.

Thus ich tanze am liebſten mit Dir implies that I like to dance with A, I like better to dance with B, but best of all with *you*.

(2.) The form **auf das** or **aufs** is the most usual way of rendering the *absolute* superlative adverb; **zum** is also used.

Er empfing mich aufs freundlichſte, *he received me in the most friendly way*, or *most kindly* (not more kindly than others).

Er hatte ſich zum ſchönſten ausgebildet, *he had trained himself admirably* (not necessarily better than others).

(3.) The simple uninflected form is also an *absolute* superlative, but its use is limited; it is most common in expressions of courtesy at the end of a letter, &c., as ergebenſt, *most devotedly*; dankbarſt, *most gratefully*. Notice höchſt, *extremely, very*; jüngſt, *lately*; möglichſt, *as much as possible*; ſchleunigſt, *with all speed*.

(4.) The form in ens is limited to a few words, and answers to our superlative with *at*—höchſtens, *at most, at best*; wenigſtens, mindeſtens, *at least*, &c. But beſtens simply means *in the best way* (danke beſtens); ſtrengſtens, *most strictly*, &c.

192. **Erſt.** — Besides its ordinary meaning *first* (often followed by dann) erſt is used idiomatically to mean *not until, not sooner than*, and may often be rendered *only*. When you *say* that something happens for the first time to-day, you *imply* that it did not happen before to-day. Note the following examples:—

Uns, die wir beidlebig ſind, ward erſt wohl im Waſſer wie den Fröſchen. *Like frogs, we did not feel thoroughly at home till we got into the water, being amphibious creatures.* (Goe.)

Er iſt erſt geſtern angekommen, *he arrived only yesterday.*

Ein ſtattlicher Holzbau erſt vor zehn Jahren von Grund aus neu aufgeführt, *completely rebuilt only ten years ago.* (Riehl.)

Mit der Büchſe trifft er erſt, wie keiner in der Welt, *when you come to shooting with the rifle, he is facile princeps.* (Goe.)

Die Blume iſt erſt aufgegangen, *has just sprung up.*

Ach wüßteſt du wie's Fiſchlein iſt—ſo wohlig auf dem Grund,
Du ſtiegſt herunter wie du biſt—und würdeſt erſt geſund.
Then and not till then really sound and healthy (*tum vero*).

Er iſt erſt Hauptmann, *he is only a captain* (not yet a major).

Wenn du ihn erſt ſiehſt! *when you do see him!*

193. **Schon.**—Schon, *already*, means *not later than*, just as erſt means *not sooner than*. It is often attached to a single word rather than to the whole sentence, and may then be translated *even*. To give its full meaning often requires a little explanation.

Nach einer Einrichtung, die ſchon Carl der Fünfte gemacht hatte, *according to an arrangement which even Charles V. had made* (*i.e.*, a sovereign who lived as far back as Charles V.).

Er wird ſchon anderer Meinung werden, *the time will come when he will change his mind.*

Was zwanzig Jahre ſich erhält und die Neigung des Volkes hat, das muß ſchon etwas ſein, *must certainly be something* (if we stop at that point in our reasoning, we have *already* reached the conclusion that *it is something*).

Hatte ſich der Meiſter vorher ſchon wenig um Haus und Beruf bekümmert, ſo that er es jetzt noch viel weniger. *If the tradesman had hitherto troubled himself but little about his house and his business* (the contrast being between ſchon wenig and noch weniger, not between ſchon and jetzt).* (Riehl.)

194. **Noch.** — Noch means *still, yet,* of time, and must be distinguished from doch, which means *nevertheless.*

Noch einmal, means *once more;* noch eine Flaſche Wein, *another* (*i.e.*, an additional) *bottle of wine*, to be distinguished from eine andere Flaſche, *a different bottle;* noch mehr, *still more.*

In phrases like er wird noch heute ankommen, *this very day, before to-day is over*, the idea is that there is still time for him to come to-day; in noch vor einem Jahre, *only a year ago*, it is stated that the condition of things lasted up to a year ago, it is implied that it is over now.

Noch vor einem Jahre war es das ſüßeſte Traumbild ſeines Ehrgeizes, einmal Ratsherr zu werden; heute lehnte er es ab. *Only a year ago it was the sweetest dream of his ambition, to become a town-councillor some day; to-day he declined the honour.* (Riehl.)

In this sentence the dream was going on a year ago, but soon to come to an end; had the words been erſt vor Einem Jahre, it would have meant that the dream began a year ago; if ſchon vor einem Jahre, we should infer that the dream is still continuing, which would be inconsistent with the concluding clause.

Obs. Combined with a negative, noch implies that the action is still unperformed, as in noch nicht, *not yet*, noch keiner, *no one as yet.*

Aus Ägypten kommt vielleicht noch lange nichts. *It will, perhaps, be a long time before anything comes from Egypt* (the not-coming lasts long).

Das iſt noch garnichts (compared with what is to come).

195. **Doch** means *however, nevertheless.* It is often used elliptically to contradict a thought not expressed:—

Die Treue iſt doch kein eitler Wahn, *loyalty is after all no mere illusion* (you thought it was, but it is not).

Mich haben ſie zum Schlächter auserkoren,
Zum Mörder meiner doch verehrten Mutter,
Of the mother whom I revere though I am her murderer.

---

* In this chapter several examples are taken from Mr. Wolstenholme's edition of Riehl's "Novellen," to the excellent notes of which I am much indebted for suggestions about the particles.

So in exclamations and questions of appeal.

Ich möchte doch wissen, *I should like to know*, with a stress on ***should***.

Daß er doch reden wollte, *I do wish he would speak*.

Notice its use also in oblique questions and wishes.

Ich fragte endlich meinen Kameraden, was er doch für Autors lese, *what authors he did read*.

Die Freunde drangen in den Meister, er möge die zuchtlose Bestie doch abschaffen oder an die Kette legen. *His friends were urgent with the master; Do pray, they said, get rid of the unmanageable monster, or chain him up.* (Riehl.)

And in negativing a supposition:

Tempelherr: Ihr kennt mich schon nicht mehr!
Klosterbruder: Doch, doch! (Lessing.)
You don't remember me.—I do, though.

195A. **Wohl** accented means *well* (*bene*); unaccented, it has several meanings:

(1.) It often makes a statement more modest, and may be rendered, *presumably*, *probably*.

Mich will der Ritter wohl in Frieden lassen. (Sch.)
I suppose the knight will leave me in peace.

It takes, in fact, the assent of the reader as probable, while doch implies that he would be disposed to differ.

So too in questions:

Euch lüstet's wohl, wie Babington zu sterben? (Sch.)
Are you perhaps anxious to die as Babington died?

(2.) It thus sometimes comes to be equivalent to the English *will* or *would*, implying a habit.

Standen Käufer im Waarenlager, dann schaute Meister Richwin wohl durchs Fenster seinem bösen Buben zu. *If there were customers in the shop, master Richwin would look out of the window at his naughty boy.* —(Riehl.)

(3.) It often has a concessive sense like freilich.

Das kann wohl sein, *I admit it may be so.*

196. **Auch**.—Auch means *also*, *even*. When it occurs in a clause beginning with wer, was, wo, wie, it is conveniently rendered by the English suffix *ever* in *whoever*, *whatever*, &c.

Obs. 1. Notice er hat auch recht, *he is right*.

Obs. 2. Auch is mostly separated from wer, wo, &c., as—

Wer er auch sei, *whoever he may be*.

Wenn auch is best translated *even though, even if.* As wenn is often omitted (*see* Syntax § 571) and the sentence inverted, one must be careful in translating auch, as iſt er auch angekommen, *even if he is come . . .*

197. CONCESSIVE ADVERBS.—Freilich, allerdings, zwar (for *ze wâre*, zu wahr, *at* or *in truth*), and frequently wohl are concessive, meaning *to be sure, it must be granted that,* &c., equivalent to *sane, quidem* in Latin.

Obs. Und zwar, (1) *and that too,* (2) almost equals *namely.*

198. NOW.—Jetzt is simply an adverb of time ; nun implies an inference (*now after what has happened*) ; nunmehr, *now* emphatically. Notice von nun an, *from this time forth.*

199. THEREFORE. — *Therefore*, in English, sometimes denotes a real result, sometimes only an inference.

If the second fact is to be represented as a real consequence of the first, daher, darum, deswegen or deshalb is used ; if only as a logical consequence, an inference, folglich, alſo, mithin, demnach.

Es hat geregnet ; daher ſind die Wege ſchlüpfrig,

because the state of the roads is a real result of the rain.

But

Der Barometer ſteigt ; folglich gibt es beſſeres Wetter,

because the rising of the barometer is not a cause of better weather, but simply a fact from which we infer that there will be better weather.

200. THEN.

(1.) **Damals** refers to a definite past time and answers to the French *alors.*

(2.) **Dann** also answers to the French *alors*, though without referring to a definite past time ; it is in fact, the correlative of wann, wenn. It also means *next*, answering to the French *puis.* Alsdann is a strengthened form.

(3.) **Denn** answers to the French *donc*, and is equivalent to the English *then* as a softened *therefore.* It is especially used by Goethe in this sense. Lessing, on the other hand, frequently uses it to emphasise a question.

201. WHEN.—*When* asking a question, direct or indirect ("When are you coming?" "I want to know when you are coming") is an interrogative adverb, and is translated by wann. In other circumstances it is a conjunction, and is rendered by wenn, als, da, or wo (Syntax, 546 *seq.*). Notice bis wann? *till when? how long?* ſeit wann? *since when? how long?* (with a past tense).

202. So has several meanings; it is used

(1.) like the English *so* or *as* (the first *as* in *as great as, as soon as*), to qualify adjectives and adverbs or before *that;*

(2.) In cases where it seems in English to be superfluous, to answer to words like *though, if, as, when*, expressed or understood. It then introduces the *apodosis.*

Wenn die Noth am höchſten, ſo iſt Gottes Hülfe am nächſten, *man's extremity is God's opportunity.*

Wenn euer Gewiſſen rein iſt, ſo ſeid ihr frei, *if your conscience is clear, you are free.*

(3.) It often introduces a *subordinate* sentence, and is then closely joined to an adjective or adverb. The nearest English equivalent is either *however* (especially when auch follows) before adjectives, &c., or *as* put after them, but there is room for a good deal of variety in translating it.

So große Erwartungen auch ganz Europa jetzt hegte, ſo ging doch alles ganz anders. *Great as were the expectations all Europe now cherished* (we might also say *however great*, or *despite the expectations*).

Notice especially in this connection ſo lang, *as long as;* ſobald, *as soon as;* ſo weit, *as far as.*

(4.) In Old German, and consequently in modern poetry, ſo is often rendered by *if:* *

So du kämpfeſt ritterlich,
So freut dein alter Vater ſich.

If you fight like a knight, then your old father will be glad at heart.

(5.) So (like *as* in English) was formerly used as a relative, die, ſo bezahlen können, *those who can pay.*

---

* that he would pawn his fortunes
To hopeless restitution, *so* he might
Be called your vanquisher. Coriolanus III. 1.

203. OTHER ADVERBS.—Notice the following:—

gar, *quite, very;* garnicht, *not at all;* ſogar, *even;* zunächſt, *first* (not *next*); überhaupt, *speaking generally;* überhaupt nicht, *not at all* (like *omnino non*); eben, *just, quite* (never *even*); eben nicht, nicht eben, *not exactly, not quite;* ſonſt, *otherwise, at other times, formerly;* umſonſt, *in vain;* durchaus, *thoroughly;* durchaus nicht, *not at all;* bald . . . . bald, *now . . . . now, at one time . . . . at another;* neulich, kürzlich, jüngſt, vor kurzem, *lately, the other day;** kurz, *in short;* übrigens, *for the rest, at the same time;* zuerſt, like Latin *primus*, as er hat es zuerſt gethan, *he was the first to do it;* gleich, ſogleich, ſofort, *immediately;* zugleich, *at the same time;* einmal, *once*, often to be rendered in English only by an emphasis; auf einmal, *at once* (not in the sense *immediately*); nicht einmal, *not so much as, not even;* faſt, beinahe, *almost;* überall, *everywhere* (not *above all*); immer wieder, *again and again;* geſchweige denn, *not to mention;* hoffentlich, *it is to be hoped;* bekanntlich, *it is well known;* vollends, *completely*, more often *after all;* zumal, *especially;* wenig, *not very* (to be distinguished from ein wenig); dafür, *on the contrary* (not *therefore*); zudem, *moreover;* gleichwohl, *all the same;* da, *so* (at the beginning of a sentence); deſſenungeachtet, nichtsdeſtoweniger, *nevertheless.*

204. PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE.—The following prepositions always take an accusative:—**durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, wider.** Remember them by the doggerel:—

Cum **durch, für, gegen, wider, um** *et* **ohne**
Accusativum semper pone.

Bis, when used, as it is occasionally, as a preposition, takes the accusative. So also does **ſonder**.

205. PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE.

Schreib **mit, nach, nächſt, gemäß, nebſt, ſamt,**
Bei, ſeit, von, binnen, zu, zuwider,
Entgegen, gegenüber, außer, aus,
Stets mit dem Dativ nieder.

206. PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.—The following govern the accusative when they denote *motion to a place*, the dative when they denote *rest at a place*, or *motion in or at a place*:—

* Which must not be rendered by den anderen Tag (*next day*).

an, auf, neben, in and **hinter, über, zwiſchen, vor,** and **unter.**

It is important to bear in mind exactly under what circumstances the accusative is required after these prepositions when motion is spoken of. For example, suppose a sovereign to be with his army; mark out a space in front of him, and call it vor dem König. Then of a person standing in that place we say, of course, er ſteht vor dem König. We also say er reitet vor dem König, in speaking of an officer riding in front to clear the way, &c. But if a person at the side of the king, or behind him, comes into the space in front, we must say er tritt vor den König.

207. SO-CALLED PREPOSITIONS WITH GENITIVE.—A number of words (nouns, participles, &c.) have come to be used very much like prepositions, and generally govern a genitive. They may conveniently be divided into groups:—

(1.) Participles, viz., während, *during;* ungeachtet, unerachtet, *notwithstanding.* The real construction, here is either

(α) a genitive absolute, während des Proceſſes, like the English *during the suit*, being the equivalent of *durante lite;* or

(β) the genitive governed by achten: ungeachtet ſeines Rechts, *no heed being paid to his right.* Similar, but less common, are unbeſchadet, as unbeſchadet ſeines Rechts, *without prejudice to his right;* unangeſehen, *without reference to.*

(2.) Nouns with preposition expressed or omitted. Such are: anſtatt or ſtatt, *instead of* (Statt, *stead, place*); kraft, *in virtue of* (in Kraft); laut, *according to* (nach Laut, *after the sound of*); zufolge, *agreeably to* (*in the train of*); wegen, *on account of* (the original form is shown in the phrase von Amts wegen, *by authority*); um . . . willen, *for the sake of;* trotz, *in spite of* (Trotz means *defiance*); inmitten, *in the midst of;* vermöge, *in virtue of;* zu Gunſten, *in favour of.* To the same class belong halben (halber), *for the sake of*, and its compounds unterhalb, *on the under side of*, &c.; and the compounds of Seite, jenſeit(s), *ultra;* diesſeit(s), *cis, citra.*

(3.) Adverbs formed from nouns, as rückſichtlich, hinſichtlich, bezüglich, betreffs, anbetreffs, *in reference to;* behufs, *in virtue of.*

(4.) Mittelſt, vermittelſt, *by means of;* längs, *along;* unweit, unfern, *not far from*, &c.

Obs. Of these prepositions several are found with a dative as well as with a genitive. Thus demungeachtet is found as well as deſſenungeachtet, and trotz,* zufolge, längs, and the compounds of halb often take a dative. Entlang, *along*, is generally an adverb following an accusative, sometimes a preposition preceding and governing a genitive or an accusative.

208. PLACE OF PREPOSITION. — Ordinary monosyllabic prepositions stand before the nouns they govern.

The only exception is nach, which occasionally follows its case, Of the others, halben, halber, zuwider, *always* follow their cases; zunächſt, entgegen, gegenüber, generally follow them. Gegenüber is sometimes divided: gegen dem Hauſe über. Wegen, ungeachtet, gemäß, sometimes precede, and sometimes follow; zufolge takes a genitive when it precedes, a dative when it follows its case.

The meaning of the prepositions is discussed in the Syntax. (Ch. X.)

209. CLASSIFICATION OF CONJUNCTIONS.—The chief difference between conjunctions depends on the answer to the question—Are the sentences they connect *co-ordinate*, or is one *subordinate* to the other?—in other words, Are they two independent sentences, or is one incapable of expressing complete sense without being attached to another sentence? The words, *when I come*, do not make complete sense by themselves, but have a meaning only when appended to some principal sentence, *e.g.*, *When I come, I will settle the affair.* Hence we divide conjunctions into (1) *co-ordinative conjunctions*, as *and*, *but*, *or*, connecting one principal sentence, or one subordinate sentence, with another of the same kind; and (2) *subordinative conjunctions*, as *if*, *when*, *as.*

* Takes dative only in the sense of *against, as a match for.*

Classified by their effect on the order of sentences, conjunctions fall under these heads :—

(1.) Co-ordinative conjunctions, which do not affect the order. These are : und, oder, allein, ſondern, denn, aber, and the adverb nämlich.

(2.) Adverbs used as co-ordinative conjunctions, which invert the order, placing the verb second and the nominative after it. Such are : zwar, ſo (when demonstrative), außerdem, daher, doch, demgemäß (when demonstrative), &c.

(3.) Subordinative conjunctions, which throw the verb to the end. Such are : wenn, als, da (when relative), ſo (when relative), während, nachdem, weil, daß, damit (*in order that*), &c.

210. *AND, OR.*—Und, *and*, oder, *or*, are used exactly as in English. There is no exact equivalent of *both . . . and;* ſowohl . . . . als (auch) is the nearest.

Aber ſowohl die Lage, als die Befeſtigung der Stadt ſchienen jedem Angriffe Trotz zu bieten. *But both the situation of the town, and the way in which it was fortified, seemed to defy any attempt to take it.* (Sch.)

As in English, *not only...but also*, so in German nicht nur (blos, allein) ...ſondern auch, serve to couple both sentences and words ; of course with a certain stress on the latter of the two words or sentences. Adverbs, too, like auch, *also;* außerdem, *besides;* gleichfalls, *likewise*, serve to connect sentences.

210A. *NOR* at the beginning of a sentence is rendered by auch with a negative later on. Thus :—*Nor could any one resist him*, auch hielt ihm keiner ſtand (compare the use of *d'ailleurs, du reste* in French).

211. DISJUNCTIVES. — Entweder...oder answer exactly to *either...or*, and weder...noch to *neither...nor*. It should be noticed—

(1.) that when these conjunctions couple *sentences*, and entweder or weder begins a sentence, it causes, like other adverbs, the nominative to follow the verb ; but that when they couple words only, they have no effect on the order.

Entweder hat er vergeſſen, oder gar nicht beabſichtigt zu kommen.
Weder Vater noch Sohn ſind gekommen.

(2.) that weder...noch are treated as *copulative* conjunctions, so that two singular nouns connected by them generally require a plural verb (Syntax § 263).

Obs. 1. Noch is sometimes used to answer to nicht, as well as to weder :—

Er wußte nicht, was er ſagte, noch was er that. (Sch.)

Obs. 2. Weder is a contracted form, the first syllable *ni* or *ne* being lost, and means exactly the same as the Latin *neutrum, neither of two things;* noch, *nor*, corresponds to the Latin *neque*, and is quite distinct from noch, *yet*. Entweder means *one of the two things*, Latin *alterutrum*, so that entweder A oder B strictly means—*one of two things, A* or *B*. It should be added that the use of entweder or weder is not limited to cases where there are but *two* alternatives.

212. **Aber, ſondern.** — The two chief words by which we may render *but* are ſondern and aber. Sondern is used only after a negative sentence or expression, aber may be used after either a negative or an affirmative phrase. Sondern contradicts flatly, especially after nicht nur; aber only qualifies the preceding statement.

Obs. 1. Neither aber nor ſondern affects the order of the sentence, but aber is sometimes put later in its clause, and then serves to emphasize some word or words in it. Thus—

Man ſagt, wir ſeien krank; wir ſind aber in guter Geſundheit.
Ihr ſeid krank; wir aber ſind in guter Geſundheit.
Wir kränkelten; krank aber durften wir nicht heißen.

In the first sentence, the second clause is opposed bodily to the first; in the other two the opposition is between single words in each clause. In all of them aber might stand at the beginning, and the distinction might be brought out by proper emphasis.

Obs. 2. *But*, in English, is often very like a preposition, meaning *except*. It is then rendered either by the preposition außer, by the participle ausgenommen, or by the conjunction als.

Niemand außer ihm war da, *no one but he* (or *him*), *was there.*
Alle Brüder, ausgenommen der älteſte, *all the brothers but the eldest.*
Feſt war keine Wohnung als das Grab, *no dwelling but the grave.*

Obs. 3. The etymology of ſondern and aber throws light on their use. Sondern is the same word as our *sunder*, and therefore naturally makes a distinct opposition. Aber is properly *again*, and thus suggests only a second thought. It retains this meaning in abermals, *again*, tauſende und aber tauſende, *thousands and thousands*. Notice that aber is often used as we use *now*, at the beginning of a new sentence.

213. OTHER ADVERSATIVES.—There are many adverbs which may be employed as the equivalents of ſondern and aber with different shades of meaning.

(1.) Of these vielmehr, *nay rather*, *but on the contrary*, is nearly equivalent to ſondern, but accentuates the opposition rather more strongly.

(2.) Allein is used after clauses containing freilich, zwar, or some other word or phrase denoting a concession. It may be compared to our use of the word *only* with a sort of affected modesty (*meiosis*). It can rarely, however, be translated by *only*, but must be rendered by *but*, *on the contrary*.

(3.) Doch answers to the English *yet* or *though* (used as an adverb). So does jedoch, which is not quite so strong, and expresses a limitation rather than an antithesis or opposition. Doch, if it stands first, generally but not necessarily, throws the nominative after the verb. See Syntax, 497, *Obs.* 1.

(4.) Dennoch is used to contradict rather an inference that might have been drawn, than an actual statement.

Niemand ſollte fehlen, und dennoch fehlte der eine,
Reineke Fuchs, der Schelm. (Goe.)

where to complete the sense, one ought to supply some such words as "and all presented themselves" after Niemand ſollte fehlen. The etymology denn—noch, *even then*, supplies the key.

(5.) Dafür, properly *to make up for this*, is often used as an adversative conjunction. Beware of rendering it by *therefore*.

214. THE—THE.—The word *the* with the comparative in phrases like *the more...the better* is not of course the article, but equivalent in the one case to a relative adverb, in the other to a demonstrative adverb. The former *the* is rendered in German by je, the latter is generally rendered by deſto, sometimes by um ſo, or by a second je.

Je mehr der Vorrat ſchmolz, deſto ſchrecklicher wuchs der Hunger. (Sch.) *The more the stores melted away, the more terribly did the famine increase*, or, more idiomatically, *the famine became more and more terrible, as the stores gradually melted away.*

Obs. In English *the...the* are really the ablative case of a pronoun which may be either demonstrative or relative; in German the ending to of deſto corresponds to *the*, deſ is a genitive corresponding to the French *en, for that, on that account;* je is an adverb of time nearly equivalent to immer; so that je mehr, deſto beſſer, really means, *at any time that there are more, by that much on that account is it better.*

215. AS is used in several ways in English:—

(1.) It is a conjunction, introducing a comparison, and is then rendered by wie:—

Ich ſinge, wie der Vogel ſingt, *I sing as the bird sings.*

In such cases the verb of the second clause is often omitted both in English and in German.

(2.) It is used elliptically with a noun, and is then rendered by wie, if it means *like*, and serves to compare two persons or things; by als, if it means *in the capacity of*, and thus makes the two identical.

Thus persons may be said als Freunde mit einander verkehren, and it would be implied that they were friends really; if wie Freunde were written, they might not be. Notice again: Sokrates iſt als Greis wie ein Verbrecher geſtorben; he was actually an old man, he is only compared to a criminal. Der Vater erträgt den Schmerz als Mann, die Mutter kann ihn wie ein Mann ertragen—or again, an orator might speak wie Cicero, an actor might deliver a certain speech als Cicero, *in the part of Cicero.**

(3.) It is the second *as* in *as great, as soon as.* It is then rendered by als, though in several expressions, as ſobald, *as soon as;* ſo weit, *as far as*, it is, as a rule, entirely dropped.

(4.) It is the first *as* in *as great as*, &c. It is then rendered by ſo in a negative sentence, by ſo or ebenſo in an affirmative one.

(5.) It is a conjunction of *time* rendered by indem, während, wie; or of *cause*, rendered by da.

Obs. For the way of translating *as if*, and for other details, the reader is referred to the Syntax, 564.

---

* Andresen's Sprachgebrauch, p. 158.

216. BEFORE—AFTER.—As these words are in English sometimes adverbs, sometimes prepositions, and sometimes conjunctions, it is necessary to be careful in translating them into German. The following are their equivalents:—

before,	adverb,	ſchon, früher, vorher.
	preposition,	vor (dat. or acc.).
	conjunction,	ehe, bevor.
after,	adverb (rarely so in English),	nachher, ſpäter.
	preposition,	nach (dat.).
	conjunction,	nachdem.

217. SINCE may be (1.) a preposition, and is then translated by ſeit; or (2.) a conjunction, either of time, ſeitdem, or of cause, da or weil.

217A. ADVERBS AS CONJUNCTIONS.—There is a growing tendency to use certain adverbs, which should strictly be followed by als, da, daß, &c., as conjunctions, throwing the verb to the end of the sentence. The most obvious cases are the compounds of ſo 215 (3)), with which als is rarely inserted. Other cases are zumal, *especially as* (omitting da), nun, *now that* (omitting daß), indeſſen in the sense of indem, &c.

Ich kann es ihm nicht abſchlagen, zumal er ſich mir ſo gefällig bewieſen hat.

Nun ich ſie dir empfehle, ſterb' ich ruhig. (Goe.)

Chapter XIII.—Prefixes to Verbs.

218. German is remarkable for its large number of compound verbs, and the power it still retains of forming such verbs. The prefixes are for the most part prepositions or adverbs in common use, but a few are no longer used except as prefixes. The classification of prefixes will be found in §§ 176-180.

The present chapter on the meaning of these little words is necessarily somewhat long, inasmuch as in German, as in other tongues, meaning after meaning has been developed as the language grew, and the existing vocabulary contains not merely words in which each prefix has its modern meaning, but survivals of most of the different stages it has gone through. For example, when we read in a German guide-book that a sequestered valley in the Tyrol is noch nicht verengländert, we gather at once that the new-coined word means *spoilt by the presence of Englishmen*, but we should be quite wrong in interpreting older words like vergrößern, vergöttern, on the same principle.

A.—INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

219. **Be** is originally a preposition meaning *over, about*, and is identical with bei, the sense of which is more restricted. It forms verbs (1) from other verbs, converting intransitives into transitives, or changing the direction of the action of transitives, (2) from adjectives, with the meaning *to make*, (3) from other nouns, meaning to *furnish with*.

(1.) From other verbs. The following cases may be distinguished:

(*a*) The simple verb is intransitive (including verbs with a dative); the compound applies its action to an object, and is transitive. Thus:—

ſprechen, *speak*,	beſprechen (etwas), *discuss, talk of.*
weinen, *weep*,	beweinen (einen Freund), *weep for.*
ſteigen (auf), *climb* (intr.),	beſteigen (einen Berg), *climb, scale.*
kämpfen (mit), *fight* (intr.),	bekämpfen (den Feind), *combat.*
ſchießen, *shoot*,	beſchießen (eine Stadt), *cannonade.*
drohen (with dat.), *threaten*,	bedrohen (with acc.), *threaten.*

Compare in English *wail* and *bewail*, *speak* and *bespeak*.

(β) The simple verb is transitive; the compound alters, so to speak, the direction of its action, and the accusative of the simple verb becomes a dative of the instrument with mit. Thus :—

{ ſprengen (Waſſer auf den Boden),
{ beſprengen (den Boden mit Waſſer);

{ hängen (Kränze auf einen Grabſtein),
{ behängen (einen Grabſtein mit Kränzen).

In English *sprinkle* and *besprinkle* supply a good instance; frequently, however, our language has lost the difference, as in *spatter*, *bespatter*.

(γ) The simple verb is transitive, and the compound governs the same accusative, differing but little in sense from it. There is generally, however, some idea of *completion*, *all over*, &c., to be detected. Thus bedecken, *to cover*, befördern, *to further*, *promote*, are a little more expressive than the simple decken, fördern.

(δ) In a few intransitive compounds the force of be is simply intensive, as in behagen, *suit*; beſtehen, *stand fast*, *consist*; bekommen, *agree with**; beginnen (from root of gähnen, *yawn*, *open*), *begin*; bleiben (from be and leiben, akin to *leave*), *remain*.

(ε) In one or two existing words be may possibly have the sense of belonging to bei in composition, *aside*. Such are begraben, beſtatten, *bury*. Hence a *privative* use (nearly extinct), as in benehmen † (einem etwas), *take away*; ſich begeben ‡ (with gen.), *betake oneself from*, *resign*, and the English *behead*.

---

* Note also bekommen (trans.), *come by*, *get*.

† Side by side with benehmen *take away*, exists ſich benehmen, *behave;* side by side with the English *behead*, the German behaupten, *maintain*, *affirm*.

‡ But ſich begeben, *to happen*; ſich begeben nach, *to betake oneself to* (*se recipere*).

(2.) From adjectives (sometimes in the comparative) it forms verbs meaning to *make* (good, beautiful, &c.). Thus from :—

feucht, *damp*,	befeuchten, *moisten*.
ruhig, *quiet*,	beruhigen, *calm*.
reicher, *richer*,	bereichern, *enrich*.

(3.) From nouns (occasionally plural nouns) it forms verbs meaning to *furnish with*, as from :—

Grenze, *boundary*,	begrenzen, *supply with a boundary, limit*.
Mantel, *cloak*,	bemänteln, *supply with a cloak, cloak*.
Zeuge, *witness*,	bezeugen, *furnish with a witness, attest*.
Völker, *nations*,	bevölkern, *people*.

220. **Ent*** (in empfinden, empfangen, empfehlen, written emp) is found in its original form *ant* in Antwort,† Antlitz, and is identical with Greek ἀντί, Latin *anti*. Its commonest meaning is that of *reversal* or *separation*. Its first meaning is *towards, against, to meet*, and hence comes first the idea of springing *up* towards the beholder, and then that of reaction, undoing. Most of the compound verbs it forms are from other verbs, some from nouns and adjectives. Thus we have—

(1.) From simple verbs ;

(*a*) In the original meaning from :—

sprechen, *speak*,	entsprechen, *answer*.‡
gelten, *be worth*,	entgelten, *requite*.

(*β*) With the idea of springing towards the beholder, almost equivalent to *up*, as from :—

springen, *spring*,	entspringen, *spring up, start up*.
stehen, *stand*,	entstehen, *rise up, arise*.
tauchen, *dive*,	enttauchen, *dive up, emerge*.
werfen, *throw*,	entwerfen, *throw up (off) a plan*.

Notice especially words connected with flame, entzünden, *light up* ; entbrennen, *blaze up*, &c., which may, however, be equally well put under the next head.

---

* *See* the late Prof. Key's Philological Essays, p. 30, a book to which I am indebted for a great many suggestions utilized in this chapter.

† Gothic *anda-vaurdi*.

‡ Now used only in the sense of one thing corresponding or answering to another, not of speech.

(γ) With this is closely connected the idea of *beginning*, as in our phrase "to strike up a tune." Thus we have from :—

blühen, *bloom*,	entblühen, *come into flower*.
ſchlafen, *sleep*,	entſchlafen, *fall asleep* (generally of death).
finden, *find, feel*,	empfinden, *begin to feel*.
zücken, *twitch, make to palpitate*,	entzücken, *begin to twitch*, and applied to the senses *ravish, put into raptures*.

(δ) With the same idea is often associated the notion of *reversal* (the most important meaning of the prefix), as from :—

decken, *cover*,	entdecken, *uncover, discover*.
laden, *load*,	entladen, *unload*.
ſiegeln, *seal*,	entſiegeln, *unseal*.

(ε) Hence also the notion of *separation, removal*, as in entführen, *lead away, kidnap;* entlaufen, *run away;* entſagen, *remove by saying, renounce*.

(2.) The sense of ent noticed under the head (δ) is not only the commonest in compounds formed from verbs, but is also very freely used in making derivatives from nouns and adjectives, as from :—

heilig, *holy*,	entheiligen, *desecrate*.
Völker, *peoples*,	entvölkern, *depopulate*.
Art, *kind, genus*,	entarten, *degenerate*.
Larve, *mask*,	entlarven, *unmask*.

Ent is in such words the opposite of be; in forming new words it is this sense of ent that naturally suggests itself.

221. **Er** originally meant *forth, out of*.* There are many verbs in which its meaning is very like that of ent in its less common uses, but its most familiar signification, when it forms compound verbs from simple verbs, is that of *reaching up to, attaining, gaining by the action of the verb*, and as a prefix forming verbs from adjectives, that of *making* or *becoming*.

(1.) From simple verbs we have—

(α) in meanings akin to ent (β, γ), from :—

halten, *hold*,	erhalten, *hold up, maintain, receive*
bauen, *build*,	erbauen, *build up, edify*.

* The unaccented form of ur, Gothic *us*, as be of bei. Cf. Urſprung and erſpringen, Urlaub and erlauben.

beginning :—

brauſen, *roar*,	erbrauſen, *begin roaring*.
ſtaunen, *be astonished*,	erſtaunen, *become astonished*.

reversal :—

ſchließen, *shut*,	erſchließen, *unshut, open*.

(β) In the sense *again*, *back*, connected with reversal from—

laſſen, *let go*,	erlaſſen, *let go again, let off* (eine Strafe).
ſetzen, *place*,	erſetzen, *replace* (by a substitute).
kennen, *know*,	erkennen, *know again, recognise*.
kaufen, *buy*,	erkaufen, *buy again, redeem*.*
[innern], *put in*,	erinnern, *put in again, make intimate again with, remind*.

(γ) The most characteristic meaning of er is that of *reaching up to*, and so *attaining*, by the action of the simple verb. Thus we have from—

eilen, *hasten*,	ereilen, *reach by hastening, overtake*,
leben, *live*,	erleben, *live to see, experience*.
denken, *think*,	erdenken, *get by thinking, excogitate*.
flehen, *entreat*,	erflehen, *get by entreaty*.
lauern, *lie in wait*,	erlauern, *get by lying in wait, surprise*.

It is in this group that new compounds with er are still formed.

Sometimes the idea of *attainment* is absent—

ſehnen, *long*,	erſehnen, *long after*.

(δ) When er, like ent, denotes *removal*, there is associated with it the idea of *disappearance* or *death*, as from—

löſchen, *quench, be quenched*,	erlöſchen, *be quenched completely*.
ſterben, *die*,	erſterben, *die out*.
tränken, *make to drink*,	ertränken, *drown*.

(2) With adjectives er forms verbs meaning *to make* or *become*, as from—

ſchwer, *difficult*,	erſchweren, *make difficult*.
neuer (comp.), *newer*,	erneuern, *renew*.
grün, *green*,	ergrünen, *grow green*.
rot, *red*,	erröten, *blush*.
blaß, *pale*,	erblaſſen, *turn pale, die*.

* Also *purchase*, with a notion of difficulty, effort.

222. **Ge** means originally *together.** As a verbal prefix it retains this meaning in gerinnen, *flow together*, *coagulate*. From this comes the idea of pas-ing into a state, as gebrechen, *begin to break*, *fail*. This meaning has passed to other prefixes, so that the existing compounds of ge have either replaced the corresponding simple verbs as in gebären, geneſen, gelingen, &c., or differ but little from them in meaning when they continue to exist.

One or two words call for notice, as gefallen, *please*, properly, *to fall in with*; geſtehen, *confess*, properly *stand by* (a statement); gewähren † (from the root of Wehr, and cognate words), *protect*, *warrant*, *vouchsafe* (to answer for one's getting something, and so to grant it); whence gewähren laſſen (to let a person answer for the consequence of his actions, *i.e. let him do as he likes*).

Obs. Notice a few syncopated compounds of ge, as glücken from gelücken (*luck*); glauben, from gelauben, the same verb as appears in erlauben, &c.

223. **Hinter,** a preposition meaning *behind*. — In composition its meanings are (1) *back*, *behind*, as in leaving behind; (2) *secretly*, behind one's back; (3) *deception*, as in the phrase hinter das Licht führen, *to take in*. Thus we have from—

bringen, *bring*,	hinterbringen, *bring secretly* (*news*).
laſſen, *leave*,	hinterlaſſen, *leave behind*.
gehen, *go*,	hintergehen, *deceive*.
halten, *hold*,	hinterhalten, *hold back*, *withhold* (Einem etwas).
treiben, *drive*,	hintertreiben, *hinder* (generally by secret intrigues).

---

* Note its use in forming collective nouns and words like Genoſſe, from nießen, *use*, *one who lives with*; Gefährte, *one who travels with*; Gevatter, *godfather*, like *compère*.

† geraten, *to fall* (*e.g.* unter Räuber, *among thieves*), is from raten, which had once a much wider meaning.

224. Ver* is a prefix which appears in many forms in older German, and is identical with *for* in the English *forswear, forgive, foredo, forbid.* It has in many verbs a privative sense; in many it conveys the idea of *overdoing, spoiling by the action;* the sense of *spoiling* being now the commonest. The compounds of ver with nouns mean *to furnish with, to cover with,* those with adjectives *to make* or *become.*

(1.) From simple verbs:

(α) In the meaning *away*, as from—

reiſen, *travel,*	verreiſen, *travel away.*
drängen, *press, thrust,*	verdrängen, *thrust away, supplant.*
bitten, *ask,*	verbitten, *deprecate* (try and avert by asking.)

(β) Hence with a sense of *exhausting, spoiling,* &c., as from—

hungern, *starve,*	verhungern, *starve to death.*
ſpielen, *play,*	verſpielen, *play away, lose at play,*
hallen, *sound,*	verhallen, *die away* (of a sound).
blühen, *bloom,*	verblühen, *come to an end of blooming, fade.*
rufen, *call,*	verrufen, *decry.*
zweifeln, *doubt,*	verzweifeln, *despair of.*
eſſen *eat,*	freſſen (for vereſſen), *devour.*
ziehen, *train,*	verziehen, *spoil* (a child).‡
braten, *roast,*	verbraten, *over-do* (meat).
pfeffern, *pepper,*	verpfeffern, *over-pepper.*
ſteigen, *climb,*	ſich verſteigen, *over-climb oneself, climb too high.*
meſſen, *measure,*	ſich vermeſſen, *measure oneself too highly, presume.*

Under the same head come such cases as from—

laufen, *run,*	verlaufen (Einem den Weg), *cross one's path, get in one's way.* †
bauen, *build,*	verbauen, *obstruct by building, build out.*

(γ) Is has often the meaning *amiss*, as from—

rechnen, *calculate,*	ſich verrechnen, *miscalculate.*
hören, *hear,*	ſich verhören, *hear amiss.*
raten, *advise,*	verraten, *betray.*
achten, *esteem,*	verachten, *contemn, despise.*

* It is identical with Greek παρα, Latin *per*, and conveys the idea of passing beside, and so on to excess or to destruction. There are several old forms, corresponding to the Greek περί, πρό, παρά, all apparently merged in ver. † ſich verlaufen, *lose one's way.* ‡ Besides many other meanings.

(δ) It also sometimes reverses the action of the verb, as—

lernen, *learn*,	verlernen, *unlearn*.
bieten, *bid*,	verbieten, *forbid*.

(ε) In verfechten, verteidigen,* *defend*; verſehen, *provide*, and perhaps vertreten, *represent*, it seems as if ver meant simply *for*, *on behalf of*, answering to the Greek προ-

(ζ) In some verbs it is difficult to assign a very definite meaning to ver; sometimes it simply strengthens the original force of the verb, as from—

halten, *hold*,	ſich verhalten, *hold oneself*, *behave*.
wechſeln, *change*,	verwechſeln, *interchange*, *exchange*.
nehmen, *take*,	vernehmen, *take in*, *hear*, *understand*.

(η) Sometimes it has the same effect as be, making transitive verbs out of intransitive, as from—

lachen, *laugh*,	verlachen, *deride*.
fluchen, *curse* (intr.),	verfluchen, *curse* (trans.).
ſchweigen, *be silent*,	verſchweigen, *conceal*.
dienen (dat.), *serve*,	verdienen, *deserve*, *earn*.
danken, *thank*,	verdanken, *have to thank for*, *owe*.

(2.) From nouns, ver forms verbs meaning *to cover with*, *to change into*, occasionally like be, *to furnish with*, as from—

Gold, *gold*,	vergolden, *cover with gold*, *gild*.
Glas, *glass*,	verglaſen, *cover with glass*, *glaze*.
Stein, *stone*,	verſteinen, *cover with stones*.
	verſteinern, *petrify*.
Körper, *body*,	verkörpern, *furnish with a body*, *embody*.
Anlaß, *occasion*,	veranlaſſen, *furnish with an occasion*, *cause*.

(3.) From adjectives, it forms verbs meaning *to make*, sometimes verbs meaning *to become*, as from—

kurz, *short*,	verkürzen, *shorten*.
größer, *greater*,	vergrößern, *increase*.
deutſch, *German*,	verdeutſchen, *turn into German*.
kühl, *cool*,	verkühlen, *cool*.

---

* From Teiding, a corruption of tageding, the *thing* or judicial assembly on a set day. The Scandinavian Parliament is called Storthing, and we have the same in *hustings* (*house-thing*), the assembly of the houses or *curiæ*.

Obs. The compounds of ver are among the most difficult, especially as some of them have several different meanings.

Thus vergeben means (1) *to give away*, (2) *to forgive*, (3) *to misdeal* (cards), (4) *to poison* (cf. Gift, *poison*), rare;

verhauen, (1) *to cut down* or *short*, (2) *to barricade* (*i.e.*, stop the road by cutting down trees);

verhören, (1) *to hear completely* (as a judge), (2) *cross-examine*, or (3) *to fail to hear*;

verlegen, (1) *to mislay*, (2) (Einem den Weg...) *to stop the way*, (3) *to remove*, or (4) *to publish*;*

verſagen, (1) *to deny*, or (2) *to promise, engage* (consent by saying);

verſehen, (1) *overlook, err*, or (2) *provide* (*look out for*, as in verſechten);

vertreten, (1) *to stop the way*, (2) *to represent* (*step forward for*), (3) *to trample down*, (4) (ſich den Fuß...) *to hurt one's foot by treading*.

225. **Wider**, *against*, English *with*, *gain*, in composition, as from—

ſtehen, *stand*,	widerſtehen, *withstand*,
ſprechen, *speak*,	widerſprechen, *contradict, gainsay*.

226. **Zer** denotes separation—*all to pieces*, as from—

ſchlagen, *beat*,	zerſchlagen, *beat to pieces*.
ſetzen, *put*,	zerſetzen, *decompose*.
ſtören, *disturb*,	zerſtören, *destroy*.

B.—SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

227. **Ab**, a particle originally meaning *off* (ἀπό), and used as an adverb to mean *down*, as in auf und ab, *up and down*; bergab, *downhill*; herab, hinab. In older German it was much used as a preposition, and many of its compounds will be best understood by imagining a case (often ſich) after it. It answers most nearly to the Latin *de*; consequently many of the equivalents of its compounds begin with *de*. Its commonest meaning is *off*; thence it comes to be used of *leaving off*, completion, and of *taking off*, as a copy. The meaning *down* is more frequently associated with herab, hinab.

* Verlegen is sometimes like verſehen used in the meaning of *provide*; hence it is used of persons who provide paper, types, &c., for a book to be printed.

(α) *down, down from, off,* both literally and metaphorically, as from—

legen, *lay,*	ablegen, *put off* (clothes, armour, &c.), *deposit.*
bitten, *beg,*	abbitten, *beg off, apologise for.*
danken, *thank,*	abdanken, *dismiss* (properly with thanks).
ſagen, *say,*	abſagen, *cry off, renounce, refuse.*
nehmen, *take,*	abnehmen (intr.), *decrease.*
	abnehmen (tr.), *take off* (einen Hut).

and so to strengthen verbs where the idea of decrease already exists—

kürzen, *shorten,*	abkürzen, *shorten.*

similarly from—

mager, *lean,*	abmagern, *emaciate.*

(β) In a few words, the idea of taking from another suggests that of getting for oneself, so that ab nearly equals er:—

preſſen, *press,*	abpreſſen, *extort.*
hören, *hear,*	abhören, *get by hearing, overhear.*
hexen, *bewitch,*	abhexen, *get by witchcraft.*

(γ) With *off* are associated the ideas of *completion, finishing off,* of *ceasing, leaving off,* and even of *undoing* (with words of *tying,* &c.), as from—

nutzen, *use,*	abnutzen, *use up.*
fertigen, *get ready,*	abfertigen, *finish off* (also *despatch*).
regnen, *rain,*	abregnen, (rare), *leave off raining.*
blühen, *bloom,*	abblühen, *cease blooming.*
flechten, *twist,*	abflechten, *untwist.*

(δ) Ab is also used of doing something after a copy. Perhaps the idea is like our *off* when we speak of *taking off* an impression. Thus from—

ſchreiben, *write,*	abſchreiben, *copy, transcribe.*
reiten, *ride,*	abreiten, *train* (a horse).
richten, *direct,*	abrichten, *train, drill* (after a given standard).
meſſen, *measure,*	abmeſſen, *proportion, measure, according to a*
reden, *speak,*	abreden, *make an appointment.** [*standard*

* Under this head falls probably abſehen, *measure with the eye,* whence Abſicht, *aim, intention;* unabſehbar, *not measurable by the eye.* Abſehen has also the sense of *looking off,* or *away,* as in abgeſehen von, *leaving out of consideration.* Ab forms some compounds direct from nouns, as abkanzeln, *lecture from the pulpit, upbraid.*

228. **An** probably represents two different prefixes, (1) the preposition meaning *on, on to, to;* and (2) a particle meaning *up,*‡ a prefix common to many languages, now represented by an in some verbs with the idea of beginning. Not improbably they are identical.

(1.) *on, on to, to* or *at*, much as in English, as from :—

rücken, *move,*	anrücken, *move on, advance.*
greifen, *grasp,*	angreifen, (*grasp at*), *attack.*
binden, *tie,*	anbinden, *tie on, attach.*
rechnen, *reckon,*	anrechnen, *reckon to, impute to.*
beten, *pray,*	anbeten, *pray to, adore, worship.*
gehen, *go,*	angehen, *go to, affect.*

Sometimes it is necessary to supply ſich or some other words to see how the verb gets its meaning : —

ziehen, *draw,*	anziehen, *attract* (draw to oneself).
	put on (clothes on oneself).
geben, *give, put,*	angeben, *put forward* (ans Licht).*

(2.) The meaning *up* appears in verbs denoting *commencement*, as from :—

bahnen, *make a path,*	anbahnen, *begin to make a path.*
geben, *give,*	angeben,† *begin to deal* (cards).
ſtimmen, *tune,*	anſtimmen, *strike up a tune.*

229. **Auf** has in composition two meanings, (1) that connected with its use as a preposition *upon, on to*, and (2) that connected with its use as an adverb, *up*. In the latter sense it has something in common with ent and er; its most characteristic use is in reference *to storing up, reservation.* In general it corresponds very closely to the English *up*.

---

* Notice anſchlagen, and the noun Anſchlag. Their meanings are derived from two ideas, (1) putting a gun to the shoulder, whence the meaning *aim, purpose;* (2) nailing up a notice on wall, whence, perhaps, the idea of *estimate*, &c. ‡ Gewehr an! *advance arms!* bergan, *uphill.*

† Notice the two meanings of angeben, *put forward, begin to deal;* also den Ton angeben, *to set the fashion.*

(1.) *upon, on to;* as from :—

geben, *give*,	aufgeben, *set a task to* (Aufgabe).
drücken, *press*,	aufdrücken, *impress on.*

(2.) in connection with the meaning *up*,

(*α*) literally or in simple metaphors, as from :—

hängen, *hang*,	aufhängen, *hang up.*
bleiben, *stay*,	aufbleiben, *stay up* (at night).
fordern, *summon, demand*,	auffordern, *call up, challenge.*

especially of raising the voice :—

ſagen, *say*,	aufſagen, *repeat aloud.*
bieten, *bid*,	aufbieten, *proclaim, publish banns.*

(*β*) *opening* and *beginning* :—

machen, *make*,	aufmachen, *open.*
blühen, *bloom*,	aufblühen, *come into flower.*
ſchließen, *close, lock*,	aufſchließen, *open, unlock.*

(*γ*) *completely* (with a notion of destruction or reversal) :—

freſſen, *eat*,	auffreſſen, *eat up.*
geben, *give*,	aufgeben, *give up.*
gehen, *go*,	aufgehen, *disappear, to be lost.*
heben, *take up*,	aufheben, *abolish* (take up and remove).
kündigen, *make known*,	aufkündigen, *give notice to quit.*
ſagen, *say*,	aufſagen, *renounce* (as well as *recite*).
decken, *cover*,	aufdecken, *uncover.*
binden, *bind*,	aufbinden, *unbind* (as well as *bind up* or *on*).

(*δ*) *again* :—

backen, *bake*,	aufbacken, *rebake.*

(*ε*) *storing up* :—

bewahren, *keep*,	aufbewahren, *reserve.*
heben, *take up*,	aufheben, *store up, reserve* (as well as *abolish*).

230. **Aus**, *out, out of;* in all its English senses :—

(*α*) of motion or simple metaphors connected with it :—

gehen, *go*,	ausgehen, *go out.*
blaſen, *blow*,	ausblaſen, *blow* (an egg); *blow out* (*extinguish*).
drücken, *press*,	ausdrücken, *express.*

(β) *out of*, implying *selection* :—

nehmen, *take*,	ausnehmen, *except*.
ſuchen, *seek*,	ausſuchen, *seek out, select*.
wählen, *choose*,	auswählen, *choose* (among a number)

(γ) *to the end* :—

brennen, *burn*,	ausbrennen, *burn out*.
halten, *hold*,	aushalten, *hold out*.
arbeiten, *work*,	ausarbeiten, *elaborate*.

231. **Bei,** a preposition meaning *at the side of*. Hence its compounds may give an idea either of (α) coming to the side of, or (β) of putting aside.

(α) coming to the side of, *i.e.*, *addition*, *help*, or *rivalry* :—

ſpannen, *put on horses*,	beiſpannen, *put on extra horses*.
bringen, *bring*,	beibringen, *adduce* (evidence); *administer* (medicine); *impart* (knowledge).
ſtehen, *stand*,	beiſtehen, *stand by, assist*.
treten, *step*,	beitreten, *join* (a society, &c.); *support* (an opinion).
kommen, *come*,	beikommen, *come up to, rival*.

(β) *aside* :—

legen, *lay*,	beilegen, *put aside* (as done with), *put by, reserve, settle* (a quarrel).

See also instances of the cognate be used in this sense.

232. **Dar,** an adverb meaning *there*, used in composition to mean *in the presence of a person, before his eyes*, as from :—

ſtellen, *place*,	darſtellen, *exhibit*.
reichen, *reach, hand*,	darreichen, *deliver up*.

233. **Ein,** *in*, exactly corresponds to the English *in* put after verbs. It has in some words a peculiar meaning of *coming to an end*.

(α) answering to the English *in*, as from :—

gehen, *go*,	eingehen, *go in, enter*.
atmen, *breathe*,	einatmen, *inspire, inhale*.
prügeln, *flog*,	einprügeln, *drive in by flogging*.
dachen, *roof*,	eindachen, *roof in*.

and of *gathering in*:—

betteln, *beg*,	einbetteln, *collect by begging*.
ernten, *harvest*,	einernten, *get in, harvest*.
(β) *coming to an end*:—	
fallen, *fall*,	einfallen, *fall in* (in ruins).
gehen, *go*,	eingehen, *come to nought, shrivel up, be discontinued* (of a periodical).
ſtellen, *put*,	einſtellen, *put an end to, discontinue*.

Obs. Drein (darein) in many compound verbs denotes participation in what is going on, da being used vaguely. Thus dreinſchlagen means *to interfere by a blow*. So dreinſchauen, dreinblicken.

Die Ritter ſchauten muthig drein,
Und in den Schoß die Schönen. (Goe.)

where the contrast is between drein and in den Schoß.*

234. **Empor**, properly, *into the height*, is used (chiefly in poetry) to mean *up*:—

kommen, *come*,	emporkommen, *rise in the world*.†
ſtreben, *strive*,	emporſtreben, *soar aloft*.

235. **Fort**, an adverb meaning *forward, onwards*, and then by an easy transition *away*, as from :—

fahren, *go, fare*,	fortfahren, *continue*.
jagen, *hunt, chase*,	fortjagen, (1) *go on hunting*; (2) *drive away, dismiss*.
kommen, *come*,	fortkommen, (1) *get on*; (2) *get away*.

236. **Her** and **Hin** mean respectively *hither* and *thither*, that is, towards the speaker or person thought of and away from him. The distinction comes out especially in the numerous compound prefixes of which hin and her form part. Thus a person at the top of a staircase would say to a person beside him: gehen Sie hinab! *go down!* (*i.e.*, from the speaker), while to a person at the bottom he would say: kommen Sie herauf, *come up!* (*i.e.*, to the speaker). Again a person inside a room says herein! *come in!* in answer to a knock at the door.

---

* *See* "Goethe's Gedichte" (Sonnenschein and Pogatscher), p. 63.

† Emporkömmling, *upstart*.

The following passage from Goethe, describing an incident in a tour along the Rhine, is a good illustration :—

Wir treten ſogleich heraus, nach den grauen Rheinſchluchten hinabzublicken; ein friſcher Wind blies von dort her uns ins Angeſicht, günſtig den Herüber- wie den Hinüberfahrenden.

Something must depend on the point of view the writer chooses to adopt; thus in the above passage Goethe might have said hinaus, if he had thought rather of indoors as his natural place. An editor, again, is called Herausgeber—the point of view taken being that of the public.

Her has some idiomatic meanings (α) origin, (β) repetition of set forms, (γ) back to its primitive condition.

(α) it refers to the *origin* of something now existing or present, as from :—

kommen, *come*,	herkommen, *originate, be descended*.
rühren, *move*,	herrühren, *originate*.

Herbringen, herkommen, are especially used of things handed down by tradition.

(β) it is used of repeating a set form of words, as :—

ſagen, *say*,	herſagen, *repeat* (a lesson, &c.).
liſpeln, *lisp*,	herliſpeln, *repeat lisping*.

Hergehen often means simply to *go on, come to pass*.

(γ) *back* to its primitive condition :—

ſtellen, *place*,	herſtellen, *restore*.

Hin frequently means *on, away*, and so is used both of continuance, and of *bringing to an end*, as from :—

geben, *give*,	hingeben, *give up, resign*.*
reichen, *reach*,	hinreichen, *reach on to the end, suffice*.
halten, *hold*,	hinhalten, *keep in suspense*.
träumen, *dream*,	hinträumen, *dream away* (one's life, &c.).
brüten, *brood*,	hinbrüten, *go on brooding*.

Notice especially its use with verbs denoting destruction : hinrichten, *execute;* hinſchlachten, hinmetzeln, *massacre*.

* Also dahingeben (das Leben fürs Vaterland).

237. **Los** is properly an adjective, meaning *loose, separated*, and is accordingly used both as a prefix to denote separation, and as a suffix equivalent to the English *less*. Thus from :—

laſſen, *let, leave*,	loslaſſen, *set free.*
brennen, *burn*,	losbrennen, *let off* (a gun).
gehen, *go*,	losgehen, (1) *go off* (as a gun); (2) (auf) *fly at a person.**

238. **Mit**, *with, at the same time*, as from :—

nehmen, *take*,	mitnehmen, *take with one.*
ſprechen, *speak*,	mitſprechen, *join in a conversation.*
arbeiten, *work*,	mitarbeiten, *co-operate.*

239. **Nach**, *after*, has all the meanings of the English word. Thus are formed from:—

machen, *make*,	nachmachen, *imitate.*
beten, *pray*,	nachbeten, *repeat a prayer after.*
eilen, *hurry*,	nacheilen, *hurry after, try and catch.*
eifern, *strive*,	nacheifern, *strive after, emulate.*
ſtehen, *stand*,	nachſtehen, *be inferior to.*
ſehen, *look*,	nachſehen, (1) *look after, examine;* (2) *overlook, forgive.*

240. **Nieder**, *down*, English *nether*.

laſſen, *let*,	ſich niederlaſſen, *settle* (in a country).
kommen, *come*,	niederkommen, *be brought to bed, confined.*

241. **Ob**, equivalent to über, *over* or *on*, as from:—

walten, *rule*,	obwalten, *rule over, prevail.*
liegen, *lie*,	obliegen, (1) *devote oneself to;* (2) *be incumbent on.*†

---

* Cf. in Bret Harte, "He *went for* that heathen Chinee."

† Obliegen was formerly used as the converse of unterliegen, *succumb*, and meant, *to get the upper hand.*

242. **Vor,** *before, forward,* as from:—

leſen, *read,*	vorleſen, *read before people, lecture.*
fechten, *fight,*	vorfechten, (1) *fight as a champion;* (2) *show how to fight* (as a fencing-master).
geben, *put,*	vorgeben, *put forward* (as an excuse).
ziehen, *draw, march,*	vorziehen, (1) *prefer;* (2) *advance.*
beugen, *bend,*	vorbeugen, *bend before, prevent.*

242A. **Weg,** *away,* as from :—

werfen, *throw;*	wegwerfen, *throw away.*

243. **Wieder,** *again,* is separable, except in wiederholen, *repeat,* in which wieder is unaccented.

kommen, *come,*	wiederkommen, *come again.*
holen, *fetch,*	wiederholen, (1) *fetch again,* (2) *repeat.*

244. **Zu.**—The meanings of zu in composition come either from its ordinary form as a preposition; or from its use as an adverb, in phrases like die Thür iſt zu, *the door is shut.* (Cf. English, *put the door to.*)

(*a*) *to, towards, addition,* as from :—

fließen, *flow,*	zufließen, *flow towards.*
thun, *do, put,*	zuthun, *add.*
ſchauen, *look,*	zuſchauen, *look at, contemplate.*
ſprechen, *speak,*	zuſprechen,* (1) *adjudge;* (2) Mut, *give by speaking.*
ſagen, *say,*	zuſagen, *promise.*
ſtimmen, *vote,*	zuſtimmen, *agree to, add one's vote.*

(*b*) *closing* :—

bauen, *build,*	zubauen, *build up, close by building.*
machen, *make,*	zumachen, *close.*

Notice zureiten (ein Pferd), *to train, break.*

245. COMPOUND PREFIXES. — The meaning of the compound separable prefixes like hervor, vorbei, entgegen, and of simple adverbs like weg, zurück, &c., is easily found in dictionaries, and requires no discussion.

* Also *call at a house* (vorſprechen commoner), whence Zuſpruch, customers.

C.—DOUBTFUL PREFIXES.

246. GENERAL PRINCIPLES.—The prefixes durch, über, unter, um, are separable in some verbs, inseparable in others. The general principle which regulates their use is that when the preposition and the verb coalesce into one meaning, when they constitute, so to speak, a *chemical compound*, the prefix is inseparable. If, on the other hand, each retains its full meaning, if, to continue the metaphor, they form only a *mechanical mixture*, the prefix is in reality an adverb and therefore separable. In this case the prefix is accented, in the former unaccented. The following rules are useful :—

247. TRANSITIVE COMPOUNDS OF INTRANSITIVES.—The transitive compounds of an intransitive verb with the above prefixes are inseparable; its intransitive compounds separable.

Thus durchgehen (insep.) means (1) *to traverse;* (2) *to penetrate*, with accusative; (3) *to examine, peruse*; durchgehen (sep.) means (1) *to come through* (intrans.) of smoke, wind, &c.; (2) *to run away*; (3) *to pass*, i. e. *to become law*, of measures, bills.

Again übergehen (sep.) means (1) *to run over* (of liquids, &c.); (2) *to cross* (intrans.), from one point to another; (3) *to pass over* (of a storm, &c.). But übergehen (insep.) means (1) *to go about* (*e.g.*, a field); (2) *to examine;* (3) *to cross* (trans., *e.g.*, a boundary), or *to transgress* (trans.); (4) *to omit.*

Überbieten, meaning *to bid higher*, is separable; meaning *to outbid* any one, inseparable.

This principle is especially applicable to verbs like ſetzen, greifen, brechen, which are sometimes used transitively, sometimes intransitively. The transitive compounds formed from their intransitive meanings are inseparable, the intransitive compounds separable.

248. CHANGE OF ACCUSATIVE. — It often happens that a transitive verb compounded with one of the prepositions named above governs a different accusative to that which it governs alone (*see* compounds of be, § 219).

Thus, to take an example which has a close parallel in Latin, umgeben, *to surround*, is used with an accusative of the thing enclosed, as er umgab die Stadt mit einem Graben, while the simple verb geben, *give* or *put*, would, if used in the same connection, take *the ditch*, not *the town* as its accusative; therefore umgeben, *to surround*, is inseparable. Again compare:—

Ich habe meinen Namen untergeschrieben,
I wrote my name at the bottom (of a letter, &c.).

Ich habe den Brief unterschrieben,
I signed the letter (with my name).

The thing written is the name; with the separable verb the name is still the accusative; with the inseparable verb a different object, the document on which the name is written, becomes the accusative.

249. OTHER COMPOUNDS OF TRANSITIVE VERBS.—The above rules apply to all compounds of intransitive verbs with durch, &c., and to a certain number of compounds of transitive verbs. Many other compounds of transitive verbs may be discriminated by remembering that durch, &c., when strictly and obviously used as adverbs, are separable, as in durchpeitschen, *flog soundly*; umwerfen, *turn upside down*; unterbringen, *bring under shelter*. There are, however, a certain number of cases in which usage alone can decide.

Obs. These prefixes, when separated from the verb, are frequently preceded by hin, her, sometimes by dar; as, er zog in die Königsstraße hinüber, *he moved into King Street*: wir gingen rings um die Stadt herum, *we went all round the town*.

250. **Durch**, *through*. It is separable in the meanings—(1) *thoroughly, to the end*; (2) *wildly, beyond control*; (3) *through*, in the sense of *slipping through, failure*. The following examples will illustrate both the meaning of durch, and the principles given above:—

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
durchbeten,	*go through* (a set of prayers).	*spend in prayer* (die Nacht).
durchbrechen,	*make a way for oneself* (intr. an's Licht, &c.).	*penetrate* (eine Mauer, die Reihen der Feinde).

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
durchbringen,	(1) *carry through*, (2) *spend*, *waste* (time, &c.).	
durchdringen,	(1) *get through* (intr.), (2) (mit Etwas) *succeed*, *gain one's end*,	(1) *penetrate*. (2) *fill* (with pity, &c.).
durchduften,		*fill with fragrance*.
durchfahren,	(1) *drive through* (intr.), (2) *take the bit between one's teeth*.	*traverse* (in a carriage, boat, &c.).
durchfallen,	(1) *drop through* (intr.). (2) *fail* (in an election, examination, &c.).	
durchgehen,	(1) *get through* (intr.) (2) *run away*, (3) *pass*, *become current*. (4) die Sohlen (*walk holes in one's shoes*).	(1) *penetrate*. (2) *peruse*, *examine*.
durchleuchten,	*peep through* (of light) (intr.).	*illuminate*.

251. **über** answers to the English *over* in all its senses. It is separable when it means (1) *to the other side* (of a river, &c., understood); (2) *over*, of *overflowing*; (3) *over*, with the notion of *upsetting*, *overturning*. It is inseparable when it means (4) *covering*, *overlaying*; (5) *excess*. There are many more inseparable compounds of über than separable ones, hinüber or herüber being more freely used.

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
überbinden,	*tie on* (a ribbon, bandage, &c.),	*bandage* (a wound).
überbieten,	*bid highest*,	*outbid*.
überblechen,		*cover with tin*; "*tin-plate*."
überbringen,	(1) *take to the other side*, (2) *get on* (a lid on a box, &c.)	*deliver* (a message, letter).
übereilen,		(1) *hurry on too fast* (tr.). (2) *overtake*.

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
überfahren,	(1) *cross by a ferry* (intr.), (2) *put across by a ferry.*	(1) *cross by a ferry* (tr.), (2) *strew, cover,* (3) *drive over* (tr.).
überführen,	*take across* (*e.g.* über die Grenze),	*convict* (prop. *bring over* to confession).
übergehen,	(1) *overflow* (intr.), (2) *pass over* (intr.), *desert* (to the enemy).	(1) *traverse.* (2) *cross* (tr.) (3) *overlook, omit.*
überlegen,	*lay on the top,*	(1) *overload.* (2) *ponder, consider.*
überſetzen,	(1) *set on the top,* (2) *take across* (a river), (3) *leap to the other side* (über einen Graben).	(1) *overcharge.* (2) *translate.*
überziehen,	*move* (from one house to another),	*cover* (with paper, cloth, &c.).

252. **Um** is a preposition meaning *round.* In composition with verbs it is used (1) of *surrounding, encircling,* and in this sense forms inseparable transitive verbs; (2) of *going by a roundabout way;* (3) of *change, renewal;* (4) in the verbs umbringen=um's Leben bringen, *to kill;* umkommen (um's Leben, &c.), *to lose* one's life. In all these cases, except (1), it is separable.

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
umbinden,	(1) *put on* (a ribbon round the neck), (2) *rebind* (a book).	*bind up* (a cut finger, &c.)
umbringen,	*kill.*	
umdonnern,		*thunder round* (tr.).
umgeben,	(1) *put on* (einem einen Mantel), (2) *make fresh deal* (of cards).	*encircle, surround.*
umgehen,	(1) *go about, have dealings* (in der Stadt, mit einem), (2) *make a détour,* (3) *go round and round,*	(1) *go round, traverse.* (2) *avoid by a détour.* (3) *evade.*

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
umſpannen,	*change horses,*	*encircle, encompass.*
umſchreiben	*rewrite.*	(1) *paraphrase.* (2) *circumscribe* (ein Dreieck mit einem Kreiſe).

253. **Unter** appears in composition to have two principal meanings* : (1) *below, underneath,* in which sense it forms many separable compounds, whence *from below,* as *sub* in *support,* &c. ; and (2) *interruption, breaking of continuity,* as the Latin *inter* in many cases, *interrumpo, intermitto,* &c. In one or two words it means *with each other,* like the French *entre.* The following are instances :

	SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
unterbauen,	*build underneath,*	*prop by building.*
unterbleiben,		*remain undone.*
unterbrechen,		*interrupt.*
untergehen,	(1) *sink* (as a ship), (2) *set* (as the sun), (3) perish.	
untergraben,	*dig in* (manure, &c.),	*undermine.*
unterhalten,	(einem ein Waſchbecken, &c.),	*keep up, maintain, entertain.*
unterkommen,	*find shelter, get a situation.*	
unterlaſſen,	*admit to shelter,*	*omit, leave undone.*
unterliegen,	*lie at the bottom,*	*succumb.*
unterreden (ſich),		*converse.*
unterſagen,		*forbid.*
unterſchreiben,	*write at the bottom* (one's name, &c.),	*sign* (a letter, &c.).

254. **Hinter,** which is generally inseparable, is separable in one meaning of hintergehen.

SEPARABLE.	INSEPARABLE.
hintergehen, *go last,*	*deceive.*

* Key's *Essays,* p. 36 *sq.* Roby's *Latin Grammar,* §§ 1, 999.

254A. PREFIXES TO NOUNS.—Many of the prefixes to verbs serve also to form compound nouns direct from other nouns, as well as verbal nouns answering to the compound verbs. There are also some prefixes used only to form nouns and adjectives. The examples given illustrate both classes. Where the compounds of a prefix are exclusively verbal nouns, it is not mentioned.

Ab. Besides words like Abfall, associated with a verb, we have a few like Abweg, *by-way;* Abgott, *false god;* Abgrund, *abyss, precipice;* abhold, *unpropitious;* in all of which the meaning of *deviation* is obvious.

Aber properly *again* (§ 212), and thence often implies inferiority, as Aberſaat, *second sowing;* Aberwitz, *unreality, absurdity;* Aberſinn, *stubbornness;* Aberglaube, *superstition.**

After, same as English *after*, generally in the sense of *inferior, pseudo-;* Afterheu, *aftermath;* Afterpapſt, *antipope;* Afterreden, *backbiting;* Afterkritik, *spurious criticism;* Afterkugel, *spheroid* (degenerate, spurious sphere).

An, mostly in nouns associated with verbs; but Anmuth, *grace* (originally *liking*, "*a mind to*"); Anhöhe, *rising ground*, &c.

Ant, original form of ent (§ 220), as in Antwort, *answer:* Antlitz, *countenance.*

Aus, *out*, as in Ausland, *foreign countries*, &c., and in many nouns connected with verbs.

Außen, außer, *outer, extra-*, as Außenwelt, *external world;* außerordentlich, *extraordinary.*

---

* It is thought that in some compounds of aber, the influence of the Dutch *over* may be traced, as in Aberacht, *proscriptio superior;* Aberglaube, *superstitio.* (*See* Kluge and Brandt.)

Bei, means *subsidiary*, as in Beiwagen, *extra carriage*; Beiname, *nick-name*; Beiſpiel, *an example* (properly *by-spell*, παραβολή); Beichte, *confession* (*bei* and *jëhan*, say), &c.; other nouns with prefix bei, as well as those with be, are associated with verbs.

Eben, *even*, *equal*, as in Ebenbild, *exact image*; ebenbürtig, *of equal birth*.

Erz from classical *archi-*, which becomes *arch* in English, as Erzbiſchof, *archbishop*.

Ge, *with*, equivalent to the Latin *con*, and by some writers considered identical with it, forms (1) neuter collectives, as Geläute, *ringing of bells*; Gewölk, *mass of clouds*; Gebirge, *chain of mountains*; (2) masculine nouns denoting a partner in some activity, Geſpiele, *playmate*; Gefährte, *travelling companion*; Gevatter, *godfather* (compère). In many verbal nouns the sense of ge is practically lost.

Gegen, *against*, *in the face of*, as Gegenwart, *the present*; Gegenbild, *antitype*; Gegenſatz, *antithesis*.

Her, hin, in the same sense as with verbs, Herkunft, *origin*; Hinreiſe, *outward journey*.

Hinter, *back*, as Hintergrund, *background*; Hinterliſt, *artifice* (behind one's back).

In and **ein**, *in*. There are many nouns associated with verbs with prefix ein. Add Eingeweide, *entrails*; einheimiſch, *native*; with in we have Inhalt, *contents*; Inſaß, *inhabitant*.

Mit, *with*, *fellow*, as in Mitbürger, *fellow-citizen*; Mitleid, *compassion*.

Miß, English *mis-*, as in Mißbrauch, *abuse*; Miſſethat, *misdeed*.

Nach, *after*, *later*, as in Nachwelt, *posterity*; Nachteil, *disadvantage*.

Neben, much the same as mit, as Nebenmenſch, *fellow-creature;* but generally with an idea of *inferiority*, as Nebenbedeutung, *secondary meaning;* Nebenſache, *πάρεργον, matter of secondary importance;* Nebenſonne, *parhelion;* Nebenſatz, *subordinate sentence.*

Ob, Ober, *upper, higher*, as in Obdach, *shelter;* Oberhand, *upper hand, mastery;* Oberfläche, *surface.*

Un as a prefix to adjectives corresponds to our *un-, not;* as unendlich, *endless.* As a prefix to nouns it gives a bad sense, as Unkraut, *ill weeds;* Unmenſch, *monster.*

Unter, *under, lower;* Unterhaus, *Lower House, House of Commons;* Unterwelt, *nether world.*

Ur (another form of er) originally means *out*, and in composition has the same meaning, as in Urteil (our *ordeal*), *decision;* Urlaub, *permission.* It often means *original, primeval*, as Urwelt, *primeval world;* Urochs, *aurochs* (*bos primigenius*).

Vor, *before, first*, as in Vorname, *Christian name;* Vorfahr, *ancestor (forbear);* Vormund, *guardian* (one who speaks for).

Vorder, *fore*, as Vorderarm, *fore-arm;* Vorderindien, *India proper* (opposed to Hinterindien which means *Further India, i.e.*, Burmah, &c.)

SYNTAX.

Chapter I.—Preliminary Remarks.

255. SIMPLE SENTENCE.—A *simple sentence* contains a single statement, command, or question. We shall confine ourselves at present to those which contain statements.

The person, thing, or idea about which we are talking is called the *subject*. The statement made about it is called the *predicate*.

256. SUBJECT AND ATTRIBUTE. — The subject must be a noun, or something equivalent to a noun. It may be necessary to describe it more closely than can be done by a single noun. The words added to the noun for this purpose are adjectives, or of the nature of adjectives. They are often called *attributes*, or *epithets*.

257. FINITE VERB.—The essential part of the predicate is a finite verb, that is, any part of the verb but the infinitive and participle. This verb may be—

(*a*) intransitive, and in this case it can, without any additions, constitute the predicate; as—

Die Sonne ſcheint, *The sun shines.*

(*b*) It may be transitive, and it is then incomplete in itself, and leads us to look for some additional words. Thus in the sentence—

Der Schneider macht, *The tailor makes,*

we look for something to which the action of the transitive verb *makes* may be passed on; *e.g.*—

Der Schneider macht einen Rock, *The tailor makes a coat.*

The addition thus required is called the *object* of the verb. Some verbs, it will be seen hereafter, take more than one object.

(*c*) The verb may be the verb ſein, *to be*, which is commonly known as the *copula*. This, too, leads us to expect something further. Thus, if we say—

Mein Herz iſt, *My heart is*,

one expects some more words, and probably words more or less descriptive of *my heart*. For instance—

Mein Herz iſt ſchwer, *My heart is heavy*,

would be an intelligible sentence. Such an addition is called the *complement* (*i.e.*, that which completes, or makes up) of the predicate. Hence in this case—

predicate = copula + complement.

The verb ſein in German, and the verb *to be* in English, may be either accented or unaccented. It is to the unaccented verb that all that is said here applies. The accented verb, which means *to exist*, is a philosophical term with which we have nothing to do.

258. COPULATIVE VERBS. — There are several verbs which, like ſein, lead the reader to look for some words descriptive of the subject, and can scarcely be said to make complete sense without such words. They are: werden, *to become*; ſcheinen, *to seem*; heißen, *to be called*; gelten, *to be accounted*; and passive verbs of *calling*, *naming*, *making*. Such verbs are called *copulative verbs*.

259. EXTENSION OF PREDICATE, &c.—Whichever form the predicate assumes, it admits of being made more definite by the addition of adverbs, or phrases equivalent to adverbs. Thus we may say :—

Die Sonne ſcheint hell.
Der Schneider macht einen Rock in ſeinem Laden.
Mein Herz iſt heute ſchwer.

In each case the predicate is made more definite by mentioning some additional circumstance. This is done by adverbial additions, which in the examples given are of manner, place, and time respectively.

The object may, like the subject, be accompanied by epithets, and so may the complement of the predicate, if a noun.

260. IMPERATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.—The construction of *imperative* and *interrogative* sentences, that is, of those which contain a simple command, or a simple question, is exactly the same as that of the declarative sentences just discussed. In the one the imperative mood is substituted for the indicative, in the other the order is changed.

261. COMPLEX SENTENCES. — The place of the subject or the object in a simple sentence, or that of any of the epithets or adverbs employed in it, may be supplied by another sentence. The resulting combination is called a complex sentence. The construction of such sentences will be the subject of the later chapters of the book.

Chapter II.—Concord of Verb and Subject.

262. FIRST CONCORD. — Verbs in the indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and conditional moods agree with their nominative cases or subjects in number and person:—

Du haſt der Götter Gunſt erfahren. (Sch.)
Ich bin der Geiſt, der ſtets verneint. (Goe.)

263. TWO OR MORE NOUNS.—If the subject consists of two or more singular nouns or pronouns connected by und, *and*, expressed or implied, the verb generally stands in the plural. If they are connected by weder...noch, *neither... nor*, it is often made plural:—

Heſper und Aurora zogen
Wechſelnd auf am Himmelsbogen. (Sch.)

Weder Auge noch Geiſt ſind hinreichend, ſie zu faſſen. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. At the same time there is a tendency for the verb to agree with the nearest nominative, especially when the order is inverted.

Ueber die unholde Sparſamkeit des Königs nahm in ihren Gemächern Klage, Groll und Spott kein Ende. (Freytag.)

Obs. 2. When two or more substantives denoting things or abstract ideas are closely connected in our thoughts, so as to form a single notion, the verb is often put in the singular. Such combinations are — Land und Meer, Haus und Hof, Wind und Wetter, Leben und Weben, Dichten und Trachten, Thun und Schaffen. This is especially the case in poetry:—

Ihr Quellen alles Lebens,
An denen Himmel und Erde hängt. (Goe.)

Verrat und Argwohn lauſcht in allen Ecken. (Sch.)

Da thut ſich Herz und Keller los. (Goe.)

The following are both correct:—

Ein Thaler und vier Groſchen ſind genug.
Ein Thaler und vier Groſchen iſt genug.

Obs. 3. With weder . . . noch, the usage is not fixed. Thus we can say—

Weder der Eine noch der Andere iſt ein Betrüger or ſind Betrüger.

Obs. 4. Even nouns in the singular connected by oder sometimes take a plural verb, as—

Wolf oder Bär kommen ſelten davon, wenn ein Lappe ſie aufs Blatt hält.

Obs. 5. The summing up of several long nominatives by a phrase like das alles is common.

Seine fortgeſetzte Aufmerkſamkeit, ohne daß er zudringlich geweſen wäre; ſein treuer Beiſtand bei verſchiedenen unangenehmen Zufällen; ſein gegen ihre Eltern zwar ausgeſprochenes, doch ruhiges und nur hoffnungsvolles Werben, da ſie freilich noch jung war: das alles nahm ſie für ihn ein. (Auerbach.)

264. DIFFERENT PERSONS.—If the nominatives be of different persons, the verb agrees in person with the worthier; that is, *I* or *we and* . . . is treated as if it were *we*; *thou* or *ye and* . . . as if it were *ye*. But the construction is generally avoided in modern German.

Ich und mein Haus wollen dem Herrn dienen. (Luth. Bib.)

Ihr ſelbſt und euer Nächſter gewinnt. (Less.)

Obs. 1. Often, as in French, the nominatives of different persons are summed up by a personal pronoun:—

Der da und ich, wir ſind aus Eger. (Sch.)

Obs. 2. In the case of pronouns connected by oder, the verb may be put in the plural, or it may agree with the nearest, as—

Ich weiß nicht, was du oder ich für Begriffe von Freiheit haben. (Sch.)

Ich weiß nicht, ob du oder er es gethan hat.

It would be better to write—ob du es gethan haſt oder er. Similarly it is better to render *you or I* by Einer von uns beiden.

265. COLLECTIVE NOUNS AND NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.—A *collective noun* speaks of many individuals acting as a single unit; it is, in many cases, one of the simplest

forms of personification. Collective nouns require the verb in the singular:—

Und unterwegs begegnet ihm ein Schwarm
Von Hornissen. (Sch.)

A *noun of multitude* speaks of many individuals, without thus collecting them into a single unit. Nouns of multitude *may* take a plural verb. The usage is limited to nouns like Menge, Dutzend, Paar, followed by a plural noun to which they stand almost in the relation of numeral adjectives:—

Ein paar Häuser sind abgebrannt. (Goe.)

Es befanden sich dort eine Menge französischer Überläufer. (Archenholz.)

266. AGREEMENT WITH LOGICAL SUBJECT.—It is very usual in German, especially in German poetry, to begin a sentence with es, which is almost pleonastic. The real subject is then put after the verb, and the verb agrees with it:—

Es stürzten die herrlichen Säulen. (Sch.)

Es sind nicht alle frei, die ihrer Ketten spotten. (Less.)

Obs. 1. Remember that *it is I, it is you,* are in German ich bin es, du bist es.

Obs. 2. Notice the contrast with the French impersonal usage:

Rarement il arrive des révolutions chez les peuples heureux.

267. Sein AGREEING WITH COMPLEMENT.—In English the words *these, those* often stand as the nominative to *are*, which is then followed by a plural noun. In German the *neuter singular* es, das, dieses or dies is used in such cases, but the verb agrees with the noun following:—

Das sind meine Richter. (Sch.)

Those (persons pointed to or named before) *are my judges.*

Obs. In this case the French *ce sont*, which is generally used before a plural noun, is in point.

268. IMPERSONAL USE OF VERBS. — The impersonal use of ordinary verbs, limited in English almost entirely to verbs connected with the weather, and to a few like *it grieves me, it seems*, &c., is very common in German, especially with passive and reflexive verbs. Es is often omitted.

Lebhaft träumt ſich's unter dieſem Baum. (Sch.)
Und ſieh, aus dem finſter flutenden Schoß
Da hebet ſich's ſchwanenweiß. (Sch.)
In dieſem Coupé wird nicht geraucht.

So es klopft, *some one is knocking, there is a knock at the door.*

269. TITLES WITH PLURAL VERBS. Some singular titles, such as Majeſtät, Durchlaucht, Excellenz, &c., take the verb in the plural. This is really the origin of the courteous use of Sie in addressing a single person:—

Eure königliche Hoheit
Verlaſſen es nicht heiterer. (Sch.)

Von der Reſidenz habe ich nichts weiter gewußt, als daß Seine Majeſtät der König dort wohnen. (Kotzebue.)

So do more ordinary titles of civility, as Herr Doktor, gnädige Frau, when used by servants to masters, &c.

Herr Doktor wurden dort catechiſirt. (Goe.)

270. ELLIPSIS OF SUBJECT. — When the subject is a personal pronoun, especially of the second person, it is not unfrequently omitted in popular conversation ; Goethe is very fond of this idiom.

Bin weder Fräulein, weder ſchön. (Goe.)
Mußt mir meine Erde doch laſſen ſtehn. (Goe.)

It should be remembered that in German, as in other languages, the personal suffixes are really shortened personal pronouns.

Chapter III.—Apposition.—The Appositive Complement.

271. APPOSITION — AGREEMENT IN CASE.— When one noun is added to another noun, or to a pronoun, in order to explain or qualify it, the second noun is said to be in apposition to the first, and is put in the same case :—

Zu Dionys, dem Tyrannen, ſchlich Möros. (Sch.)
Ihr kennet ihn, den Schöpfer kühner Heere. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. If the words in apposition be put in a parenthesis, the nominative may be used, though the chief word is in an oblique case.

Die Kühnheit dieſes Denkers zeigt ſich in ſeiner Mondenlehre (eine der merkwürdigſten Hypotheſen). (Heine.)

Obs. 2. With proper names the tendency is to inflect as little as possible, as Graf Heinrichs Tochter: die Gemahlin des Herzogs Albrecht; die Geſchichte des Königreichs Baiern: die Zeit Heinrich (or Heinrichs) des Voglers, Karl (or Karls) des Fünften.

Obs. 3. Usage is in favour of in einem Augenblicke, wie der gegenwärtige (supplying iſt), rather than wie dem gegenwärtigen.

272. AGREEMENT OF GENDER. — If the second noun has different forms for the masculine and feminine, it agrees in gender with the noun to which it is in apposition, provided a person is referred to. In other cases the rule is not as strict as in French :—

Was Venus band, die Bringerin des Glücks,
Kann Mars, der Stern des Unglücks, bald zerreißen. (Sch.)

273. NAMES OF TOWNS, &c. — The names of towns, islands, countries, &c., and of months, stand in apposition to the words *town*, *island*, &c., and are not, as in English, connected with them by prepositions :—

Im Monat Mai.
Den Flecken Stanz erbauten sie. (Sch.)

274. NOUN IN APPOSITION TO SENTENCE.— A noun in apposition to a sentence is put in the nominative :—

Die Blüte des alten Offiziercorps lag auf den Schlachtfeldern; während der sieben Jahre waren—ein beispielloser Fall in der Kriegsgeschichte — sämtliche namhafte Generale bis auf spärliche Ausnahmen geblieben oder kampfunfähig geworden. (v. Treitschke.)

275. COMPLEMENT AFTER COPULATIVE VERBS. —As the complement after the verb sein and other copulative verbs refers to the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the same case and is called an *appositive complement* :—

Der Knecht wär' selber ein Ritter gern. (Uhland.)

Du, Kindlein, wirst ein Prophet des Höchsten heißen. (Luth. Bib.)

So hörten diese Rechte auf, ein persönlicher Vorzug zu sein; sie wurden ein erbliches Recht der Familien. (Freytag.)

Die Sünde,
Die aller Sünde größte Sünd' uns gilt. (Less.)

Aber dennoch dünkt es mich ein weit unverzeihlicherer Fehler. (Less.)

Er blieb der höfische Frauenritter bis zu seinem Ende. (Freytag.)

276. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS AFTER COPULATIVE VERBS. — With werden and passive verbs of *making*, zu and a dative (generally with the *definite* article) are generally preferred to the nominative; with gelten and passive verbs of *deeming*, für :—

L'Etrées wurde für den besten französischen Feldherrn gehalten. (Archenholz.)

Wir können gelten für ein ganzes Volk. (Sch.)

Da wurde Leiden oft Genuß,
Und selbst das traurigste Gefühl zur Harmonie. (Sch.)

Wie der Bauer zum Ritter werden wollte, so der Ritter zum Adeligen. (Freytag.)

277. VERBS OF NAMING, MAKING.—The second accusative with the verbs *to make*, *to name*, &c., is also called the appositive complement.

These verbs may, of course, with their objects, form complete predicates. Thus, *he made a watch*, *he named his son*, are both complete sentences, the word *make* meaning *to form*, the word *name*, *to give a name to*. Both verbs admit, however, a slightly different meaning, which leads us to look for some additional word or words before we have a complete idea. Hence incomplete sentences, as—

He named his son—
He made the captain—

which we may complete by adding a noun, an adjective, or a more complicated expression. Thus :—

He named his son John,
He made the captain angry.

The words *John*, *angry* are called, like the additional words required by the copulative verbs, *appositive complements*. They are in *apposition* to the object, and *complete* the predicate.

278. CONSTRUCTION AFTER SUCH VERBS.—The appositive complement after such verbs, those, namely, of *naming, deeming*, &c., is, like the object, in the accusative :—

Den nannt' einmal das Volk den Weisen. (Less.)
So glaube jeder seinen Ring den echten. (Less.)
Einen effeminirten Kerl schalt er ihn.* (Freytag.)

* Compare in Greek τυφλόν μ' ὠνείδισας. Soph. O. T. 412.

Obs. 1. halten für is the commonest rendering of the English *to consider* with a double accusative or with an accusative followed by an adjective. Similarly erklären is used with für:—

Er will kluge Leute für Narren halten.
Der Arzt erklärte ihn für tot.

Compare—

Reineke lag für tot im Weg. (Goe.)

Obs. 2. machen zu (generally with the definite article) represents the English *make* with double accusative; when an adjective is the complement, no preposition is used:—

Das heißt den Bock zum Gärtner machen. (Proverb.)
Mache zum Herrscher sich der, der seinen Vorteil versteht. (Goe.)
Mache nicht schlimmer das Übel. (Goe.)

279. Als INSERTED.—The conjunction wie or als is often inserted before a word in apposition or the appositive complement. It implies, of course, an ellipsis of several words.

Er wird als ein Wahnsinniger angesehen (Goe.)
Ihr habt mich stets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet. (Sch.)

280. EXCEPTIONS TO RULES OF APPOSITION.—There are two cases in which these rules are not observed:—

(1.) Verbs like sich zeigen are often used without any special stress on the sich, and are then treated as copulative verbs, and the nouns after als put in the nominative in apposition to the subject.

Du hast dich als einen gründlichen Kenner angekündigt: wirst du dich auch als ein solcher (or einen solchen) bewähren?

Indem er sich nur als ein treuer Bruder gegen sie bewies. (Goe.) where einen treuen Bruder might also have been written.

(2.) When the form of the sentence suggests a clause in which the word in apposition would be the subject, it is put in the nominative.

Der Rektor sprach über das Wirken Sybels als akademischer Lehrer (not Lehrers).

But—

Das Mißtrauen vor dem Kaiser als einem leidenschaftlichen Soldaten ist allgemeiner Verehrung für ihn als einem Menschenfreund gewichen.

Chapter IV.—The Articles.—Different Classes of Nouns.

281. PROPER AND COMMON NOUNS. — Nouns are either *proper* or *common*. *Proper* nouns are those which are appropriated to a single known individual, or several known individuals; *common* nouns are those which are applicable to an indefinite number.

A proper noun, therefore, does no more than could be done by pointing with the finger; it *denotes* one or more individuals. The work of a common noun on the other hand could not be so done, because the number of individuals which it may *denote* is inexhaustible. It makes up for this, however, by bringing to our mind something about all the individuals it describes; in other words, it *connotes* certain qualities. If I am told that a certain thing unknown is a *horse*, I at once have a number of its qualities present to my mind; if I am told that it is called Nidjni-Novogorod or Abracadabra, I must see it or hear about it further, even though it be the only thing in the world with that name, before I know any of its qualities. But the name *Abracadabra* would distinguish the thing in question from all others; the name *horse* would not.

282. ABSTRACT AND CONCRETE.—Common nouns are divided into two classes, *abstract* and *concrete* nouns.

A *concrete* noun is the name of something we can perceive by our senses. To each such name we are in the habit of adding some epithets, such as round, swift, white, good, to denote its qualities. And each of the epithets is common to many concrete nouns. We sometimes wish to speak of the qualities taken out and contemplated apart from (abstracted from) the things to which they belong; the nouns we use for that purpose—roundness, swiftness, &c., are called *abstract* nouns.

283. DEFINITE ARTICLE WITH ABSTRACT NOUNS, &c.—A definite article is often used with German nouns in cases where no article is required in English.

1. Abstract nouns, as names of sciences, &c., used in a general way, that is when *all* rather than *some* might be supplied before them.

Die Sprache iſt gewiß ein geiſtiges, nicht körperliches Mittel der Ideenbildung. (Herder.)

Das Geſetz der Wiedervergeltung iſt eine ewige Naturordnung. (Herder.)

Nehmt die äußere Hülle weg und es iſt kein Tod in der Schöpfung. (Herder.)

But considerable latitude is allowed, as—

Ich finde daß Reichtum ein gewiſſes Recht auf Ehre hat. Selbſterworbener Reichtum iſt Zeugnis von Thatkraft, Umſicht. (Auerbach.)

2. Collectives, as das Menſchengeſchlecht, *mankind;* die Geſellſchaft, *society*, take the definite article.

3. Names of materials, as das Eiſen, *iron;* die Steinkohlen, *coals*, generally take the definite article, especially when used with an adjective, as das ſchwediſche Eiſen, *Swedish iron.* We often find, however, expressions like Gold iſt ein edles Metall.

4. Plural class-names used of the whole class, as die Fürſten, *sovereigns;* die Thoren, *fools.* So of course adjectives used as nouns, die Wahnſinnigen, *madmen.*

Obs. German agrees with French and English in the use of the article with a singular class-name, as der Dichter, meaning poets generally.

283A. ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS. — After prepositions German and English are generally in accord as to the insertion or omission of the article. But several cases call for notice.

1. There are many stereotyped expressions in which the two languages differ. Such are, on the one hand, im Scherz, *in jest;* ſich zur Ruhe begeben, *to go to rest;* zum Tode verurteilen, *to condemn to death;* on the other, unter fremdem Namen, *under an assumed name;* von Anfang an, *from the beginning;* nach Süden, *to the south.*

2. Many compound words are really or virtually examples of the Saxon genitive (§ 290), and have therefore no article, as vor Sonnenuntergang, aus Kindesmund, unter Dichterhand.

3. Familiar pairs of nouns (§ 287) take no article. The same principle often extends to accidental combinations, as die Reliefe über

Thür und Eckfenſter, compared with die Reliefe über der Thür; der Blick des Paſtors von Kanzel und Altar, but von der Kanzel. Notice also such phrases as nach geſchehener That, bei eintretender Dunkelheit.

284. ARTICLE WITH NAMES OF PERSONS.—As in English, names of persons unaccompanied by an adjective do not generally take the article. But as it is often inconvenient to inflect such names, especially those ending in s, r, z, ß, and classical names, an article is frequently used to show the case in the genitive or dative. (Acc. §§ 36—38.) When an adjective precedes, the article must be inserted, as die ſtolze Iſabeau, *proud Isabel*. Notice the following:

Obs. 1. The definite article is occasionally used with the nominative or accusative of a proper name with something of a demonstrative force.

Wär' ich beſonnen, hieß' ich nicht der Tell. (Schiller.)

Obs. 2. In conversation, names of persons or animals, when there is occasion to mention them very frequently, take the definite article. Thus in speaking of the children in a family, or of the house-dog, one would say Der Karl, der Fritz, der Beppo, *i.e., the Charles* we know about, &c.

Obs. 3. When proper nouns are used to connote certain qualities, as *a Nero*, and so are practically common nouns, they take the indefinite article in German as in English.

Obs. 4. The French *les Newton*, which we render *a Newton*, has a parallel in German.

. . . . . Die zum Vaterlande zurückkehrenden Gelehrten, die Fichte und Arndt. (von Treitschke.)

284A. GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES. — Most names of countries and towns are neuter, and take no article except when preceded by an adjective. Thus we say: Italien, das ſchöne Italien; Dresden, das liebliche Dresden. Names of mountains, rivers, lakes, seas, forests, always take the definite article, as der Montblanc, der Pilatus, der Lago Maggiore, der Schwarzwald, die Donau.

Obs. Masculine and feminine names of countries take the article, as die Türkei, die Schweiz, die Krim, der Breisgau. So do sometimes names like das Schwabenland (properly Schwaben.) Among towns, &c., notice der Haag (La Haye), die Wartburg (a definite castle). But even Kleinrußland, Ruſſiſch Polen, have no article.

285. PARTS OF THE BODY.—In speaking of parts of the body, both German and French differ from English in two points. (1) They prefer the definite article to a possessive case or adjective. (2) They use the singular rather than the plural where possible.

Der Henker ſchlug den Grafen Egmont und Horn den Kopf ab.

Die Hunde ließen keuchend die Zunge weit aus dem Munde heraushängen.

See also the chapter on the Dative, §§ 347, 348.

286. INDEFINITE ARTICLE AND NUMERAL.—Where confusion is possible the numeral is often distinguished from the indefinite article by a capital letter or by spaced printing.

So biſt du mein durch mehr als e i n Geſetz. (Goethe.)

287. COUPLED NOUNS.—German delights in pairs of nouns, connected partly by sound, partly by sense. Such combinations take no article.

Many such combinations are alliterative, *i.e.*, consist of two nouns with the same initial letter, as Leib und Leben, Haus und Hof, Stock und Stein, Schimpf und Schande, Herz und Hand, Hirt und Herde, Wind und Wetter, Wonne und Weide, Mann und Maus. Others are rhyming, as Gut und Blut, Schutz und Trutz, Stein und Bein; others again, are simply connected by meaning, as Senat und Volk, Dorf und Stadt, Sohn und Erbe, Haupt und Glieder, Kampf und Streit, Berg und Thal.

288. ARTICLE OMITTED IN PROVERBS, &c.—In proverbial or epigrammatic expressions and rapid enumerations the article is omitted before nouns, used even in the most general sense.

Zaudern iſt Verrat.—Tugend belohnt ſich ſelbſt.
Eigener Herd iſt Goldes wert.
Weiber, Kinder, Greiſe wurden nicht verſchont.

It is also omitted in childish language, in simple ballad poetry, almost making common nouns into proper names, as well as with the alliterative combinations mentioned in the last section.

Ritter ritt in's Weite
Durch Gehег' und Au,
Plötzlich ihm zur Seite
Wandelt schöne Frau. (Platen.)

Und Roß und Reiter sah ich niemals wieder. (Sch.)

289. FAMILIAR COMBINATIONS.—Nouns constantly found in company with verbs, so as almost to make compound verbs, such as Frieden schließen, Atem holen, Feuer machen, Wort halten, Hülfe leisten, take as a rule no article. The same is the case with many adverbial phrases made up of a preposition and a noun or a noun and an adjective, as zu Fuß, nach Hause, zu Gunsten, gegen Ende des Jahres, aus guter Quelle, in hohem Grade, unter fremdem Namen reisen.

On the other hand the article is a necessary part of many such phrases, im Ernst, zur See, imstande sein, zum Zeitvertreib.

290. GENITIVE BEFORE GOVERNING NOUN.—When a genitive precedes the noun on which it depends, that noun has no article.

Der Kreter nie besiegte Scharen. (Sch.)

Heros und Leanders Herzen. (Sch.)

This is often called the Saxon genitive. In translating, avoid the temptation to treat German as Greek, where a genitive often comes between an article and its noun.

291. PLURAL OF MEASURES.—The names of weights and measures associated with numerals take no inflexion of number or case, as—

Ein Pfund hat 500 Gramm.—Ein Gewicht von 5 Stein.

In 2 Groß Stahlfedern sind 24 Dutzend oder 288 Stück enthalten.

The only exception is in favour of feminines ending in e, and the words Million, Billion.

Vier Ruten, sieben Fuß, drei Zoll und acht Linien.

292. ARTICLE REPEATED.—When two or more nouns of different number or gender are connected by a conjunction, the article is repeated with each noun.

Der Hund, die Katze und das Pferd sind Haustiere.

But when they are of the same gender it is not repeated.

Der Löwe, Tiger, Wolf und Luchs sind reißende Tiere.

Obs. 1. It is not easy to give quite a definite rule as to nouns of the same gender. Where antithesis is desired, the article is generally repeated, and yet Lessing has Laokoon oder über die Grenzen der Malerei und Poesie. Coupled nouns, again, are generally content with a single article.

Obs. 2. In older German this was not always the rule.

Wo ihr aber in eine Stadt oder Markt gehet. (Luther's Bib.)

293. NOUNS WITHOUT ARTICLE OCCASIONALLY UNINFLECTED. — In a few cases where a noun without article is used to denote a class, the inflexion is dropped, especially in the sense of the stereotyped combinations mentioned in § 288.

Es ist keine Trennung zwischen Soldat und Bürger. (Auerbach.)

Ein ganzes langes Leben
Hab' ich in Arbeit hingegeben
Für Fürst und Staat. (Goe.)

Das ist der Lindwurm, kommt und schaut,
Der Hirt und Herden uns verschlungen. (Sch.)

. . . . seines Stolzes,
Den er auf Christ und Muselmann vererbte. (Lessing.)

instead of Christen, Fürsten, Hirten.

293A. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE, often omitted in French before a noun in apposition, is generally inserted in German, unless the noun is a mere formal description of a man's trade, &c., a case in which the article is often left out in English.

Doch das Schweigen brach Bero, der Vater Frida's, ein hartknochiger Bauer. (Freytag.)

Gerhard Richwin, Bürger und Wollenweber in Wetzlar, war ein reicher Mann. (Riehl.)

Der ausgezeichnetſte unter dieſen Theologen war Theodor Beza, Prediger aus Genf, ein ebenſo feiner als feuriger Kopf. (Schiller.)

which is rendered in French *esprit aussi fin qu'ardent.*

Obs. After als, meaning *in the capacity of, in the character of*, the indefinite article is omitted.

An dem Liede von Walther und Hildegunde fand er als Student zuerſt eine Poeſie die ſein innerſtes Weſen ergriff. (Treitschke.)

293B. COALESCENCE OF THE ARTICLE WITH PREPOSITIONS. — The article combines with certain prepositions to form single words. The commonest of the combinations are those with the dative am, beim, im, vom, zum, zur; the next commonest those with the accusative neuter ans, aufs, durchs, fürs, ins, vors, ums. Others, as unterm, vorm, &c., are almost confined to poetry. In prose the use of these combinations is limited to more familiar expressions, as im Frühling, im Mittelalter, beim Alten, zum Schein, zur Sache, fürs Erſte, ins Blaue, aufs Beſte, &c.; otherwise they are avoided, especially before a noun standing as the antecedent to a relative.

Auf der Berghöhe ſtand an dem Verhau, das die Wälder der Thüringer von den Katten ſchied, der junge Wächter . . . . in dem dichten Geſtrüpp blühten die Brombeeren. Der Jüngling trug auf dem Rücken am Riemen ein langes Horn, nachläſſig lehnte er an dem Baum . . . . wenn ſich ein Waldtier durch das Dickicht wand. (Freytag.)

Durch die Breſche im Säulengang führt ein ſchmaler Pfad . . . . dieſer Weg leitet zu dem grauen Hauſe. (Ebers.)

Obs. In many cases am, zum, &c., stand with a single masculine or neuter noun, where, with a longer expression, the indefinite article is used. Thus—am Schnupfen leiden compared with an einem heftigen Schnupfen.

Chapter V.—Adjectives and Participles.

294. SECOND CONCORD. — An adjective or participle, when used as an epithet, and standing immediately before the noun it qualifies, agrees with it in gender, number, and case:—

Da gießt unendlicher Regen herab. (Sch.)
Ihr ſollt ein wahres Kunſtſtück hören. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. By this concord the adjective is often forced into agreement with a word to which it does not belong in sense, as in eine bairiſche Bierbrauerei, *a brewery of Bavarian beer;* ein engliſcher Sprachlehrer, *a teacher of the English language;* der ſpaniſche Erbfolgekrieg, *the war of the Spanish Succession.*

Obs. 2. An apparent exception is found, when a *phrase* is treated as a single neuter noun.

Jedes „Lohn von Gott;" (Lessing.)

though Lohn is masculine.*

295. ELLIPSIS OF NOUN.—There are a few expressions in which the noun is omitted. Such are die Rechte, Linke (Hand), den kürzern (Stab) ziehen; *to come off second-best.*

296. COMPOUND NOUNS.—An English adjective, or a noun used as an adjective, is often replaced in German by the first part of a compound noun, as Familienleben, *domestic life;* Bürgerkrieg, *civil war;* Heldenkraft, *heroic strength;* Kaiſerhaus, *imperial family;* Tagesrechnung, *daily account;* Liebhabertheater, *amateur theatre.*

* In a recent French play "*fin de siècle*" is treated as masculine, though *fin* is feminine.

297. ADJECTIVE WITH DEPENDENT WORDS.—An adjective or participle with other words depending upon it may, in German, be used as an epithet, and is, in that case, still subject to the rule of concord.

Schleſien, ein ſchönes, mit arbeitſamen Einwohnern bevölkertes Land. (Archenholz.)

Denkmale einer ehemals ſo prächtigen Stadt. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. Care must be taken not to employ this characteristic German idiom to the detriment of clearness or elegance. A relative clause is often preferable.*

Obs 2. Such phrases must generally be rendered in English by adjectival sentences. Attempts have been made to introduce the German idiom. They are ridiculed in "Rejected Addresses." The following are specimens:—"The not-a-bit-the-less-on-that-account-to-be-universally-execrated monster, Buonaparte;" "the in-general-strewn-with-cabbage-stalks-but-on-Saturday-night-lighted-up-with-lamps market of Covent Garden."

298. ADJECTIVES UNINFLECTED.—Adjectives and participles not used as epithets are undeclined. There are two positions in a sentence which they may then fill—(1) they may stand as *appositive complements* (§ 299); (2) they may be *secondary predicates* (§ 300). There are also cases in which an *epithet* is undeclined, but such cases are confined to poetry and conversation (§ 319).

299. ADJECTIVES AS APPOSITIVE COMPLEMENTS. — An adjective or participle is undeclined when it stands as the appositive complement (1) after copulative verbs as *to be*, *to seem*, &c.; (2) in apposition to the accusative after verbs of *naming*, *making*, &c.

---

* The following (quoted by G. Andresen, Sprachgebrauch) from the Kölniſche Zeitung, is not to be imitated: — Die Schrift entwirft uns ein ergreifendes Bild dieſes durch Mangel an ſittlichem Halt und die grauſame Härte ſeines felſenharten, jede Verzeihung erbittert ablehnenden Vaters untergehenden hochbegabten Dichters.

Alle Herzen ſind beglückt. (Sch.)
Selig preiſ' ich Polyxenen. (Sch.)
Dich kann mein Mund nicht glücklich ſprechen. (Sch.)
Dich macht die Zeit nur gewiſſer. (Goe.)
O weine nicht die Äuglein rot. (Körner.)

Obs. 1. If, however, the adjective, when used as appositive complement, has an article, it is declined, and may be supposed to agree with the subject (or object, as the case may be) repeated.

Iſt ein alter Eindruck ein verlorener? (Less.)

i.e., ein verlorener (Eindruck understood).

Obs. 2. When the nominative to a copulative verb is in the plural, the same idiom produces expressions which make it appear, at first sight, as though an adjective in the predicate were inflected.

Sonderbar aber iſt es, daß meine Liebhaberei nur auf die Bäume geht, die gewiſſermaßen wilde heißen können. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Die Vorurteile gegen fremde Völker ſind in den meiſten Fällen ſehr einſeitige und ungerechte. (Lessing.)

We should probably in English repeat the noun, or put in *ones*.

300. SECONDARY PREDICATES. — Participles, and occasionally adjectives, generally with words depending upon them, often stand as *secondary predicates* — that is, they make an additional statement about the subject or object of the sentence, which might be embodied in another clause. In such cases the adjective or participle is undeclined.

Mit fremden Schätzen reich beladen
Kehrt zu den heimiſchen Geſtaden
Der Schiffe maſtenreicher Wald. (Sch.)

The clause mit ..beladen might be made a co-ordinate sentence, *is richly laden...and returns*.

Entworfen blos iſt's ein gemeiner Frevel,
Vollführt iſt's ein unſterblich Unternehmen.† (Sch.)

Dort wohnte ein geſittetes Handelsvolk, ſchwelgend von den Früchten ſeines Fleißes, wachſam auf Geſetze, die ſeine Wohlthäter waren. (Sch.)

† For unſterblich *see* § 319.

This sometimes applies to adjectives qualifying nouns which are not either objects or subjects of the sentence.

Er kam nach Deutſchland....innerlich rein und frei, mit allen Gedanken auf Arbeit, Selbſtverleugnung, hohen Ruhm gerichtet. (von Sybel.)

Ich bin ſtets
Ein Freund geweſen von Geſchichtchen, gut erzählt. (Lessing.)

301. UNDECLINED PARTICIPLE MUST REFER TO SUBJECT OF SENTENCE. — In Latin and Greek, where participles are always declined, they may refer to any noun in the sentence. In German the undeclined participle should be used only as a secondary predicate, *i.e.*, in reference to the subject of the sentence, unless, as in the last example of § 300, it is perfectly clear from its position to what words it refers. Thus the following is not to be imitated, at least in prose.

Noch zuckend, mit des Panthers Zähnen
Zerreißen ſie des Feindes Herz. (Schiller.)

302. ADJECTIVES NEVER USED AS EPITHETS. —Certain adjectives, such as ſchuld, kund, anſichtig, are never used as epithets, but only as appositive complements after copulative verbs, or verbs of *making*, *calling*, &c.

Obs. 1. The adjectives *aware*, *rid*, *mindful*, *poorly*, &c., are subject to the same limitation in English.

Obs. 2. A few of these are occasionally epithets, as gares Leder, mit heiler Haut, gäng und gebe Münze, getroſten Mutes, ein wacher Kopf, wache Träume.

---

* The following is the list :—

abhold, ill-affected.
abſpenſtig, recalcitrant.
abwendig, estranged.
angſt, uneasy.
anheiſchig, bound over [to.
anſichtig, in sight of.
ausfindig, discovered.
bereit, ready.
brach, fallow.
eingedenk, mindful.
feind, hostile.
gäng(e), current.
gar, cooked, ready.
gebe (gäbe), current (gänge und gebe).
gedenk, mindful.
getroſt, of good cheer.
gewahr, aware.
gewärtig, on the look-out [for.
gram, averse.
heil, sound.
irre, mistaken.
kund, known.
habhaft, in possession of.
handgemein, at close quarters.
leid, annoying.
not, necessary.
nütz(e), useful.
quitt, rid, quits.
ſchade, pity (re- [grettable).
ſchuld, guilty of.
teilhaftig, } partaker
teilhaft, } in
unpaß, poorly.
unwohl, unwell.
verluſtig, a loser.
wach, awake.

303. EPITHETS ONLY.—Certain other adjectives can be used as epithets only. Such are :—

(1.) Adjectives in n, en, ern, describing the material of which anything is made, as golden, ledern. Consequently to translate *the ring is golden* we must say : der Ring iſt von Gold, or ein goldener.

(2.) To some extent adjectives in iſch derived from names of persons or countries, as diebiſch, *thievish ;* ſpaniſch, *Spanish ;** though we can say das klingt mir ſpaniſch; dieſes Wort iſt nicht italieniſch.

(3.) Many adjectives in lich, not denoting qualities, but rather attendant circumstances, as anfänglich, *initial ;* ſtündlich, *hourly*. They can, however, be used freely as adverbs. Of course, there are many adjectives in lich, like herrlich, *splendid ;* redlich, *honest*, &c., denoting qualities, to which this rule does not apply.

(4.) Adjectives in ig formed from adverbs, like dortig (die Dortigen, *the people there*), hieſig, heutig, &c.† The adverbs from which they are formed can generally be used as complements : er iſt dort, wir ſind hier, &c.

Obs. Any of these adjectives, if the article is placed before them, become practically nouns, and can then be used as complements.

304. TWO FORMS OF THE SUPERLATIVE. — As the superlative has generally no uninflected form, we must use, when it occurs as the appositive complement, either the inflected form with the definite article, der, die, das ſchönſte, or an adverbial form : am ſchönſten, am eifrigſten. The former is employed when the subject (or object) is compared with another individual of the same kind, the latter when it is compared with itself under different circumstances. Thus—

Der geſtrige Sturm war der heftigſte des ganzen Jahrhunderts.

But

Um zwei Uhr war der Sturm am heftigſten;

that is, more violent than the same storm at 10 o'clock, 3 o'clock, &c.

---

* Adjectives from names of persons have a capital, as der Trübner'ſche Verlag, provided they mean belonging to the person; but if they are otherwise used they have a small letter, as die lutheriſche Kirche, die voltaiſche Säule.

† Corresponding to the Greek ὁ νῦν, οἱ ἐκεῖ, τριταῖος, &c. Hence *Æneas se matutinus agebat*, τεταρταῖος ἀφίκετο, have no parallel in German.

Dann ist dieser Tag der schönste meines Lebens. (Sch.)
Der Starke ist am mächtigsten allein. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. If es, not representing any word from a previous sentence, be the subject, the form with am is used.

Am besten ist's auch hier, wenn ihr nur Einen hört. (Goe.)

Obs. 2. The form with an and the Article is sometimes called the *relative*, that with the article alone the *absolute* superlative. These terms are better applied to superlative adverbs. *See* Accidence § 191.

305. COMPARISON OF PARTICIPLES, &c.—Participles, when not used exactly as adjectives, are compared with mehr, am meisten, am höchsten, am besten, &c., and so are (at least in modern German) the adjectives enumerated in § 302, which cannot be used as epithets.

Und die Sorge, die mehr als selbst mir das Übel verhaßt ist. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. Of course in many cases it is easy to substitute synonyms admitting of comparison, as feindlich for feind, &c.

Obs. 2. Heine has Nichts that ihm leider; Luther often uses feinder. Participles like reizend, gelehrt, gewandt, are practically adjectives.

306. **Mehr** FOR COMPARATIVE.—*More* is sometimes used in English to contrast not nouns but adjectives. In this case **mehr** is generally used in German, not the comparative degree.

Er ist mehr klug als rechtschaffen (more clever than honest).

Obs. Good writers occasionally use the comparative in this sense —

Diese Ausrufungen sind rhetorischer, als gründlich. (Lessing.)
Vielleicht hat er wahrer als klug und fromm gesprochen. (Goe.)

307. A MOST.—The English superlative with indefinite article cannot be rendered literally in German; *most* must then be translated by äußerst, höchst, sehr, ausgezeichnet, &c., as ein höchst fruchtbares Land. Allerliebst may have indefinite article.

Obs. A superlative without any article is occasionally used in abbreviated expressions, as Feinstes Weizenmehl zu billigstem Preise,— ich verbleibe mit größter Hochachtung.

---

* Matthias quotes immer schreiendere Ungerechtigkeit as correct, but not immer schreiendere Kinder.

308. NEUTER ADJECTIVE AS NOUN.—The neuter of an adjective with the definite article, and sometimes even without, is used much more freely in German than in English, and often requires to be rendered by several words (cf. § 430).

Das Fürchterliche, was er erfahren, hatte auch neue Kraft in ihm wach gerufen. (Freytag.)

Mein Freund war in den letzten Wochen durch Trübes und Schmerzliches, das er selbst erleben mußte, in Anspruch genommen. (Freytag.)

309. NEUTER USED FOR PERSONS.—The neuter of pronominal adjectives is often used in statements applicable to both sexes.

Thus, in addressing a number of boys and girls, we should say: Welches von euch hat das gethan? and the answer might be: Keines von uns. Or, again, to the same audience: Nun hat jedes sein Teil bekommen; jedes gehe ruhig nach Hause.

In the same way unsereins is used:—

Unsereins aber ist schon alt und hat zu viel Sorgen. (Heine.)

Similar is the use of alles and was.

Wo alles liebt, kann Karl allein nicht hassen. (Sch.)
Und alles kniet und schlägt die Brüste. (Sch.)
Da eilt, was Hände hat, sich einzurichten. (Sch.)

310. STRONG AND WEAK FORM.—The general rule is that an adjective preceded by an article or pronominal adjective takes the strong form if the article or pronominal adjective has no inflexion, but the weak form if the article or pronominal adjective is inflected. It is, in fact, the principle of economy; the least possible amount of inflexion is used. Thus mein guter Freund, unser neues Buch, jener schlechte Mann.

On the other hand, if two ordinary adjectives precede the same word, they are inflected alike.

Sorgsam brachte die Mutter des klaren, herrlichen Weines,
In geschliffener Flasche auf blankem, zimmernem Runde. (Goe.)

Obs. folgend is generally treated as a pronominal adjective (die Erörterung folgender wichtigen Sache, &c.); with sogenannt, obenerwähnt, &c., the usage varies.

311. INFLEXION AFTER einige, &c.—After einige, etliche, andere, viele, wenige, mehrere, einzelne, manche, ſolche, welche, an adjective in the *nominative* or *accusative* plural retains the strong form. In the genitive plural the weak form is preferred in modern German, as also after zweier, dreier.*

Die ſchöpferiſche Kraft iſt in viele einzelne Kreiſe geteilt. (Freytag.)

Der Eifer mancher warmen Freunde des Schönen. (Lessing.)

The following is less common:—

Es war das Verdienſt einiger ſchöner Frauen in der Stadt. (Grimm.)

312. **Manch.**—Manch before another adjective is usually declined, and the adjective takes in that case the weak form. In the nominative singular and accusative singular neuter, the inflexion of manch may be omitted,† and the strong form of the adjective used. Thus manches beſſere Stück; manch ſchönes Land; die Laufbahn manches jugendlichen Talentes. For the plural, see the preceding section.

313. **All.**—The word all involves some difficulty both as to its own declension and that of the adjectives that follow it.

(1.) The inflected form is used immediately before an abstract noun in the singular, much as *all* in English. In other cases *all the* in the singular is das ganze.

Der Antrag iſt aller Überlegung wert. (Goe.)

Ich habe ihn die ganze Woche nicht geſehen.

(2.) *All, all the*, in the plural, is rendered by all inflected without article. Occasionally in the nominative and accusative the definite article is inserted.

Neidhart von Reuenthal, der geiſtvollſte und traurigſte aller ritterlichen Sänger im dreizehnten Jahrhundert. (Freytag.)

Nach allen kläglichen Demütigungen der jüngſten Jahre. (Treitschke.)

Alle die Weiſeſten aller Zeiten. (Goe.)

The inflected form is often followed in the plural by a possessive or demonstrative adjective, sometimes, as above, by the definite article.

Das einzige Regiment, das alle ſeine Ehrenzeichen gerettet hatte. (Treitschke.)

---

* But Freytag has zweier verwandter Häuſer.

† In poetry manch uninflected is more freely used, as manch bunten Blumen.

In the singular *all his* is generally sein ganz—

Um sein ganzes Vermögen ist er gekommen.

Notice dies alles, *all this;* das alles, *all that.*

(3.) The uninflected form all (or the more conversational alle) is used before the masculine and neuter *nom.* and *acc.* singular of the definite article and possessive adjectives, and also before the dative dem after prepositions, occasionally before other cases.

Wozu dient alle der Aufwand von Sonnen und Planeten? (Goe.)

Mir wird von alle dem so wirr, so dumm. (Goe.)

Der Argwohn, der all dies Unheil herbeigeführt. (Freytag.)

Der Schauplatz all meiner Glückseligkeit. (Goe.)

(4.) If all inflected be followed by another adjective, that adjective takes the weak form.

Aller guten Dinge sind drei. (Lessing.)

Jeder mußte alle übrigen Stimmen für sich haben. (Sch.)

There are, however, instances of the strong form in the nominative and accusative plural.

Vor die Versammlung wurden alle große Angelegenheiten gebracht. (Sch.)

(5.) Notice alle Tage, *every day;* alle zwei Tage, *every other day.*

(6.) Alle is used in the complement to mean *complete, at an end;* the usage is provincial.

Die Kugeln sind alle; wir wollen neue gießen. (Goe)

314. **Viel, wenig.** — Viel, wenig are undeclined when they denote a large or small quantity of the thing to which they refer, taken as a whole: declined, when they denote a large or small number of individuals belonging to a class.

They are, therefore, generally but not always, declined in the plural, and undeclined in the singular. The following examples show the less common cases of their being declined in the singular, and left uninflected in the plural.

Lerne nicht auf einmal Vieles, aber Viel. *Ne multa, sed multum.*

Ich bin für viele Höflichkeit Schuldner. (Goe.)

Ein Gewölb, wo vieles Eisen liegt
Von alter Siegesbeute aufgehäuft. (Sch.)

Ihn umgeben viele gute Bekannte, aber wenig treue Freunde.
(Sanders.)*

Obs. 1. Viel, wenig, preceding another adjective, may qualify either the idea made up of noun and adjective or the noun only. In the latter case they are declined in the same way as the other adjectives, and a comma is placed between. Thus vieles, lautes Geſchrei, *a great deal of shouting, and that loud*, differs slightly from viel lautes Geſchrei, *a great deal of loud shouting*.

Obs. 2. Viel, wenig, when preceded by an article or adjective pronoun are always declined—das viele Geld, ſein weniges Geld, &c. They can be thus used only with collective or abstract nouns.

315. **Mehr, mehrere.**—As a general rule, the inflected form mehrere is used only in the sense of *several*. *More*, whether with a singular or plural noun, is rendered by mehr undeclined.

Obgleich ich ſchon mehrere Bücher verſchenkt habe, ſo habe ich doch immer noch mehr Bücher als du. (Sanders.)

But classical writers did occasionally use mehrere declined with plural and even with singular nouns to mean *more*—

Je mehrere und größere Ähnlichkeiten wir wahrnehmen. . . (Lessing.)

Dein Blut rollt mit mehrerer Geſchwindigkeit. (Goe.)

Notice the collective Mehreres, *several things*.

Some authors, *e.g.*, Freytag, use the form mehre both for *several* and for *more*.

316. **Solch.**—There are three different ways of using ſolch:—

(1.) It may precede the indefinite article, and is then undeclined.

Solch ein Wetter iſt ſelten zu ſolcher Ernte gekommen. (Goe.)

(2.) It may follow the indefinite article, and is then declined.

Ein ſolcher Auftrag ſchreckt mich nicht, mit ſolchen Schätzen kann ich dienen. (Goe.)

(3.) It may stand alone, without article. This usage is almost confined to the plural.

---

* Wenig undeclined can rarely be used in the plural before another adjective, because of its double meaning. In this example, wenig treue Freunde might mean, but for the contrast with viele, *disloyal friends* (*des amis peu sincères*). Possibly the plural with viel undeclined really represents a genitive.

Laß ſeh'n, wie viel man ſolcher Maulwurfshaufen muß über'nander ſetzen.* (Schiller.)

Obs. 1. If ſolch precede another adjective, two forms are admissible. Solch edler Mann, or ſolcher edle Mann.

Obs. 2. *Such a good man* generally means *so good a man*, and is rendered ein ſo guter Mann, just as *too good a man* is ein zu guter Mann.

Obs. 3. *Such a* is often ſo ein.

317. **Ganz, halb,** UNDECLINED, **lauter.**—Before names of places ganz and halb are undeclined, as ganz London, halb Paris.

In all other cases they are used with an article or possessive adjective, and declined, as die ganze Welt, ſein ganzes Vermögen.

The word lauter undeclined is used to mean *mere*, *nothing but*, as—

Er ſieht den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht.

There are also (1) a *declined* adjective lauter, *pure*, *clear*, and (2) lauter, *louder*, the comparative of laut, also declined.

As to voller, *see* chapter on Genitive, § 370.

318. ADJECTIVE AFTER PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—With the genitive and dative of personal pronouns, the weak form of the adjective is used; with the nominative singular, the strong form; with the nominative and accusative plural, usage varies.

So geh', du deutſcher Bär. (Less.)—Ruhet ſanft, ihr Geliebten.
Mir armen Manne—Ihr Jüngern—Ihr Getreue.

319. INDECLINABLES IN **er.**—The indeclinable words ending in er, formed from the names of towns, are really genitives plural. They are written with capital letters, which would not be the case if they were adjectives.

Thus:—die Dresdener Gallerie, *The Dresden Gallery* (lit., *the gallery of the Dresdeners*); der Mainzer Hof, *The Hotel de Mayence* (lit., *the hotel of the Mayencers*), &c. Notice also from die Schweiz, Switzerland, der Schweizer Hof, Schweizer Käſe, &c.

* Notice partitive genitive after viel.

320. INFLECTION DROPT IN POETRY, &c. — In poetry, and in familiar conversation, adjectives are used without inflection before the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and before the nominative masculine.

Jede herbe Not der Meinen
Schlug an mein empfindend Herz. (Sch.)

Am off'nen Wege ſteht's, ein wirtlich Dach. (Sch.)

Bringe mir irgend ein unbedeutend Blatt herein.

So klein Roland, ſchön Wetter, baar Geld, auf gut Glück, &c.

Adjectives are also undeclined when they follow their substantives, as is often the case in ballad poetry, ein Häuschen klein, ihr Mündlein rot.

Als Kaiſer Rotbart lobeſam
Zum heil'gen Land gezogen kam,
Da mußt' er mit dem frommen Heer
Durch ein Gebirge, wüſt und leer. (Uhland.)

Obs. 1. This does not apply to adjectives accompanied by the article. Goethe, in his **Hermann und Dorothea**, is particularly fond of thus placing an epithet after the noun.*

Auch die Armut macht ſtolz, die unverdiente. (Goe.)

Such an adjective is more like a substantive in apposition to the noun it really qualifies. (Cf. § 299, *Obs.*)

Obs. 2. Adjectives denoting colour or language used as nouns are undeclined except in the genitive, as das Blau des Himmels, das beſte Deutſch. Even in the genitive those denoting language are preferably undeclined as des heutigen Deutſch.

Obs. 3. The inflection of ein, *one*, is generally dropt in expressions like **vor ein und einem halben Jahre**, in einer Höhe von ein bis zwei Metern, durch hundert und ein Kanonenſchüſſe.

---

* *See* Introduction to Wagner's Edition, p. xvi.

Chapter VI.—Accusative Case.

321. MEANING OF ACCUSATIVE. — The primary use of the Accusative is to answer the question *whither*. This comes out most clearly in German in its use after the prepositions an, auf, &c., denoting motion or intended motion to a place. From this meaning it naturally passes to denote *extension* in space or time, and the analogous ideas of weight, measure, &c. And, above all, it is used to denote the direct object of a verb, or that to which its action is primarily directed.

322. SPACE AND TIME. — The accusative is used to form adverbial expressions answering to the questions *how long? how far? over how much space?*

Ungefähr eine Stunde vor der Stadt liegt Waldheim. (Goe.)

So ſaß er viele Tage,
Saß viele Jahre lang. (Sch.)

Notice especially its use with compounds of herauf, herab, &c.

Der Mönchsteufel polterte die Treppe herauf. (Klinger.)

and in speaking of time with hindurch. über (after the noun) as, die Nacht über, drei Tage lang, drei Nächte hindurch.

323. TIME WHEN.—The answer to the question *when*, made definite by some word like *this*, *each*, or an ordinal numeral, is put in the accusative:

Sie treffen dieſen Vormittag noch ein. (Sch.)
Seid jede Stunde des Befehls gewärtig. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Note this usage even with a word denoting time only indirectly.

Er leert' ihn jeden Schmaus. (Goe.)

Obs. 2. The preposition an with dative is used as freely as the accusative to answer the question *when?*

Noch an demſelben Abend erſchien Guſtav Adolf. (Sch.)

Obs. 3. The day of the month is given by the accusative in the heading of a letter, &c. It is given by the accusative or by an with dative in a connected sentence.

Straßburg im Elſaß, den 4. Juli 1872.

Am 28. Auguſt 1749, Mittags mit dem Glockenſchlage zwölf kam ich auf die Welt. (Goe.)

324. EXTENT, WEIGHT, MEASURE, &c. — With verbs and adjectives of *weight*, *measure*, *price*, *age*, &c., the accusative answers the question *how heavy? how long? how costly?* &c., in each case denoting the extent to which the quality (weight, price, &c.) goes.

Die Kiſte wiegt einen Centner.
Es iſt keinen roten Heller wert.

Obs. The neuter accusative (viel, wenig, &c.), used with many verbs to denote the extent of their action, is scarcely to be distinguished from an adverb.

Das hat uns viel geſchadet.

325. NEARER OBJECT. — The action of a verb may affect two objects, a person and a thing, for example. On one of these it is considered to act more directly; and to this the name *nearer object* is given. The nearer object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative. It is often its only object.

Was ſchmückt den Jüngling, ehrt den Mann? (Sch.)

Jeglicher führt das Schnupftuch und wiſcht ſich den Schweiß ab. (Goe.)

Obs. Certain intransitive verbs, like ſingen, weinen, klagen, occasionally take an accusative in poetry, though they have transitive compounds that might be substituted for them. Compare in English "*I sing the sofa.*" (Cowper.)

Sing, unſterbliche Seele, der ſündigen Menſchheit Erlöſung. (Klopstock.)

326. GERMAN AND ENGLISH TRANSITIVES. — German differs less than most languages from English in the matter of transitive verbs. Nearly all German transitives, except a few inseparable compounds of durch, unter, um, über, have transitive equivalents in English; though, on the other hand, owing to the disappearance of the dative inflexion from English, many English verbs, as *to help*, *to serve*, &c., have intransitive equivalents in German.

327. COMPOUNDS OF Be. — With a very few exceptions, the compounds of be take an accusative. The force of be is in fact (*see* § 219) to turn intransitive verbs into transitive, or to make transitive verbs govern a different accusative. Thus from weinen, *weep*, intransitive, comes beweinen, *bewail;* from dienen, *serve*, with dative, comes bedienen, *serve*, with accusative; from ſchenken, *give*, with dative of the person, comes beſchenken, *present*, with accusative of the person.

Obs. 1. Begegnen, *meet*, behagen, bekommen, *suit*, belieben, *please*, take a dative. For the reason *see* §§ 345, 6.

Wie wird die Zeche dir leider
Nach der Mahlzeit bekommen? (Goe.)

Solchem Stich begegnete der andere dadurch, daß er das Gleiche that. (Freytag.)

Obs. 2. Befehlen, *command*, takes dative of the person, and accusative of the thing, but not necessarily both together; befehligen, accusative of the person.

Obs. 3. Bedürfen, *need*, begehren, *desire*, take either a genitive (partitive) or an accusative.

Obs. 4. Beharren, *persevere*, beruhen, *rest*, beſtehen, in the sense of *consist*, bewenden, *come to an end* (bewenden laſſen, *acquiesce in**), and a few words like beroſten, *get rusty*, are intransitive.

---

* Er ließ es nicht bei bloßen Worten bewenden, *he would not rest satisfied with mere words.*

328. COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.—The cognate accusative with an intransitive verb, as *to sleep a sleep*, *to fight a fight*, is not common in modern German. When it is used, the noun has generally an adjective with it.

Ich habe einen guten Kampf gekämpft. (Luth.)

Er ſtarb einen Reitertod. (Goe.)

Ich hab' die Nacht geträumet wohl einen ſchweren Traum. (Heine.)

Obs. Sterben generally takes a genitive to denote the manner of death, an to denote the disease.

Sie ſtarb eines böſen Todes. (Grimm.)—Er ſtarb an der Cholera.

329. ACCUSATIVE ANALOGOUS TO COGNATE. — Somewhat similar to the cognate accusative is another idiomatic use of the accusative after intransitive verbs, in the phrases Thränen weinen, Zorn blicken, Freude atmen. These accusatives denote that which is produced or exhibited by weeping, looking, &c., not the act itself, as in the case of Kampf kämpfen, Schlummer ſchlummern.

Das Mühlrad ſtäubt Diamanten. (Heine.)

Es regnete Blut.—Er ſchwur einen Eid.

330. DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.—With a verb of *teaching* the person taught is the direct object, the thing taught a cognate accusative. Hence lehren generally governs two accusatives.

Zeigt mir der Freund, was ich kann, lehrt mich der Feind, was ich ſoll. (Sch.)

Wer hat dich ſolche Streich' gelehrt? (Uhland.)

But on the analogy of verbs like zeigen, a dative of the person is admissible.

Obs. 1. Belehren, takes an accusative of the person, and a genitive of the thing, especially in the phrase, jemanden eines Beſſeren belehren.

Glaubſt du nicht,
Daß Träume dann und wann der Zukunft uns belehren? (Wieland.)

Obs. 2. The rule of the double accusative applies to a certain extent to bitten, fragen, *ask*, when the accusative of the thing is a neuter pronoun.

Ich will dich etwas fragen.

Nur folge mir, ich bitte dich nur dies. (Goe.)

Obs. 3. Koſten may take either two accusatives, or a dative and an accusative. One of the accusatives is really an accusative of price.

331. REFLEXIVE VERBS.—With most reflexive verbs the reflexive pronoun is the nearer object, and in the accusative case; in some instances, however, it is the dative, and then the verb, if naturally transitive, takes an accusative. Thus from ſich einbilden:—

Bildet euch meinen Schrecken ein! (Lessing.)

332. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—Certain sensations, such as *hunger*, *thirst*, *sleepiness*, are expressed in German by impersonals with the accusative. Thus es hungert mich or mich hungert, *I am hungry*; es friert mich, *I am cold*; es ſchläfert mich, *I feel sleepy*; es dürſtet mich, *I am thirsty*; es brennt mich auf der Zunge, *my tongue is parched*; es gelüſtet mich nach etwas, *I long for something*; es überläuft mich, *I shudder*.

Hungert deinen Feind, ſo ſpeiſe ihn; dürſtet ihn, ſo tränke ihn. (Luth. Bible.)

Es juckt und brennt mich nach dem Namen. (Schiller.)

Obs. 1. Compare in old English, *him hungrede*, and in Scott—

And when in Salamanca's cave
Him listed his magic wand to wave,
The bells would ring in Notre Dame.

Obs. 2. The Germans say es friert mich an den Händen, not often die Hände frieren mir. See below for the use of the dative in somewhat analogous cases.

Obs. 3. Es is frequently omitted in cases where a personal construction is also possible, as in mich hungert for es hungert mich, but not in phrases like es brennt mich auf der Zunge.

Obs. 4. Ordinary transitive verbs used as impersonals keep their accusative, as es ärgert mich, *I am vexed;* es freut mich, *I am pleased.* But es dünft, *methinks*, takes sometimes an accusative, sometimes a dative.

Obs. 5. Es gilt takes an accusative of the thing wanted or at stake.

Nun gilt es ſchnellen Rat. (Sch.)

Es galt das Daſein der Nation. (v. Treitschke.)

333. THE IMPERSONAL **Es giebt.**—Es giebt, meaning *there is*, or *there are*, takes an accusative. The real meaning of the phrase is "some power or other produces for us," but this idea has become quite obscured.

Da giebt's einen großen Spaß. (Goe.)

Obs. Es ſetzt, with the meaning es giebt, is almost limited to es ſetzt Hiebe, Schläge.

334. CONSTRUCTION OF **laſſen**, &c.—The verbs laſſen, machen, heißen (*bid*), ſehen, hören, lehren, are followed by an accusative and infinitive.

Laß, Herr, des Opfers Düfte ſteigen. (Sch.)

Er hieß inzwiſchen
Im Kloſter mich als Laienbruder bleiben. (Less.)

Obs. 1. It is important to distinguish the accusative governed by laſſen from the case (whatever it may be) governed by the infinitive depending on laſſen, or rather perhaps by the compound verb made up of laſſen and the infinitive,

Er ließ die Brücken abbrechen,

He had the bridges broken down (he bid-break-down the bridges).

Laß dir nicht ſchmeicheln,

Don't let yourself be flattered (don't let-flatter yourself).

Obs. 2. It will be easy, therefore, to see the difference between Laß mich die Zeitung vorleſen, *let me read the paper aloud*, and laß mir die Zeitung vorleſen, *let some one read the paper to me.*

335. ADJECTIVES WITH ACCUSATIVES. — The adjectives anſichtig, gewahr, los, gewohnt, müde, ſatt, überdrüſſig, which naturally govern the genitive, are sometimes found with an accusative.

Den Böſen ſind ſie los, die Böſen ſind geblieben. (Goe.)
Das bin ich nicht gewohnt. (Goe.)
Das ſind auch wir zufrieden. (Goe.)

This usage is chiefly confined to neuter pronouns, the ending of which was probably mistaken for a genitive termination.

336. ACCUSATIVE ABSOLUTE. — Sometimes the accusative, followed by a participle or an adverbial expression, is used absolutely, that is, it forms an adverbial expression, not depending in construction on any other word in the sentence. In prose, English generally prefers the preposition *with;* in poetry, and in phrases like *sword in hand*, we have the same idiom as German.

Zu Dionys, dem Tyrannen, ſchlich
Möros, den Dolch im Gewande. (Sch.)

Aber noch ſtand der Greis, den Blick zur Wolke geſenkt, und trüben, denkenden Ernſt auf der Stirne. (Engel.)

336A. INTRANSITIVE VERBS WITH OBJECT. —Some usually intransitive verbs take an accusative in special senses, as ſich müde arbeiten, die Füße wund gehen.

Chapter VII.—The Dative.

337. USES OF THE DATIVE.—The German dative, when standing alone, is the case of the indirect object, that is of the person (or thing) affected by the occurrence of an action or the exercise of a quality, although not directly or primarily acted on.* It is also the case governed by many prepositions, and, in conjunction with them, supplies the want of an ablative, a locative, and an instrumental case.

Its uses as the case of the indirect object may be classified as follows:—

(1.) It is the remoter object of a transitive verb.

(2.) It is used in combination with the verb *sein* and other copulative verbs accompanied by an adjective, adverb, &c., or even standing alone.

(3.) It forms the sole object of many intransitive verbs.

(4.) It is loosely joined to a sentence to denote a person interested, especially in the form known as the *ethic dative*.

338. REMOTER OBJECT.—A number of verbs, of which verbs of *giving* are the most obvious example, have two objects. The one which they are said to affect directly is put in the accusative, and denotes the thing given, the other, which is supposed to be more remotely affected by the action, denotes the person to whom it is given, and is put in the dative. The same principle applies to verbs of *telling*, *advising*, *permitting*, *commanding*, *promising*, *showing*, *forgiving*, *owing*, *comparing*, &c.

* Roby, § 1132.

Dem Glück bezahlt' ich meine Schuld. (Sch.)
Meine Blindheit gieb mir wieder. (Sch.)
Ihn will ich den Erinnyen weihen,
Ob sie mein Glück mir dann verzeihen. (Sch.)
Dem Tell verdank' ich mein gerettet Leben. (Sch.)
Ich habe dich gelobet meinem Herrn. (Herder.)
Vertraust du dich doch sorglos
Täglich dem wilden Meer. (Heine.)
Sagt, wem vergleich' ich diese muntre Schar? (Goe.)

Obs. 1. The opposites of these verbs, those of *refusing*, *grudging*, &c., take the same construction.

Wer mißgönnt's euch? (Goe.)

Obs. 2. The accusative after such verbs is often replaced by an infinitive mood with zu.

So rat' ich dir nur kurz und gut
Desgleichen gleichfalls anzulegen. (Goe.)

339. TO BELONG, TO BE DUE. — Neuter verbs meaning *to belong*, *to be wanting*, *to be due*, *to happen*, *to appear*, &c., which are nearly akin in signification to the passives of the transitive verbs that take a dative, are themselves, as in English, followed by a dative of the person to whom something belongs, &c.

Denn dir gehören meine Pflichten. (Sch.)
Und was mir fehlt, du Kleine,
Fehlt manchem im deutschen Land. (Heine.)
Ehre dem Ehre gebühret. (Proverb.)

Obs. 1. Hence werden, in the sense of *to fall to the lot of*, takes a dative.

Der schönste Lohn soll dir werden. (Goe.)

Obs. 2. Dünken, *to seem*, is oftener found with the accusative. The cognate English word *thinks* in *methinks* (i.e., *it thinks or seems to me*), should be noticed.

340. TAKING AWAY. — Even verbs of *taking away*, especially those compounded with ab, ent, aus, often take a

dative of the remoter object, as, *aufero*, *demo*, *subduco* in Latin, *ôter*, *prendre* in French.

Doch hatt' ich einen teuren Erben,
Den nahm mir Gott, ich sah ihn sterben. (Sch.)

Er hinterhält ihm sein gerechtes Erbe. (Less.)

Der Ring, den er dem Riesen abgenommen. (Wieland.)

Und ihr Haupt,
Dem seines Armes Stütze sich entzog,
Stürzt auf das Kissen. (Lessing.)

Obs. 1. The intransitive verb entsagen takes a dative (cf. *renoncer à*).

Sie konnte ihrem wilden Leben entsagen. (Freytag.)

Obs. 2. Side by side with this construction is that of verbs like berauben, with accusative of the person. (*See* also § 371.)

Ihr beraubt mich meiner Kinder. (Luther's Bib.)

341. ADJECTIVE WITH VERB TO BE, &c. — Adjectives, adverbs, participles, and occasionally nouns with the verb sein, or otherwise forming an appositive complement (§ 275), are accompanied by a dative of the person affected. The relations expressed are, of course, often the same as those expressed by the verbs named below.

Du bist mir nah. (Goe.)—Es ist mir recht.

Das erste steht uns frei. (Goe.)

Dies alles ist mir unterthänig. (Sch.)

Dann geht das Kantoniren an, dem Bauer eine Last,
Verdrießlich jedem Edelmann, und Bürgern gar verhaßt. (Goe.)

Seid mir gegrüßt, befreund'te Scharen,
Die mir zur See Begleiter waren. (Sch.)

Wohl uns! Denn was
Mich Euch zum Christen macht, das macht Euch mir
Zum Juden. (Lessing.)

Einen Bürger hofft' er sich gewogen. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. Notice especially the adjectives in bar and lich with a passive meaning.

Eine Seele, die der List und der Liebe gleich unbetretbar war. (Sch.)

Obs. 2. The use of the dative with a noun unaccompanied by an adjective is disappearing.

342. **Sein, &c., IMPERSONAL.** — Sein, werden, used impersonally in the sense *I feel*, *I begin to feel*, &c. (literally *it is to me*, *it becomes to me*), always take the dative. So gehen, ergehen.

Dem Schäfer iſt gar ſo weh. (Goe.)

Es wird mir von alle dem ſo wirr, ſo dumm,
Als ging' mir ein Mühlrad im Kopf herum. (Goe.)

Laß dir doch nicht bange ſein. (Less.)—Es erging ihm ſchlecht.

Eine Nonne, die wegen Liebſchaft aus der Zelle entronnen, wie das ſo mancher geht. (Freytag.)

343. OTHER IMPERSONALS.—Though most impersonals govern an accusative (§ 332), there are a few which take a dative. The chief of these are es ſcheint, *it seems* (and sometimes es dünkt); es grauet, *one shudders;* es ekelt, *it disgusts;* es ſchwindelt, *one feels giddy;* es bangt, *one trembles;* es träumt, *one dreams.*

Dem Vater grauſet's, er reitet geſchwind. (Goe.)

344. ELLIPTICAL EXPRESSIONS. — By ellipsis of the verb a dative often stands with an adverb or interjection.

Weh den Verſern. (Platen.)—Heil dir, würdiger Greis. (Sch.)

Wohl dem, der frei von Schuld und Fehle
Bewahrt die kindlich reine Seele. (Sch.)

345. INTRANSITIVE VERBS. — Intransitive verbs which denote that one person or thing stands in a certain relation to another person or thing take the dative. The most frequent relations of this kind are *pleasing*, *displeasing*, *likeness*, *unlikeness*, *obedience*, *resistance*, *trust*, *friendship*, *enmity*, *fitness*, *anger*. Many of the verbs of this class are transitive in English; others are followed by prepositions.

Der König, dem das Lied gefiel. (Goe.)

Ich kann nicht ſagen, wie der Ort mir widert. (Sch.)

Du gleichſt dem Geiſt, den du begreifſt. (Goe.)

Ein bloßer Schall, dem nichts entſpricht. (Less.)

Wie wollt' ich dienen dem Herzog hoch zu Pferd. (Uhland.)
Weil er dem Strome mächtig wehren kann. (Sch.)
Meiner Mutter ziemt Wildpret und Fisch. (Uhland.)
Nun zürnst du schrecklich mir. (Uhland.)
Er vertrauet scheiternd oder landend
Seinen Göttern. (Goe.)

See Appendix II. for a great many verbs falling under this rule.

Obs. 1. So also compound expressions with similar meanings.

Ihm hielt noch keiner stand. (Uhland.)
Des Lebens ungemischte Freude
Ward keinem Irdischen zu teil. (Sch.)

Obs. 2. Notice especially schaden, helfen.

Es wird ihr hoffentlich nicht schaden. (Goe.)

346. **Folgen, begegnen.** — Folgen, begegnen, and words of cognate signification take a dative, perhaps from a notion of service on the part of the person who follows or meets one.

Folgt durch die Lüfte dem Klang, folgt durch den Aether dem Strahl.
Nur einem Traurigen hab' ich begegnet.*
Der sich verbergen muß, wo Alles jauchzt. (Sch.)

Obs. Begegnen, *to meet*, is occasionally (Grimm says wrongly) found with an accusative. In the sense *to happen to*, it of course takes a dative.

347. DATIVE OF PERSON INTERESTED.—Besides the above mentioned verbs and adjectives, which are those most frequently found with the dative, nearly all verbs and adjectives may, under particular circumstances, be used with a dative of the person or thing which their action indirectly affects. This construction is the widest form of the *dative of relation*.

Wenn ich unserm Vater auch seine Sorgen so erleichtern könnte. (Lessing.)
Hätt' ich mir nicht die Flamme vorbehalten. (Goe.)

* Where exception is taken to the use of haben with the verb of motion begegnet.

Nehmt mir's nicht ungut, Nathan. (Less.)

Ihr seht es ihr an, sie ist rüstig geboren.* (Goe.)

Vergiß sie jetzt und lebe nur der Freude. (Sch.)

Leicht fügte sich ihm der Ausdruck erregter Empfindung in den Zwang französischer Verse. (Freytag.)

Obs. In modern prose für with accusative often supersedes the dative.

Das war für euch ein großes Glück.

348. DATIVE FOR POSSESSIVE.—This dative is much used, especially in speaking of parts of the body, where in English we use a possessive pronoun, or the genitive of a noun.

Der Gott des Sieges wandelt ihr zur Seite. (Sch.)

Die Leier, die so hell erschollen,
Liegt ihm in Armen sonder Klang. (Uhland.)

Ich zog's ihm aus dem Busen. (Less.)

Er fuhr sich mit der Hand über die Augen.

Obs. Compare in French *je me suis coupé le doigt*. The application of the rule is wider in German than in French, while on the other hand the Germans are not as particular as the French in using the personal pronoun in speaking of parts of the body.

349. ETHIC DATIVE. — The dative, particularly the dative of personal pronouns, is often used, especially in popular language and in poetry, to imply that a person not otherwise necessarily mentioned has an interest in the transaction. It cannot be translated literally in modern English.

Was machst du mir
Vor Liebchens Thür? (Goe.)

The following is spoken by a nurse to her young mistress :—

Den Brautkranz flecht' ich selbst! Er soll mir wunderschön
Auf diesem art'gen Köpfchen stehn. (Wieland.)

Obs. The construction is found in Shakespeare :—

Why, then build me thy fortunes upon the basis of valour. Challenge me the count's youth to fight with him. (*Twelfth Night.*)

* Compare the use of a dative with *voir*, *trouver*, &c., in French.

The modern English use of the word *your*, by which the listener is, so to speak, drawn into the discussion, is akin to an ethic dative. "There is another of your specialists." In Latin it is not uncommon.

Quid mihi Celsus agit? I want to know what Celsus is doing?

Tongilium mihi eduxit. I have to thank him (Catiline) for taking Tongilius out of the city.

350. PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE. — Several classes of prepositions govern a dative, viz., (1) the prepositions of place, an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwiſchen, which take a dative only in answer to the question *where?* (2) nach denoting motion to, zu denoting both motion to and rest, and gegenüber rest only; (3) von, aus, denoting separation; (4) mit, denoting association and instrumentality.

351. COMPOUND VERBS.—The compounds of many simple verbs that do not of themselves govern the dative acquire the power of doing so by virtue of the prepositions or other prefixes with which they are compounded. Such prefixes are ab, an, auf, aus, bei, ein, ent, entgegen, mit, nach, vor, wider, zu. Most of these verbs supply collateral illustrations of preceding rules.

Georg hatte der Schlacht bei Dettingen beigewohnt. (Archenholtz.)

Was wollen ſie mir anhaben? (Goe.)

Sie gingen im Range den übrigen Rittern vor. (Freytag.)

Unterwerft euch dem Kaiſer.

Da flößte mir der Geiſt es ein. (Sch.)

Sie waren mein, im Angeſicht der Welt,
Mir zugeſprochen von zwei großen Thronen,
Mir zuerkannt von Himmel und Natur. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Nachahmen, nachmachen, *to imitate*, take either (1) a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing, as er ahmt ſeinem Vater Vieles nach; or (2) an accusative of the thing only; or (3) a dative of the person or something personified only.

Wollte jemand die Künste verachten, weil sie der Natur nachahmen, so läßt sich darauf antworten, daß die Naturen auch manches andere nachahmen.* (Goe.)

Obs. 2. Notice the construction of nachsehen:—

Kleine Vergehen kann man Kindern nachsehen.

352. PASSIVE OF VERBS WITH DATIVE.—When verbs that govern the dative and accusative are used in the passive, the accusative becomes the subject and the dative remains; those which govern the dative only in the active, are used impersonally in the passive and retain the dative. In no case can the dative which is governed by the active verb become the subject of the passive verb.

Dafür ist mir auch alle Freud' entrissen. (Goe.)

Namen, die nur der Tugend geweiht sind. (Less.)

Um diesen deinen lieben Sohn
Soll dir verziehen sein. (Uhl.)

Damit ist mir nicht gedient. (Rückert.)

Compare in Latin: *Non parcetur labori, nobis resistitur*, &c.

353. VERBS OF MOTION. — *To* after a verb of motion is of course naturally expressed by a preposition, zu, nach, &c.

Ich reise nach Berlin.—Komm zu mir!

Sein Flehen bringt zu keinem Retter. (Sch.)

Obs. But it often happens that, when no particular stress is laid on the motion, a dative of the person without zu, a dative of relation in fact, is found. This is especially the case with pronouns.†

Bringt ihr mir nichts von Unterwalden—nichts
Von meinem Vater? (Sch.)

---

* The modern usage is to put a dative with nachahmen in the sense of nachstreben, an accusative when it means simply to copy.

† *See* Eve and de Baudiss' French Grammar, Syntax § 155 Obs., for corresponding idiom with *venir*.

354. COMPOUNDS WITH **be.**—The remoter object of simple transitive verbs, or the dative case which follows intransitive verbs, becomes the nearer object of their compounds with be. Thus—

Er ſchenkte mir ein Buch
Er beſchenkte mich mit einem Buch.
Er dient mir—er bedient mich.

See § 212.

355. DATIVE FOR POSSESSIVE.—A dative and a possessive adjective are often used in popular language, especially in Southern Germany, instead of a genitive, as dem Vater ſein Rock, or even without article, Vater ſein Rock, *father's coat.*

Ihr ſolltet mir auch ein Bällele Butter für meinem Feldwebel ſeine Frau ſchicken. (Auerbach.)

355A. **Rufen, gelten,** &c., Rufen meaning *to call to, shout to,* takes a dative. So does gelten in the sense *to be intended for.*

Ruf' ihr! Sie ſoll heraus, (call to her,) (Grillparzer).

Ich weiß, wem dieſer Seufzer gilt (for whom it is meant).

Bedeuten, *to inform,* verſichern *to assure,* followed by a clause, take accusative or dative; lohnen, *to reward,* an acc. or dat. of the person.

Chapter VIII.—Genitive Case.

356. MEANING OF THE GENITIVE. — If it be assumed that the genitive referred originally to locality, its first meaning is *from*. It accordingly denotes primarily the origin or source of anything, an idea now mostly expressed in German by the preposition von. Another way of speaking of it is "the genitive denotes adjectival additions." To understand this it is only necessary to reflect that an adjective may be formed from any noun, as *horse*, to mean *belonging to* or *connected with a horse*. The genitive case is, according to this view, such an adjective. In some languages the terminations by which adjectives are formed from nouns are the same as those of the genitive.

The genitive is most frequently dependent on another noun; but it may also be governed by a verb, an adjective, or a preposition. In many cases the genitive governed by a verb in older German has been superseded by a preposition and its case.

357. GENITIVE DEPENDING ON A NOUN.—The genitive depending on an ordinary noun may be—

(1.) Subjective, closely allied to which is the possessive Genitive.

(2.) Objective.

(3.) The partitive Genitive.

(4.) The Genitive of *material*, *quality*, *definition*, &c.

358. GENITIVE OR **von** AFTER NOUNS, &c. — German, like other modern languages, tends more and more to dispense with inflexions, and therefore we find, in modern German prose, von with a dative preferred in many cases where, in older German or in poetry, a genitive seems the natural construction.

The general principle is that, to represent a genitive depending on a noun or its equivalent, von with dative is preferred in all cases where a simple genitive would have no inflexion to make it clear that it is the genitive. Thus von is used—

(1.) When the second noun has no article or adjective.

Das laute Dröhnen von Schild und Speer. (Freytag.)

compared with—

Der Zuſammenſtoß der Schilder und das geräuſchvolle Brechen leichter Speere an entgegengehaltenen Schildern. (Ibid.)

Ein ſolcher Maſſenkampf phantaſtiſch geſchmückter Kämpfer. (Ibid.)

(2.) When the second noun is the name of a town or country, even if it admit of inflexion. Thus we say not only der Koloß von Rhodus, die Straßen von Paris, but also die Straßen von Wien. This is especially the case in giving titles, as der König von Bayern. Contrast with this the poetical—Begann er zu Ägyptens König. (Sch.)

(3.) When the second noun is preceded by an indeclinable numeral, a word like allerlei, mancherlei, or an indeclinable adjective of colour, as lila, koquelikot.

Nach Verlauf von zehn Jahren.—Eine Maſſe von allerlei Sachen.

(4.) Sometimes when the second noun has a genitive depending upon it, to avoid the juxtaposition of two genitives :—

Die Geſchichte von der Erbauung der Stadt.

Especially when the Saxon genitive is used :—

Er iſt der Erbe von des Königs Thron.

(5.) In cases where there would be ambiguity, such as would arise, for instance, if the painter, the possessor, and the subject of a picture were all described by the genitive. It is usual to put von before the name of the painter, author, &c., and to use the genitive in other cases. Thus :—

Ein Bildnis von Dürer, *a likeness by Durer.*

Ein Bildnis Dürers, *a likeness of Durer.*

359. SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE. — Genitives depending on substantives derived from verbs are generally divided into *subjective* and *objective*.

The expression "Cæsar's conquest of the Gauls" reminds us of the simple sentence "Cæsar conquered the Gauls;" in which *Cæsar* is the subject, *the Gauls* the object. Now, we may attach to the noun *conquest* attributes associating it either with Cæsar or with the Gauls, or with both. The genitive *Cæsar's* used for this purpose is called the *subjective genitive*, because it makes us think of the subject of a sentence; *of the Gauls* is called the *objective genitive* because it makes us think of the object.

Of course a genitive often depends on a noun unconnected with a verb, and then the above distinction seems to fail. Practically what is called in English the possessive genitive fades imperceptibly into the subjective genitive, and may for all purposes be classed with it.

360. SUBJECTIVE AND POSSESSIVE GENITIVE. — The genitive is used as in English when one noun goes with another to point out the doer of the action or the possessor of the thing denoted by it.

Die luſtige Feſtzeit der ritterlichen Kämpfer. (Freytag.)

The above is the commonest order. The genitive, unless it be a proper name, is always accompanied by an article or adjective. With proper names the usage varies: eine Rede Cicero's or des Cicero; das Heer des Xerxes; die Thaten Friedrichs.

Obs. For the subjective and possessive genitive, and for those only, the so-called Saxon genitive (§ 290) can be used—

Mir grauet vor der Götter Neide. (Sch.)

Auch Wallenſtein iſt der Fortuna Kind. (Sch.)

361. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE. — The objective genitive is used after verbal substantives derived from transitive verbs, and represents their nearer object.

Die kleine Gunſt iſt mir des größern Glücks
Verkünderin. (Sch.)

i.e., Verkündet das größere Glück.

So die Erziehung der Kinder, from man erzieht die Kinder.

Obs. It will be obvious that the objective genitive must occur chiefly after nouns ending in er or ung, or after the monosyllabic nouns connected with the roots of verbs.

362. EQUIVALENTS OF THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.—The objective genitive is not so common in German as in English. It is, in fact, much less used in modern German than in Luther's time. Its place is taken—

(1.) By compound nouns, as Todesfurcht, Hausbeſitzer, Vaterlandsliebe, Wahrheitsliebe, Neuerungsſucht.

(2.) By a preposition and its case, especially when the objective genitive does not represent an accusative, as der Gedanke an die Heimat, die Furcht vor Geſpenſtern, die Liebe zur Freiheit. In this German much resembles English, though the prepositions used are often different.

Obs. Germans still say die Furcht des Herrn, because they quote from the Bible, but die Furcht der Strafe, des Todes is not in accordance with modern usage.

363. PARTITIVE GENITIVE. — In all languages a genitive or its equivalent is used to denote the whole from which a part is taken. In modern German prose von with the dative is preferred to the simple genitive in most of these cases. Unter with a dative is sometimes used. This genitive is used after

(1.) Nouns of number, measure and quantity.

Die Teutonen waren ein Teil des Kimbrerheeres. (Freytag.)

Eine Anzahl franzöſiſcher Soldaten. (Archenholtz.)

(2.) Cardinal numerals.

Sechzig bis siebenzig der Zurückbleibenden übergaben dem Rate eine Bittschrift. (Sch.)

Von 25,000 Pilgern retteten sich nur 3,000 in eine alte Burg. (Raumer.)

Aller guten Dinge sind drei. (Less.)—Es waren unser sechzehn. (Goe.)

(3.) Comparatives, superlatives and ordinal numerals.

Die besten seiner Helden, die lagen in Sachsen tot. (Simrock.)

Der treueste von meinen Freunden. (Sch.)

Hugo war dem Geschlechte nach der erste unter den Pilgern. (Raumer.)

(4.) Interrogative, distributive and indefinite pronouns.

Es strebe von euch jeder um die Wette,
Die Kraft des Steins in seinem Ring an Tag
Zu legen. (Lessing.)

Mehreren von den Prädikanten wurde der Prozeß gemacht, und einige von ihnen wurden sogar aufgehängt. (Sch.)

364. AFTER ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.—The partitive genitive is occasionally used after adverbs of quantity like genug, wenig, viel, mehr:—

Sollten wir nicht hoffen, daß mehr solcher Fürsten herrschen können? (Goe.)

Er fühle sich Mannes genug, einen neuen Herzenskummer zu überwinden. (Treitschke.)

Weil doch
Ein naher Krieg des Geldes immer mehr
Erfordert. (Lessing.)

But it is much more usual to put genug, &c., in apposition to the noun it is connected with.

Er hat mehr Glück als Verstand. (Proverb.)

Da sah er Eisen und Stahl genug. (Uhland.)

Obs. 1. The adjective in wer Anders—was Anders—jemand Anders—etwas Neues—nichts Neues, is really an instance of the partitive genitive. It is, however, treated as a case of apposition, and thus the regular construction is:—

Das könnte zu etwas Schrecklichem führen. (Sch.)

Obs. 2. Grimm gives the name "petrified genitive" to a genitive used almost absolutely, as in—

Erlkönig hat mir ein Leids gethan. (Goe.)

Wir trugen Liebs und Leids zusammen. (Goe.)

If these are genitives they were originally partitive genitives after words like viel; they may, however, be neuter adjectives.

365. ELLIPTICAL GENITIVE AFTER VERB.—The partitive genitive, or the dative with von, is sometimes used after verbs :—

Sorgsam brachte die Mutter des klaren herrlichen Weines. (Goe.)

Gebt uns von eurem Oel. (Luth. Bib.)

Exactly as in English—*Give us of your oil.*

366. APPOSITION FOR PARTITIVE GENITIVE.—After nouns denoting measure, and sometimes after collectives, the noun denoting what is measured is uninflected, as ein Pfund Fleisch, zwei Glas Bier, eine Menge Leute.

Obs. The second noun standing alone does not generally take the dative inflection, as mit zwei Regimentern Grenadiere (not en). When an adjective precedes it the usual declension is G. eines Fuders österreichischer Wein, D. einem Fuder —em Weine (or —er Wein), A. ein Fuder —en Wein. So eines Paares wollener Strümpfe, einem Paare wollenen Strümpfen. In less familiar combinations and when adjectives are used as nouns, the ordinary genitive is used as, 100 Kilogramm rauchlosen Pulvers, eine stattliche Reihe Abgeordneter.

367. GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR QUALITY.—Material is hardly ever expressed by the genitive proper; quality may be expressed in either way, but the dative with von preponderates in prose :—

Ein Cavalier von Kopf und Herz ist überall willkommen. (Goe.)

Man hat mich vor ein Gericht von Männern vorgefordert. (Sch.)

Unter Körben und Butten und Sachen keines Gebrauches. (Goe.)

which last is thoroughly poetical.

---

* Notice kein Federlesens, kein Rühmens machen.

Obs. 1. This genitive is often found as the appositive complement after ſein, occasionally after werden. Sometimes, as in the second example below, the genitive is used exactly as an adjective, and coupled with adjectives.

Ja, wir ſind eines Herzens, eines Bluts. (Sch.)

Zeigte ſich tapfer und mächtig und gegenwärtigen Geiſtes. (Goe.)

Er iſt von guter Herkunft.

Des Todes ſein is due to the personification of death, as in the expression Du biſt des Todes Kind. Similar phrases are Er iſt des Teufels (*unmanageable*), des Henkers (*a gallows bird*).

Obs. 2. Under this head falls the elliptical genitive dergleichen (Art understood), *of that kind, of that like;* meinesgleichen, &c., literally *something of my like.*

Eine patriotiſche Leidenſchaft, welche in unſerer geſamten Litteratur kaum ihresgleichen findet. (Treitschke.)

Obs. 3. It should be remembered that the genitive is only one way, and by no means the commonest, of expressing the idea of quality or material, &c. Adjectives and compound words are very frequently used for the purpose. Thus ein Tiſch von (or aus) Marmor, ein marmorner Tiſch, ein Marmortiſch are all equally correct. So again, we may say either ein Knabe böſer Art or ein böſeartiger Knabe.

368. GENITIVE WITH VERBS AND ADJECTIVES.—A considerable number of adjectives and verbs govern a genitive, though the tendency of modern prose writers is, whenever the reason for a genitive is not very obvious, to prefer the accusative, or to use a preposition. In poetry the genitive is retained in cases where it would be pedantic to use it in prose. The genitive in question may generally be traced to the notion either of participation or of separation, mental or physical.

369. PARTICIPATION.—Adjectives denoting *participation in*, or the reverse, and consequently those denoting *knowledge*, *habituation*, *guilt*, and their opposites, are followed by a genitive, or more commonly by an, or some other preposition :—

Und ſind die Edeln dieſes Bunds teilhaftig. (Sch.)

Nicht des Schwertes gewohnt iſt die Hand. (Sch.)

Du biſt dir nur des einen Triebs bewußt. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. Notice with bewußt, besides the genitive, the dative (like the Latin *sibi conscius*) of the person who shares the knowledge.

Obs. 2. Teilnehmen takes an with a dative; ſchuldig takes a genitive of the penalty or the crime, but an accusative of the thing owed—as er iſt mir Dank ſchuldig, der ſchweren Sünde ſchuldig; bewußt generally keeps the genitive, but sometimes takes an accusative; gewohnt is found most often with an, sometimes with an accusative, but least frequently with a genitive; the verb gewöhnen with an or zu; kundig has no construction but the genitive.

Du nahmeſt teil an meinem tiefen Schmerz. (Goe.)

Sie werden ſich an manches noch gewöhnen müſſen. (Sch.)

370. FULNESS, EMPTINESS.—Adjectives denoting *fulness*, *emptiness*, *satiety*, and verbs of *wanting*,* take a genitive or its equivalent.

Die Erde iſt voll der Güte der Herrn. (Luth. Bib.)

Ach, ich bin des Treibens müde. (Goe.)

Bedürft ihr meiner zur beſtimmten That. (Sch.)

Der Edelſte bleibt nicht der Feſſeln frei.

Mitten im Regen ermangelten wir ſogar des Waſſers.

Mein Haus entbehrt des Vaters. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Voll is often used with von. Both voll and a longer form voller are used after nouns, sometimes with a genitive, sometimes with a noun without article undeclined, as ein Kaſten voll(er) Blumen, ein Schlachtfeld voll(er) Toter.

Das Geſicht ſo kräftig und braun und voller Falten, und jede Falte voller Ausdruck. (Eckermann.)

It should be noticed that only voller is so used, not volle, volles, as one might have expected. It is a survival of the inflection of the adjective used as a predicate.

---

* Wagner, in a note to H. u. D, iv. 196—

Alles liegt ſo öde vor mir; ich entbehre der Gattin,

says that entbehren with genitive means to feel the want of for a considerable time; with accusative, for the moment.

Obs. 2. Like voll, the adjectives blos, frei, leer, ledig, often take von; satt, los, müde, überdrüssig are often found with an accusative; reich, arm, take an—

Keine Periode ist so arm an Characteren. (Freytag.)

Wohl dem, der frei von Schuld und Fehle
Bewahrt die kindlich reine Seele. (Sch.)

See also § 335.

Obs. 3. Among verbs of wanting, ermangeln always takes the genitive; brauchen, generally the accusative; bedürfen, the genitive or accusative indifferently. The impersonal es fehlt is accompanied by an.

An Kühnheit wird's euch auch nicht fehlen. (Goe.)

371. REMOVAL, SEPARATION.—Some verbs and adjectives denoting *removal* or *separation*, as berauben, *rob*, überheben, *exempt*, take a genitive, often in addition to an accusative. Under this head may be included verbs like sich weigern, sich wehren, sich erwehren, schonen, (*to keep one's hands off, spare*), sich scheuen (*to shrink from*), sich begeben, *resign* (*betake oneself from*), and several reflexive compounds of ent.

Auch der Genuß scheint eines Teils der Poesie entkleidet, welche der Deutsche so leicht um seine Freuden spinnt. (Freytag.)

Einer großen Furcht sind wir entledigt. (Sch.)

Sogar der Sultan kann der Lust sich nicht erwehren. (Wieland.)

O schone sein, mein Vater. (Wieland.)

Fast scheu' ich mich des Sonderlings. (Less.)

Obs. With many such verbs von may be used; with sich scheuen and with other verbs of *fearing*, vor; with schonen more frequently an accusative.

Von Feindesnot sind wir befreit. (Sch.)

Es schont der Krieg auch nicht das zarte Kindlein. (Sch.)

372. VERBS, &c., OF FEELING.—Verbs and adjectives denoting feelings such as *pity*, *shame*, *pride*, *repentance*, *care*, often take a genitive denoting the cause of the feeling. Many of these are reflexive, others impersonal. The impersonals take also an accusative of the person who feels:—

Sich des Bedrängten zu erbarmen. (Goe.)
Des rühme der blut'ge Tyrann sich nicht. (Sch.)
Wer erfreute sich des Lebens,
Der in seine Tiefen blickt? (Sch.)
Mein edler Feldherr, den des Blutes jammert. (Sch.)
Der Ritter, seines schönen Waffenkleides froh. (Freytag.)
Dein nicht zu achten. (Goe.)—Nehmt euch meiner an.

Obs. 1. In many of these cases the genitive may be replaced by a preposition and its case, each preposition conveying, of course, a slightly different meaning; sich freuen,* for instance, takes über or auf with accusative; sich erfreuen takes an with a dative; sich schämen über with accusative; achten an accusative or auf with accusative; genießen† often an accusative; pflegen, *to take care of*, generally takes the accusative; verbs of *wondering* prefer über with accusative; stolz takes auf with accusative.

Wie stutzte der Pöbel über die neuen Livreen! (Goe.)
Ich genieße die Gesetze. (Sch.)

Obs. 2. Hence the interjection O sometimes takes a genitive denoting the cause of the emotion.

O des Franzosen, der kein Herz dies zu fühlen gehabt hat! (Less.)

373. REMEMBERING, DESIRING. — In some languages verbs meaning to *lay hold of* take a genitive, which is often considered to be an instance of the partitive genitive. In German the usage is confined to figurative grasping; hence verbs of *remembering* (and its opposite, *forgetting*), *desiring*, *striving after*, *expectation*, *presuming to*, &c., with adjectives of similar meaning, take a genitive, often superseded in prose by a preposition and its case.

---

* Man freut sich über das Geschehene; am Gegenwärtigen; auf das Künftige oder dazu. (Sanders.)

† On the same page of Goethe's Wahlverwandtschaften one finds,—Des Lebens genießen and das früh so sehnlich gewünschte, endlich spät erlangte Glück zu genießen, illustrating very well the principle that the genitive remains in well-known phrases, while in less simple expressions the accusative is preferred. Genießen, *to eat*, takes accusative.

Sei des Todes eingedenk.—Vergiß-mein-nicht.—Ich denke dein.
Ewig werde dein gedacht.—Befleißt euch des Schreibens. (Goe.)
Sprecht, weſſen ſoll man ſich zu euch verſehen?* (Sch.)
Da ſaß ein Mann und wartete der Fähre. (Sch.)
Hat ſich der Landmann ſolcher That verwogen? (Sch.)
Seid jede Stunde des Befehls gewärtig. (Sch.)

Obs. Verbs of *hoping*, harren, hoffen, warten, prefer auf with accusative; begehren often takes an accusative or nach; the impersonal es gelüſtet takes nach; denken,†(ſich) erinnern take an with accusative, vergeſſen, accusative.

Der rohe Baſalt hofft auf die bildende Hand. (Sch.)
Laß mich
An jene goldnen Zeiten mich erinnern! (Sch.)

374. ACCUSING, REMINDING. — Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, *condemning*, *reminding* take a genitive of the thing, with an accusative of the person :—

Welcher Sünde zeiht dich dein Gewiſſen?

Mahnen, ermahnen take an with accusative; verbs of acquitting often take von.

375. ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE. — Certain adjectives, either directly derived from transitive verbs, or expressing the same idea as such verbs, take an *objective* genitive, like the nouns mentioned in § 361. Such are :—

(1.) Anſichtig, verluſtig, gewiß, habhaft, kundig,‡ &c., from anſehen, verlieren, wiſſen, haben, kennen, &c.

---

* Sich verſehen is also found with an accusative (ſich being the dative) :—

Ich hätte mir eher des Himmels Einſturz verſehen als dich.

† Denken an, or with genitive *to call to mind;* denken auf, *to excogitate;* denken von, *to have ideas about* (Was denken Sie von ihm?). It also takes a sort of cognate accusative, es, war, Arges, &c.

‡ Some of these fall equally well under § 373; adjectives denoting power over, under § 369; verluſtig under § 370. Anſichtig often takes an accusative.

(2.) Würdig, unwürdig, and the verb würdigen. So also does wert, meaning *worthy* (meaning *worth* it takes accusative, § 324).

(3.) Adjectives denoting power over, and hence verbs like ſich bemächtigen:—

Ich bin des Wegs nicht kundig. (Sch.)

Und als der Herre mein anſichtig ward. (Sch.)

Die Franzoſen hatten ſich des Meeres verſichert. (Archenholz.)

376. ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS. — The genitive of nouns is used, either alone or with an adjective, to form adverbial expressions:—

(1.) Of time when:—

Morgens, abends, des Abends, jedenfalls, anfangs, much as we sometimes say "of a morning," "o' nights," but heute Abend.

(2.) Of manner:—

Doch ſchnellen Schritts müßt ihr vorüber eilen. (Sch.)

So alles Ernſtes, *in all seriousness;* ſtehenden Fußes, *without delay;* geſenkten Hauptes, *with bowed head;* unverrichteter Dinge, *without accomplishing one's purpose* (ἄπρακτα, re infecta); guter Dinge, *in good fettle, cheerful.* Especially in phrases with Weiſe: glücklicherweiſe, *luckily*, zufälligerweiſe, *by accident.*

In the same way, forms like blindlings, eilends, vergebens, höchſtens, &c., may be accounted for, cf. §§ 187, 188.

(3.) Of place:—

Als ich nun meines Weges die neue Straße hinanfuhr. (Goe.)

Many adverbs formed in a similar way are found in English—*else, unawares, needs, twice, thrice, thence, whence* (originally written *ones, twies, thries, thennes, whennes*). Compare also the Scotch *blindlins, sidelins.* For other uses of the genitive in connection with prepositions *see* § 207.

---

* Cf. in the Biglow Papers—

So thievish they have to take in their stone walls nights;

apropos of which Mr. Lowell says—"And, by the way, the Yankee never says *o'nights*, but uses the older adverbial form, analogous to the German Nachts."

Chapter IX.—The Cases with Prepositions.

377. ORIGINAL MEANING.—Prepositions were originally adverbs of place. Many of them are still used as such, both alone and as the prefixes of compound verbs. Thus auf! means *up and be doing!* Die Sonne iſt aufgegangen, *the sun is gone up, risen.*

It has been mentioned, in speaking of the different cases, that they also once referred to locality. In some languages, in fact, case-endings can be identified with words having to do with place. As might be expected, only the most general notions of the kind have been embodied in the permanent inflexions; the more precise ideas are expressed by the adverbs of place which we call prepositions. In English we use nothing but prepositions, and do not inflect our nouns at all, except in the possessive; we can easily imagine a language in which a simple noun (*fire*, for example) should have twenty or thirty different inflexions to express *above the fire, beside the fire, from beside the fire*, &c., &c.* In many cultivated languages, especially in Greek, and to a less extent in Latin and German, a middle course is adopted. The Greek genitive, among other meanings, denotes *from* a place, the dative *at*, the accusative *to*. The word παρά means *beside*, and may be connected with any one of the three cases. We thus obtain phrases meaning *from beside..., beside..., to the side of...*. So again by using ἐπί (*up, upon*) we have phrases meaning *upon..., to upon...* This contrivance of expressing the more indefinite relations of place by cases, the more precise by prepositions, seems to have suggested itself as the necessity for accurate description came to be felt. Modern Greek and the Romance languages have gone still further, and prepositions have nearly superseded cases; † in German the middle course of the classical languages has been adopted, and that language is consequently able to express with ease shades of meaning that would require a circumlocution in English or French.

* This is in fact the case in Basque and Greenlandic, and other less civilised languages.—Farrar, Greek Syntax.

† *See* Farrar, Greek Syntax, pp. 86, 78, who quotes from the biography of Augustus his habit of using prepositions in order to be more perspicuous. He would say, for instance, *impendere in rem*, rather than *rei*, as his contemporaries. In Dutch, case-inflexions are being superseded by the use of *van* and *aan*.

378. METAPHORICAL USES.—From the local meanings of the cases and the prepositions a variety of metaphors have been drawn.

It is scarcely possible to write a sentence in English without some such metaphor, and in German their use is almost equally frequent. It is generally easy to show how any such usage is derived from the first meaning of the preposition, but more difficult to say why that preposition should have been selected rather than any other. In English and German, verbs of the same origin and meaning often take different prepositions. In the following sections, the more easily explained metaphors are simply enumerated, the more difficult have often comments attached.

379. PLACE OF PREPOSITION AND CASE IN SENTENCE.—The question will be naturally asked, What place do cases with prepositions fill in a sentence? After what has been said, that all the meanings expressed by prepositions could be rendered by case-endings, it is natural to look for an answer in the use of the simple oblique cases. A preposition and its case may then be used—

(1) to complete or define the meaning of a verb, as—I confide *in* you.

(2) to play the part of an adverb or adjective forming a distinct member of a sentence, as—he was *in* earnest; he spoke *in* jest.

(3) to act as an attribute to a noun as—a dog *in* the manger.

The use (3) is especially English; it is pretty frequent in German, but avoided in Latin, and except with *de* or *à* in French.

380. COMBINATIONS OF PREPOSITION AND ADVERB OF PLACE. — Combinations resembling our phrase *from my youth up* are common in German. Such are von Jugend auf, unter dem Tisch hervor, *from under the table*. Often, but not always, the adverb in such combinations serves as the prefix of a separable verb.

Chapter X.—Prepositions with Dative and Accusative.

381. GENERAL.—The following prepositions—

an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwiſchen,

are found with the dative or accusative, according to the meaning to be expressed. Speaking generally, with the dative they answer the question *where?* with the accusative the question *whither?* This is a better way of expressing the difference than to speak of rest and motion. For example, a dative is used in an expression like er geht im Zimmer auf und ab.

382. An denotes contact with the surface (not generally with the upper surface, which is reserved for auf); and answers to the English *on*, when not synonymous with *upon*. The opposite to it is ab, now used almost exclusively as adverb or prefix. Among its derived uses the most important are with verbs like erkennen (like *à* with *juger* in French) and with a number of verbs of which ſich freuen is an example, to take the place of a genitive of the cause of the emotion, &c. It also means *in respect of* with adjectives like arm, reich, &c.

(1.) Of place.—A picture is said to hang an der Wand, a cloud is am Himmel, a sentry stands am Thor, an der Ecke, a ring is worn am Finger, a town stands an der Grenze, an der Küſte, am Rhein (but a ship floats auf dem Rhein), guests sit an dem Tiſch (but the dishes stand auf dem Tiſch). So an der See hin, *along the sea coast*, and of the locality of a wound or pain, am Bein verwundet, *in the leg;* am ganzen Leibe zittern. So, too, when an accusative is required; we hang the picture an die Wand, a hat an den Nagel, we write an die Schultafel, *on the blackboard;* we go an den Bahnhof, *to the station;* an den Fluß. Often with bis, das Waſſer reicht ihm bis an den Mund.

(2.) Metaphors closely connected with juxtaposition.—Lehrer an einem Gymnaſium, *teacher at a public school;* Diener am Worte, *preacher of the Word;* die Reihe iſt an mir, *it is my turn;* es liegt an mir, *it rests with me;* was an Euch iſt, *as far as in you lies;* an meiner Stelle, *in my place;* an der Tagesordnung, *the order of the day;* am Leben, *in life, alive;* am Tode, *at death's door;* es iſt an dem, daß er ſpricht, *he is on the point of speaking.* When a word is repeated, an is used to express *closeness* or *rapid succession;* Bank an Bank gedränget, *tier upon tier;* Pfeiler an Pfeiler zerbrach, *buttress after buttress gave way.* Similarly with accusative, an den Tag kommen, *to come to light;* es geht an dich, *they are at you (attacking you);* er greift mir an die Ehre, *he assails my honour;* ſchreiben an Einen, *to write to;* einen Brief an mich *a letter to me;* ſich halten an, *stick to.*

(3.) Of time.—With a dative it is equivalent to *on;* am erſten Juli; am folgenden Tage; with accusative it is mostly used with bis: bis an den Morgen tanzen.

(4.) An with dative, like *by* in English, denotes the point of contact, where anything is touched or grasped: am Kleide halten. Hence it is very frequently applied to intellectual grasping, as *à* in French with *reconnaître, juger,* &c., den Baum an ſeinen Früchten erkennen, *by its fruits;* ich höre am Geläute, daß heute Sonntag iſt, *by the church bells.*

(5.) With verbs of thought, feeling, or any sort of activity, an denotes with dative that to which the thought, &c., attaches itself, and hence its *cause* and has to a great extent superseded the simple genitive. Thus leiden an, *suffer from (a malady);* ſterben an, *die of;* zweifeln an, *doubt about;* ſich freuen an, Luſt haben an, *take pleasure in;* altern an, *grow old in contemplating;* ſich rächen an, *to be revenged on.* Somewhat similar are phrases like es iſt nichts Wahres daran, *there is no truth in it;* ich habe an dir einen rechten Freund, *I have a true friend in you.** With a few verbs, such as glauben, *believe,* denken, *think,* erinnern, *remind,* gewöhnen, *accustom,* ſchreiben, *write,* where the idea of turning the thought, &c., towards predominates, an takes an accusative. (*See* § 373.)

(6.) An with dative means *in respect of,* with adjectives like arm, reich, ähnlich, ſtark, jung, fruchtbar, überlegen, nouns like Mangel, Überfluß, and verbs of *resemblance, gain, loss, want,* &c., especially the impersonals es fehlt, es gebricht. Thus—arm am Beutel, *poor in purse;* was

* Notice the difference between ich habe viel an ihn verloren *I lost a great deal to him* (at cards, &c.), and ich habe viel an ihm verloren, *he is a great loss to me.*

er an Geld gewinnt, verliert er an Ehre, *what he gains in money, he loses in honour;* es fehlt ihm nicht an Kühnheit, *he is not wanting in boldness.* Notice an sich, an und für sich, *in itself, of itself,* zwölf an der Zahl, *twelve in number.*

(7.) With numerals an is used with accusative, to mean *about, upwards of;* an die zehn Thaler, *about ten dollars.*

(8.) For the use of an to form the superlative, *see* § 304.

383. **Auf** with dative means *upon*, in contact with the upper surface of; with accusative *to upon, on to.* It is cognate with the English *up;* as prefix and adverb it is used in that sense. In speaking of place, it is often used where *in* or *at* is preferred in English. Among its derived uses the commonest is to denote that at which we aim or on which we rely.

(1.) Of place it is used as the English *upon*, auf dem Boden liegen; auf einem Pferde sitzen; auf einem Fuß stehen; &c. It is further used where we should prefer *in* or *at*—(α) auf dem Schloß, auf der Kanzel, *in the pulpit*, auf der Stube, * &c., where the idea is *up at;* (β) auf dem Markt, auf dem Lande, auf dem Felde,† auf seinem Gut; auf dem Schloßplatz wohnen, where the notion is of being in an open space. Hence auf der Börse, auf der Realschule, auf dem Gymnasium (speaking of the pupils, an being used of the teacher), auf dem Rathhaus, auf der Post, auf der Straße (*in the open street*), because these are public establishments, accessible to all. But directly the notion of *enclosing* or of *privacy* appears, in is preferred, as in seinem Hause, im Walde, in der Stadt, ein Haus in unserer Straße, Notice in der Schule, opposed to zu Hause; auf der Schule, opposed to im spätern Leben, and ein Kind auf dem Arm, compared with einen Korb an dem Arm tragen.

Exactly the same principles apply to the accusative—auf den Tisch stellen, legen, auf den Markt, auf die Post, auf den Kirchhof (but in die Kirche) gehen, auf die Bäume klettern, auf die Erde fallen.

---

* Especially in speaking of the women's apartments upstairs in older German.

† Er ist auf's Feld, &c., is common; supply gegangen. So, er muß auf's Land.

(2.) Simple metaphors.—Auf der Reiſe, auf der Jagd, auf einer Hochzeit, einem Ball ſein;* auf friſcher That ertappen, *to catch in the act;* auf ſeiner Hut ſein, *to be on one's guard;* auf der Stelle, *on the spot;* er iſt auf meiner Seite, *he is on my side, my partizan* (but er geht an meiner Seite, *he walks by my side*); auf beiden Augen blind, *blind of both eyes.*

So with accusative: Auf die Uhr ſehen; einen Preis auf den Kopf ſetzen; auf eine Hochzeit, einen Ball einladen; was hat das auf ſich? *what does that involve?* auf einen losgehen, *to rush upon, attack;* es kommt auf mich an, *it depends upon me;* es kommt darauf an, zu wiſſen....., *it is most important to know.*†

(3.) Of time it is used with the accusative only. (*a*) Of duration, generally into the future; auf drei Jahre mieten; auf ewig; drei Viertel auf acht. (*β*) Of a future time, for which an appointment is made: auf den nächſten Landtag verweiſen, *adjourn to the next diet*, auf Wiederſehen, *au revoir*, and especially where exactness is thought of: ſei auf die Stunde da! *be there to the minute!* auf den Schlag kommen, *to arrive as the clock strikes.* (*γ*) Sometimes less rigorously, auf den Abend, meaning little more than *in the evening.*

(4.) Auf is used with an accusative to denote immediate succession (*close upon* or vulgarly *on the top of*).

Auf blut'ge Schlachten folgt Geſang und Tanz. (Sch.)
Der Baum fällt nicht auf den erſten Hieb. (Proverb.)

Hence expressions like auf meine Bitte, *on my request;* auf einen bloßen Verdacht hin, *on mere suspicion*, and Schlag auf Schlag; Mann auf Mann, where *rapid succession* is the prominent idea. Auf einmal, *at once, directly*, comes under this head.

---

* It must be remembered that darauf, worauf, are not used in all cases where auf is used with the nouns which da, wo represent. Thus—Er war auf der Realſchule, und ich kam auch dahin. Wir gehen auf den Ball; mein Freund wird auch da (or dort) ſein. Werden Sie nicht auch hingehen? (Sanders.)

† The idea is that matters come to a crisis *at me, at that point*, and so everything depends upon me, upon that.

(5.) The most fertile source of metaphors in connection with auf is its use with an accusative case to denote the direction of one's activity *on to* or *up to* something. This applies first to simple extension, as auf or bis auf einen gewiſſen Punkt, bis auf den letzten Pfennig bezahlen, and then to its employment with verbs and adjectives, denoting *aim, preparation, expectation, reliance, influence*, &c. Some of the most obvious of such verbs and adjectives are trachten, zielen, *aim*; hören, *listen*; hoffen, *hope*; achten, *give heed*; Einfluß üben, *exercise influence*; rechnen, ſich verlaſſen, *rely*; gefaßt, vorbereitet, *prepared*; halten, *set value on*; neidiſch, eiferſüchtig, *jealous*; ſtolz, *proud*.

So kann ich auf Herzog Alba's Zeugnis mich verlaſſen. (Sch.)

Der Gefangene iſt ſtolz auf ſeine Unſchuld. (Goe.)

Es iſt nun einmal meine Anſicht, und darauf lebe und ſterbe ich.

Among illustrations of this use of auf may be noticed, Anſprüche auf, *claims to*; auf den Tod ſitzen, *to lie in prison awaiting death*; auf Chriſtum taufen, *to baptize in the name of Christ*; auf das Evangelium ſterben, *to die in the faith of the Gosvel*; auf Ehre, *on my honour*; auf Tod und Leben kämpfen, *to be engaged in a life and death struggle*; auf eig'ne Hand, auf ſeine eigene Verantwortlichkeit, *on one's own responsibility*; auf meine eigenen Koſten, *at my expense*. Denken auf, *to devise, excogitate*, differs from denken with an or a genitive, *to bear in mind*.

(6.) Auf with an accusative, forms adverbial expressions of manner with Art, Weiſe, as well as with the neuter of the superlative (§ 191), auf unſere Weiſe, *in our way*; auf Sklavenart, *like a slave*. Notice also auf Deutſch, auf gut(es) Griechiſch. In the case of Weg, auf takes the dative; auf dieſem Wege, *in this way*.

(7.) Auf with accusative is also used distributively: auf den Kopf, *per head*; auf je 1000 Einwohner, *per thousand*.

384. Hinter, behind.

(1.) Of place:—der Hund liegt hinter der Thür; legt ſich hinter die Thür; hinter Schloß und Riegel; ſich hinter den Ohren kratzen.

(2.) Simple metaphors; vier Wochen hinter einander, *consecutively*, hinter eine Sache kommen, *to make out*; hinter das Licht führen, *to deceive*.

(3.) *From behind* may be rendered by hinter.... hervor, herauf, &c.

Der Mond ging hinter einem Vorgebirge herauf. (Goe.)

When her alone follows, the meaning is *close behind*, as wir waren hinter dem Feinde her, *we were at the enemy's heels*.

385. **In**, *in* with dative, *into* with accusative, but rather more accurately used than in English.* It forms many adverbial expressions, and like the English *in* often means *in respect of* with adjectives, &c.

(1.) Of place — im Zimmer ſitzen, leſen, &c.; in die Stadt kommen; in den Fluß werfen; in die Erde vergraben; im Schatten; im Dunkeln; im Freien, *in the open air*, &c.; im zweiten Stock, *on the second floor*; ſich in den Finger ſchneiden, (but am Finger ſchneiden); in die Hände klatſchen, *to clap one's hands*; in eine Mauer Breſche ſchießen, *to make a breach in*; einem etwas in die Seele drücken, *to bring home to a person*; Öl in das Feuer gießen; Arm in Arm.

Jeder ſollte in dem Kreiſe bleiben, in den ihn Geburt und Erziehung geſetzt. (Freytag.)

(2.) Simple metaphors;—just as in English surrounding circumstances are treated like a place, we find im Plural, in dieſem Tempus (*tense*), in Gefahr ſein, im Begriffe zu ſprechen, *just going to speak*; in Not geraten, *to fall into distress*; ſich in Alles finden, fügen, *to adapt oneself to any circumstances*; in Alles willigen, *to consent to anything*; in etwas eingreifen, *meddle with*; in Erfüllung gehen, *to be fulfilled*. Hence after words denoting *change*, &c.. Waſſer in Wein verwandeln, in Stücke zerteilen, ins Deutſche überſetzen, in Samen ſchießen, *run to seed*; verliebt in eine Dame, *in love with*.

Sie verkleideten ſich in Helden des ſagenhaften Königs Artus. (Freytag.)

(3.) Of time—generally like the English, to mean at some time or other within a period—as im Jahre 1879, im Sommer, in der Gegenwart.

In negative sentences it cannot be rendered by *in* in English—ich habe ihn in drei Jahren nicht geſehen,† *I have not seen him for the last three years*.

---

* There is one exception to the strict rule of the accusative being used when *in* means *into*, viz., with the verbs ankommen, eintreffen, it is correct to say: der Fürſt iſt in der Reſidenz angekommen, eingetroffen. In is more freely used than in English before the names of towns, as die Peterskirche in Rom, *St. Peter's at Rome*.

† So the Latin use of *in* is more extensive than the English:—In paucis diebus, quibus haec acta sunt, Chrysis moritur (*Ter.*). *Within the few days in which these transactions fell*, i.e., *a few days after these transactions*.

In speaking of future time, in is used as in English — in zwei Stunden reise ich ab, *two hours hence;* heute in acht Tagen, *this day week;* im voraus, *beforehand.*

With accusative—er geht ins zehnte Jahr, bis tief in die Nacht, in den Tag hineinleben, *to take no thought for the morrow.*

(4.) In is often used very much as an (§ 382) to mean *in respect of*, with verbs like wetteifern, *to vie;* sich irren, *to be mistaken;* and adjectives like erfahren, *experienced;* ähnlich, *similar;* geübt, *practised*, &c. A little reflection will often show which metaphor is more appropriate.

(5.) In is also used to denote the *form* or *manner*, looked upon as a set of circumstances among which the action or thing spoken of finds a place. This occurs after verbs, and in the formation of compound adverbs; in Öl malen; in Thränen gebadet; in Bildern sprechen, *figuratively;* in meinem Namen handeln; im Schritt, *at a walk;* im Trab, *at a trot;* im Ernst, in der That, im höchsten Grade, im Durchschnitt, *on the average;* im Gegenteil, *on the contrary;* im Anzuge, *coming on* (of a storm, &c.); in großem Maßstabe, *on a large scale.* The English *in* is used in exactly the same way.

(6.) With accusative, to express direction of measurement, as—Zehn Fuß in die Höhe, in's Gevierte, *ten feet high, ten feet square*, i.e. *extended into height, into squareness;* bis in die niedern Ämter, *down to;* bis in das Einzelne, *to the minutest detail.* The dative is also used in this way—zehn Fuß in der Höhe.

386. **Neben,** (properly in eben, *on a level with*) expresses *nearness* without contact; as contrasted with bei, it expresses *at* or *to the side of* (not before or behind), while bei denotes nearness generally.

(1.) Of place: — er sitzt, wohnt, geht, &c., neben mir, setzt sich neben mich, &c.

(2.) Simple metaphors: — neben der Wahrheit vorbeigehen, *to be beside the mark.* Also often in the sense of *besides, in addition to*, as —

Du sollst keine anderen Götter neben mir haben.

387. **über**, *over* or *above*, does not necessarily denote contact with, like auf, except when the notion of spreading over comes in. It easily passes into the meaning *beyond*, and is frequently used metaphorically of the object over which thought or emotion passes or spreads itself. It is used

(1.) Of place. With a dative it denotes either (*α*) *rest above*, as über der Thür hängt ein Gemälde, über dem Buchhändler wohnen, *to live over the bookseller's* or (*β*) less frequently *rest on the other side of*, as er wohnt über der Grenze, *he lives on the other side of the frontier;* über Bord, *overboard.*

Similarly with accusative it denotes either (*α*) *motion to a place above;* hänge das Gemälde über die Thür; or (*β*) *motion over anything so as to cross it;* über einen Graben springen, über einen Fluß ſetzen, nach Petersburg über Hamburg reiſen, *via Hamburg*, and even when the verb of motion is omitted, and can be easily supplied, as er iſt ſchon über die Brücke, *he is already over the bridge* (supply mentally gegangen); er iſt ſchon über alle Berge, *he is far away by this time*, or (*γ*) *motion so as to cover;* der Fluß ergoß ſich über die Ebene, ein Tuch über den Tiſch breiten.

The use of the cases with über is not always obvious at first sight. Thus ein Vogel fliegt über dem Hauſe, *is hovering above the house*, but not so as to pass from one side to the other, while über das Haus means that it crosses the house in its flight. So again compare:—Der Berg ragt über die Wolken empor, *rises above the clouds*, with—Der Berg ragt über den Wolken hervor, *stands out above the clouds.*

(2.) Of time, denoting duration, with an accusative:—über Nacht bleiben, *to stay over the night*, &c. In this sense it generally stands after its noun—Ich werde den Sommer über hier bleiben. More frequently it denotes *at the end of, after* a certain time: heute über acht Tage, *this day week;* wenn ich übers Jahr lebe, *if I live over the year.*

(3.) Simple metaphors:—etwas über ſich nehmen, *to take upon one self;* das geht über meinen Verſtand, *that passes my comprehension;* über die Schnur hauen, *to overstep due limits;* über alle Beſchreibung ſchön, *beautiful beyond description;* über die Gebühr, *beyond what is due* (because previous motion is thought of); über der Arbeit liegen, *to stick to one's work;* über ſeinen Büchern hocken, einſchlafen, *pore over, go to sleep over;* über die Klinge ſpringen laſſen, *to put to the sword*, übers Ohr hauen, *to cheat, take in.*

(4.) From phrases like those last quoted we easily pass to the idea of *during, while occupied with*, when a dative is required, as über der Mahlzeit sprechen, *to talk at dinner-time*. With verbs meaning *to forget, to neglect*, sometimes a dative, sometimes an accusative is used.

Das stille Schloß zu Hadamar ward über diesen Herrlichkeiten ganz vergessen. (Riehl.)

Beide vergaßen über die Freude des Kampfes gänzlich die Folgen. (Freytag.)

(5.) The commonest metaphorical use of über is with an accusative after verbs, &c., denoting, *pleasure, vexation, astonishment* and other emotions, as well as after verbs of *speaking* and *thinking*.* It will be remembered that many similar verbs take an, from rather a different point of view. Perhaps it may be said that the use of über is the more general, that of an being limited to cases where it has become idiomatic.

Hernach mußt' ich lachen über den holzgeschnittenen Egmont. (Goe.)

Das Mitleiden, welches das Geschrei über körperliche Schmerzen hervorbringen sollte. (Lessing.)

So ein Urteil fällen über, *pronounce judgment on*, Erkundigungen einziehen über, *make enquiries about*, &c.

Note the elliptical use in the titles of books (Latin *de*) :—

Laokoon, oder über die Grenzen der Malerei und Poesie.

Hence compared with (4) die Gäste plauderten über dem Essen, *over their dinner, at dinner*, but über das Essen, *about the dinner*; die Räuber gerieten in Streit über der Teilung des Raubes, *while dividing the spoil*, but über die Teilung des Raubes, *about the division of the spoil*.

(6.) To denote *mastery* or *superiority*, über takes an accusative :—

Die Sonne wird über die Wolken Herr.

Unstreitig müssen sich die Gesetze über die Wissenschaft keine Gewalt anmaßen. (Lessing.)

Der Jünger ist nicht über seinen Meister.

So der Aufseher über die Arbeiter; verfügen über, *dispose of*.

---

* We have already seen the difference between denken an and denken auf. Denken über means *to have such and such an opinion of a person*, and does not express, like the other phrases, merely a single act of thought.

(7.) Über with accusative also means *upon, after*, in the sense of one thing heaped upon another, *on the top of*, as Ausnahmen über Ausnahmen, *exceptions upon exceptions;* eine traurige Botschaft über die andere, *the news of disaster after disaster.*

388. **Unter,** is used in the senses both of *under* and *among*, with both cases.

(*a*) Meaning *under*.

(1.) Of place—unter einem Baum sitzen, unter einen Baum sich setzen, er tauchte unter das Wasser. Notice unter dem Tische hervor, *from under the table;* er hat mir das Betttuch unter dem Leibe wegg ezogen, *he drew the sheet from under me.*

(2.) Simple metaphors, especially *under the authority of* or *under the disguise of;* unter dem Joche eines Tyrannen, unter der Larve der Freundschaft, unter dem Siegel der Verschwiegenheit, *under seal of secrecy;* unter der Hand, *underhand, secretly;* Arbeit unter Händen haben, *to have work in hand;* unter vier Augen, *tête-à-tête;* sich unter den Schutz der Gesetze begeben, *to put oneself under protection of the laws;* unter dieser Bedingung, *on this condition;* unter der Regierung Karls des Fünften.

(3.) Meaning *below, less than*—ein Kind unter zehn Jahren; das ist unter aller Kritik, *beneath criticism.*

(*β*) Meaning *among*, and to be distinguished from zwischen, which, as its derivation shows, refers to two things, and is translated *between.*

(1.) Of place—unter den Zuschauern sitzen, sich unter die Tänzer einschleichen, unter Räuber geraten, *to fall among thieves;* es ist Wasser unter dem Weine; and passing easily to simple metaphors — unter streitenden Parteien Frieden stiften; and its use instead of the partitive genitive § 363. Notice the tendency to the accusative where possible—er gehört unter die wenigen Rechtschaffenen; ich rechne ihn unter meine Freunde.

(2.) Of accompanying circumstances, with dative, as unter der Predigt, *during the sermon;* unter vielen Thränen, *with many tears.*

Obs. In unterdessen, *meanwhile*, unterwegs, *on the way*, it seems as if unter sometimes took a genitive. Most probably these are adverbial forms.

(4.) From phrases like those last quoted we easily pass to the idea of *during, while occupied with*, when a dative is required, as über der Mahlzeit sprechen, *to talk at dinner-time*. With verbs meaning *to forget, to neglect*, sometimes a dative, sometimes an accusative is used.

Das stille Schloß zu Hadamar ward über diesen Herrlichkeiten ganz vergessen. (Riehl.)

Beide vergaßen über die Freude des Kampfes gänzlich die Folgen. (Freytag.)

(5.) The commonest metaphorical use of über is with an accusative after verbs, &c., denoting, *pleasure, vexation, astonishment* and other emotions, as well as after verbs of *speaking* and *thinking*.* It will be remembered that many similar verbs take an, from rather a different point of view. Perhaps it may be said that the use of über is the more general, that of an being limited to cases where it has become idiomatic.

Hernach mußt' ich lachen über den holzgeschnittenen Egmont. (Goe.)

Das Mitleiden, welches das Geschrei über körperliche Schmerzen hervorbringen sollte. (Lessing.)

So ein Urteil fällen über, *pronounce judgment on*, Erkundigungen einziehen über, *make enquiries about*, &c.

Note the elliptical use in the titles of books (Latin *de*) :—

Laokoon, oder über die Grenzen der Malerei und Poesie.

Hence compared with (4) die Gäste plauderten über dem Essen, *over their dinner, at dinner*, but über das Essen, *about the dinner*; die Räuber gerieten in Streit über der Teilung des Raubes, *while dividing the spoil*, but über die Teilung des Raubes, *about the division of the spoil*.

(6.) To denote *mastery* or *superiority*, über takes an accusative :—

Die Sonne wird über die Wolken Herr.

Unstreitig müssen sich die Gesetze über die Wissenschaft keine Gewalt anmaßen. (Lessing.)

Der Jünger ist nicht über seinen Meister.

So der Aufseher über die Arbeiter; verfügen über, *dispose of*.

---

* We have already seen the difference between denken an and denken auf. Denken über means *to have such and such an opinion of a person*, and does not express, like the other phrases, merely a single act of thought.

(7.) **Über** with accusative also means *upon, after*, in the sense of one thing heaped upon another, *on the top of*, as Ausnahmen über Ausnahmen, *exceptions upon exceptions;* eine traurige Botschaft über die andere, *the news of disaster after disaster.*

388. **Unter,** is used in the senses both of *under* and *among*, with both cases.

(*a*) Meaning *under.*

(1.) Of place—unter einem Baum sitzen, unter einen Baum sich setzen, er tauchte unter das Wasser. Notice unter dem Tische hervor, *from under the table;* er hat mir das Betttuch unter dem Leibe wegg ezogen, *he drew the sheet from under me.*

(2.) Simple metaphors, especially *under the authority of* or *under the disguise of;* unter dem Joche eines Tyrannen, unter der Larve der Freundschaft, unter dem Siegel der Verschwiegenheit, *under seal of secrecy;* unter der Hand, *underhand, secretly;* Arbeit unter Händen haben, *to have work in hand;* unter vier Augen, *tête-à-tête;* sich unter den Schutz der Gesetze begeben, *to put oneself under protection of the laws;* unter dieser Bedingung, *on this condition;* unter der Regierung Karls des Fünften.

(3.) Meaning *below, less than*—ein Kind unter zehn Jahren; das ist unter aller Kritik, *beneath criticism.*

(*β*) Meaning *among*, and to be distinguished from zwischen, which, as its derivation shows, refers to two things, and is translated *between.*

(1.) Of place—unter den Zuschauern sitzen, sich unter die Tänzer einschleichen, unter Räuber geraten, *to fall among thieves;* es ist Wasser unter dem Weine; and passing easily to simple metaphors — unter streitenden Parteien Frieden stiften; and its use instead of the partitive genitive § 363. Notice the tendency to the accusative where possible—er gehört unter die wenigen Rechtschaffenen; ich rechne ihn unter meine Freunde.

(2.) Of accompanying circumstances, with dative, as unter der Predigt, *during the sermon;* unter vielen Thränen, *with many tears.*

Obs. In unterdessen, *meanwhile*, unterwegs, *on the way*, it seems as if unter sometimes took a genitive. Most probably these are adverbial forms.

389. **Vor*** answers to the various senses of the English *before*. Its chief derived uses are those with verbs of shrinking from, &c., and to denote a cause, especially a hindering cause. It is used:—

(1.) Of place—*in front of*, with dative; *to the front of*, with accusative. Taillefer ritt vor den Herzog, *before the duke, into the duke's presence;* but vor dem Heer, *at the head of the army;* Perlen vor die Säue werfen, *to cast pearls before swine.*

(2.) Of time—

(*a*) Before a word denoting a point of time, vor ſieben Uhr aufſtehen, vor Morgen kann er nicht hier ſein, es geſchah vor deiner Geburt, vor dem, *formerly.*

(*β*) With words denoting a *space* of time it is rendered *ago*, as, das geſchah vor acht Tagen, vor Kurzem, *a week ago, a short time ago.* These expressions mean literally *before* (*the last*) *week*, (*the last*) *short time.* Distinguish carefully from ſeit acht Tagen, *for the last week.* Notice with a genitive termination vor Alters, *a long while ago*, vordeſſen (rare), *formerly.*

(3.) Simple metaphors, as *in the presence of, in preference to;* vor Gericht (dat.) erſcheinen, *to appear before the court;* vor Gericht (acc.) fordern, *to summon before the court;* vor Anker liegen, *to lie at anchor;* vor Gott und der Welt ſtrafbar, *guilty in the sight of God and the world;* das iſt mir vor vielen andern Dingen lieb, *dear above many other things;* vor den Kopf ſtoßen, ſchlagen, *bewilder, insult*†; vor ſich (acc.) hinſprechen, *to talk to oneself;* jemandem vor der Naſe die Thüre zuſchlagen, *slam in one's face;* das geht vor ſich, *that is going on.*

(4.) As a person who runs away from another is *before* his pursuer, vor einem fliehen, davonlaufen is a natural expression. The metaphor is transferred to cases of *shrinking from, fear*, and the like; erſchrecken, einen Abſcheu haben vor einer Sache, *to have a horror of;* vor einem etwas verbergen, *to hide from;* das Herz verſchließen vor, *to close the heart against;* einen vor der Gefahr warnen, *to warn against.*

---

* Vor and für were originally identical, and had a local meaning with, of course, others derived from it. About the sixteenth century a distinction began to be made, and vor retains that part of the common signification which relates to place and time; für is limited to certain derived senses.

† Properly *strike at the face, give a slap in the face to.*

(5.) Like the Latin *prae*, **vor** often denotes *cause*, especially in negative sentences the hindering cause: Er ſieht den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht,* *he cannot see the wood for trees.* Vor must be distinguished from aus; it denotes a cause, in fact, *in the presence of which* we are passive, as, er iſt vor Liebe krank geworden. If a *motive* to action be spoken of, aus must be used, as er hat ſich aus Liebe für ſie aufgeopfert. Hence we have phrases with vor, like vor Freude ſpringen, *to jump for joy;* vor Hunger ſterben, *to die of hunger;* er kann vor Lachen nicht zu Worte kommen, *he cannot speak for laughing.* After vor and aus in this sense the article is omitted.

390. **Zwiſchen,** *between*, see remarks on unter. It is used: —

Of place—ſie ſitzt zwiſchen mir und meinem Bruder, ſetzt ſich zwiſchen mich und meinen Bruder; of time—es geſchah zwiſchen Weihnachten und Oſtern. And in simple metaphors — Streit, Frieden, Unterſchied zwiſchen.

---

* A proverb, meaning that a person cannot take a general view of a subject because he is too much absorbed in the details.

Chapter XI.—Prepositions with Dative only.

391. **Aus**, *out of*, opposite of in, *into*, denotes motion out of an enclosed space. Von, which most nearly resembles it in meaning, is opposed to an or auf. Aus is used

(1.) Of place—aus dem Waſſer ſteigen, aus dem Wald, dem Garten, dem Bette ꝛc. kommen, because we say im Waſſer, im Bette ꝛc. ſein. But vom Tiſche aufſtehen, vom Pferde ſteigen ꝛc., because we say am Tiſche, auf dem Pferde ſitzen. Again, as we say nach Paris gehen, we say von Paris kommen unless we specially mean *out of Paris, from within the walls of Paris*, when aus would be used.

(2.) Simple metaphors—aus dem Elſaß gebürtig, *a native of Alsace* (but von Straßburg); ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten, *a tale of olden times;* aus dem Schlummer wecken; aus vollem Halſe ſchreien, *to scream with all one's might;* aus einer Krankheit Kräfte ſammeln, *to get up one's strength after an illness.*

(3.) Of material—with or without verbs of forming, but more generally with; as, die Form aus Lehm gebrannt; aus der Not eine Tugend machen, *to make a virtue of necessity.*

Von denoting material reminds us less strongly of the process of manufacture. It means merely *derived from* in a general way. But aus gives us the picturesque idea of a statue, for example, being *in* the marble, before it is *brought out* by the artist. Notice was wird aus dir werden? *what will become of you* (lit. *be made out of you*)?

(4.) As in is used after verbs of *changing*, to express the new state, so aus may be used to denote the original condition:—

Aus Freunden können Feinde werden.

(5.) Of the motive of an action, in which sense it must be distinguished from vor, see § 389; aus Liebe, aus Mangel an Geld etwas thun, *for love, for want of money.* We use *out of* in the same sense.

(6.) Instead of the partitive genitive; but von or unter is generally preferred in modern German. See § 363.

392. **Außer,** *outside, out of* (old English *without*), denoting *rest*. It is opposed to in with a dative, as aus generally is to in with an accusative.

(1.) Of place—außer den Mauern, *outside the walls;* außer dem Lager, *without the camp* (Bib.). In this literal sense außerhalb is now more usually employed.

(2.) Simple metaphors—der Kranke iſt außer Gefahr, *out of danger;* außer Stande ſein, *to be unable;* außer Frage* ſetzen, ɔc. *to put beyond dispute;* außer der Reihe, *out of turn;* außer Atem, *out of breath;* außer ſich ſein, kommen, ſetzen, *to be,* &c., *beside oneself.*

(3.) Meaning *except.*

Ich verkaufe, außer dem Garten, alle meine Grundſtücke.

(4.) Occasionally *besides, not including.*

Außer dem Lohne verlangt er auch gute Behandlung.

Obs. 1.—Außer is often used in this sense as a conjunction, and then takes the same case after it as before it:—

Niemand kam mir entgegen, außer ein Unverſchämter. (Lessing.)

Ich fand niemand, außer einen Unbekannten.

Obs. 2. In the single expression außer Landes, it takes a genitive, and occasionally it is found with an accusative, as außer alle Maßen (Lessing) [in modern German über alle Maßen]; außer allen Zweifel ſetzen, *to put beyond doubt.*

393. **Bei** † denotes nearness without actual contact, and is used especially to denote proximity to persons. In its ordinary use with a dative, it denotes *rest* only; to express motion, zu, an, &c., must be used. It is used far more in its metaphorical senses than in its strictly local meaning.

(1.) Of place—bei Schmidt wohnen, etwas kaufen ɔc.; der Arzt ſitzt bei dem Kranken, bei Tiſche, *at table;* Gewehr bei Fuß! *ground arms!* Especially used in speaking of the sites of battles, die Schlacht bei Lützen, Roßbach ɔc.

---

* But davon kann keine Rede ſein, *it is out of the question.*

† The most probable affinity of bei, be is with Greek *ἀμφί*, Latin *amb-*.

Obs. In older German, *e.g.*, in Luther's Bible, bei with an accusative, meaning motion, is not uncommon, as man begrub ihn bei seine Väter, *they buried him with his fathers.* Goethe has occasionally: Ich bitte mich bei Sie zu Gaste, Filangieris kommen dieser Tage bei mich zu Tische. The phrases bei Seite setzen, rufen ꝛc., are relics of this use.

(2.) Simple metaphors—bei sich haben, *to have about one, in one's pocket, at hand,* &c.; du bist nicht bei dir, *not in your senses, master of your faculties* (but bei dir, *at home*); bei sich behalten, *to keep secret;* beim Spiel verlieren, *to lose at play;* es steht bei ihm, *it rests with him;* bei Goethe, *in Goethe's works;* bei Gott ist Erbarmen, *there is mercy with God;* bei Zeiten, *betimes;* bei seite setzen, *to set aside:* bei den Säugetieren, *in the mammalia.*

Bei den Barbaren war der Heroismus eine helle fressende Flamme.
(Lessing.)

(3.) One of the commonest uses of bei is in speaking of contemporaneous events or circumstances. It may be used either of a single event, as—

Beim Aufgang der Sonne erbleichen die Sterne.

or of the general circumstances, as in the phrases bei Nacht, bei schönem Wetter, bei Licht, *by candlelight.*

This leads to its use in many sentences to express some circumstance that is a help, or a hindrance, or in some way accessory to the principal action mentioned. It must be variously translated in English, as the examples will show:—

Da es nun fast allen Höfen bei dem besten Willen an Geld fehlte.
(Archenholz.)

Zwar hatte schon Philipp der Gütige, bei zunehmender Bevölkerung dieser Länder, auf eine Erweiterung der Hierarchie gedacht. (Sch.)

Das Betreten dieser Wiesenwege ist bei zwei Franken Strafe verboten.

(4.) Just as we say *in good voice, in luck,* &c., where we mean to denote that *good voice, luck,* &c., are part of the circumstances about us, so in German they use bei Stimme, bei guter Gesundheit, bei Atem, bei Geld, bei Sinnen ꝛc.

(5.) Bei is used, much as an is, to denote the exact point of contact by which we grasp anything either physically or intellectually; bei den Ohren halten, beim Halse fassen, beim Namen nennen, *to call by name;* and even bei der langen Nase erkennen, though in this metaphorical sense an is more usual.

(6.) With verbs of swearing bei, like English *by*, meant originally *in the presence of* the person or thing by which one swears.

(7.) It forms adverbs of manner, with words of number: bei Haufen, bei Tauſenden, bei Tropfen (=tropfenweiſe).

Fieber, welche die Fremden bei Tauſenden wegrafften. (Niebuhr.)

(8.) So with repeated nouns: Mann bei Mann, *man after man*; Pfeiler bei Pfeiler zerborſt und brach, *buttress after buttress*.

Bei weitem means *by far*; bei weitem nicht, *by no means, far from being*.

(9.) In one or two expressions: bei Heller und Pfennig bezahlen, *to pay to the last farthing*, bei seems to mean the same as bis auf, bis zu: er wurde bei Haut und Haar geſtraft, *he was punished within an inch of his life*.

(10.) Bei is used very frequently in approximate estimates of number; it seems, in that case, to hover between the meanings of a preposition and an adverb, as the Latin *circiter*.

Dann traten bei dreißig Seminariſten nach und nach auf. (Goe.)

Die Zeichnung iſt bei ſieben Fuß lang. (Goe.)

394. **Binnen,** *within, between prescribed limits*, used only of time. Its local meaning is retained in compounds, Binnenſee, *an inland lake*; Binnenverkehr, *internal communication* (distinguished from communication with foreign countries).

395. **Entgegen,** generally after its case, *to meet*; hence, *in opposition to*, a frequent but not necessary meaning.

Ihr ſteigt hinauf, dem Strom der Reuß entgegen. (Sch.)

Auf, dem Feind entgegen!

396. **Gegenüber,** after its case, *opposite to, over*; hence, *against*. Hence also *in the presence of, in dealing with*.

So hätte ich mich dieſen braven Leuten gegenüber vergeblich bemüht.

It is occasionally divided —

Gegen Frankfurt liegt ein Dorf über, heißt Sachſenhauſen. (Goe.)

397. **Gemäß,** after its case, *according to, agreeably to*, as its derivation (from meſſen, Maß) implies.

398. **Mit*** refers in the first instance to companionship, association, &c., with persons: mit Einem kommen, eſſen, arbeiten, &c., a slight prominence being given to the person who kommt, ißt, &c., mit einem. Hence it is used to denote the instrument, accompanying circumstances, &c.

(1.) In speaking of actions in which more than one person must take part, even when the idea of co-operation is dropped: mit einem ſprechen, ſtreiten, einen Vertrag machen, &c. So too Mitleid mit einem haben, *to have compassion on;* mit ihm gleichen Alters ſein, *to be of the same age with;* mit Tagesanbruch aufſtehen.

(2.) To denote the instrument (like our *with*), because the instrument may be looked upon as co-operating with the agent. Its use is often with difficulty distinguished from that of durch, which, for a different reason, also denotes the instrument:—

Durch dieſe (*i.e.*, unſere Schwerter) erwarben wir unſere Landbeſitzungen und mit dieſen werden wir ſie vertheidigen.

In this passage the change of the preposition seems to give the idea of trusting in their swords for the future, of something like a friendship with them, after they have served so well as mere instruments. So mit Namen nennen, *to call by name;* mit der Poſt ſchicken, mit der Eiſenbahn reiſen.

(3.) Of accompanying circumstances, mit offenen Armen aufnehmen; mit Lebensgefahr, *at the peril of one's life.* Hence its use to form adverbial expressions: mit Würde (=würdig) etwas ertragen; mit Fleiß (=fleißig) arbeiten, &c.

(4.) From the idea of association mit often comes to mean little more than *in relation to.* Thus mit einer Sache fertig ſein, *to have finished off,* mit einer Sache zufrieden, *satisfied with;* es iſt aus mit ihm, *it's all up with him.*

399. **Nach** is the same word as nah, *near*, and is used especially of motion to a place, and derived ideas of direction, &c. Applied to time it means *after*, and has also the metaphorical meanings associated with that signification.

---

* Like μετά, from the root of *medius*, μέσος, *middle.*

(1.) Of place, either (*α*) *to*, of motion to places, not to persons: nach Hauſe gehen, nach Berlin reiſen (but zu dem Kaiſer); or (*β*) *towards*, of implied or suggested motion: das Haus liegt nach Süden, *the house has a southerly aspect*. In this sense it is often followed by hin or zu: nach dem Meere hin wird das Land flach. *towards the sea;* nach der Straße zu, *towards the street*.

(2.) It is very frequently used to denote the *aim* or *direction* of an effort, and is then rendered by *at* or *after:* nach einem ſchlagen, ſtechen, nach einer Sache greifen, fragen, forſchen, ſich ſehnen, nach dem Arzte ſchicken, (but zu dem Arzte gehen); einem nach dem Leben trachten, *to seek to take a man's life;* nach Brot ſchreien.

(3.) Of time or order, *after*—nach Tiſch, nach fünf Uhr, nach dem Kaiſer iſt er der erſte.

(4.) Hence, just as we speak of shaping our conduct *after* a model, &c., nach naturally means *according to*. In this sense it sometimes follows its case: nach Belieben, *as you please*, meiner Meinung nach, *in my opinion:* nach Noten ſingen, *to sing by notes;* die Tochter artet nach der Mutter, *takes after her mother*, or literally *forms her character according to;* nach Wein ſchmecken, *to taste of wine;* einen nach ſeinen Thaten beurteilen, *by his deeds;* ich kenne ihn nur dem Namen nach, *by name*, and elliptically, *to judge by, considering*—

Seinem Alter nach ſollte er klüger handeln.

Notice je nach in combination, *according to*, with a distributive sense.

400. **Nebſt, ſamt,** *with;* nebſt from neben, denotes simply companionship, and may be replaced by the conjunction *and*; ſamt is stronger.

If we say, der Vater geht nebſt ſeinen Kindern ſpazieren, we simply state that both father and children go; if mit ſeinen Kindern, we at once begin to think of the father going to take care of the children. Again, ich habe einen Brief nebſt Päckchen auf die Poſt geſchickt, means that a letter and parcels were sent together, but implies no connection between them. But einen Brief mit Päckchen would imply that the letter had something to do with the parcels, containing an invoice of them, for instance. Still another word might have been used, viz., ſamt, which would have meant that letters and parcels were to be considered as one. So den Baum ſamt den Wurzeln ausrotten, *root and all*. Mitſamt, which is but rarely used, is still stronger than ſamt:—

Das Schiff mitſamt dem Steuermann verderben. (Sch.)

Obs. Neither nebſt nor ſamt has any of the derived meanings of mit of the instrument, &c. For these mit is indebted to the notion of subordination it involves on the part of the noun governed by it.

401. **Seit,** *since,** denotes the whole duration from a certain epoch till the point of time we are speaking or thinking of, as ſeit grauen Jahren, ſeit Menſchengedenken.

It should be remembered that ſeit does not merely mean after a given date, but also denotes duration of time. It is sometimes rendered in English by *from*, but it often requires some change of the sentence to express its meaning fully. For example ſeit and its case, like ſchon lange, *jamdudum*, are often put with a present tense, where in English we should put a perfect. (*See* § 440.)

Seit dieſem Tage ſchweigt mein Mund (*has been silent*).

402. **Von,** *from*, originally of motion from a place without any idea of starting from a closed space; it is, in fact, opposed to zu, an, auf, nach, not to in. It takes in many cases the place of a genitive, as *de* in French, and is the regular preposition to denote the agent with a passive verb. It also, like *de*, may mean *in respect of*.

(1.) Of place—von Paris nach London reiſen, vom Dache fallen, vom Pferde ſteigen, von einem ſich entfernen von Haus zu Haus.

(2.) Simple metaphors—von Worten zu Schlägen kommen; von Sinnen kommen, *to lose one's wits*; von einer Sache befreien; ein Brief von meinem Bruder; etwas von einem hören, lernen, erhalten; von Herzen lieben, *to love heartily*. er ſpricht von der Leber weg, *he speaks unreservedly, does not mince matters*.

(3.) Of time—von Oſtern bis Pfingſten, von Tag zu Tag. In this sense (and occasionally in others) it is often used with some word like auf, aus, &c., following the noun—von Kindheit auf, *from childhood* (from my youth up); von dieſem Standpunkt aus, *from this point of view*; von vorn herein, *from the beginning*; von da an, *thenceforth*; von heute an, *from this day forward*, &c. Notice especially the odd expression von Alters her, *from of old*, where s is probably the genitive or adverbial termination, so common in adverbs of time, or else is due to the ellipsis of Zeiten.

* Identical with the English *sith*, so that *since*=*sithence*=ſeither.

(4.) A very common use of von is as a substitute for the genitive. This is fully discussed in the chapter on the genitive, § 358.

(5.) Von is also the regular preposition for expressing the *agent* after passive verbs. The agent is generally a person or animal; but it is not unusual to personify inanimate objects or abstractions. Thus we speak not only of being *praised, blamed, educated, loved*, &c., von einem, but of a tree being struck vom Blitz, of plants being killed vom Frost, of a person being attacked vom Fieber. The agent is also rendered by von after an active infinitive with laſſen, translated by a passive in English, as: ſich von einem Künſtler malen laſſen. Notice also phrases like das verſteht ſich von ſelbſt, *it is self-evident*, &c.; and ein Gedicht von Schiller, *a poem by Schiller*.

(6.) Like *of* in English to describe the subject of conversation, thoughts, &c.—von einer Sache ſprechen, überzeugt ſein, cf. § 387.

(7.) The use of von as a title of nobility dates from the time when great families took their names from their estates. Herr von Falkenſtein, for example, meant Lord (or owner) of Falkenstein. It is now often used without any historical reference, and has been prefixed, as a compliment, to family names, Friedrich v. Schiller, J. W. v. Goethe, &c. It is often written v.

(8.) *In respect of*, klein von Geſtalt, *small of stature;* ein Preuße von Geburt; ein Philolog von Fach, *a philologist by profession*.

403. Zu means *to*, speaking of persons, and in certain idiomatic expressions, of places. It also, in similar expressions, means *at*. But its chief use is metaphorical, to render *to* or *for*.

(1.) Of place—

(*a*) *to* before the names of persons, or nouns or pronouns denoting persons, nach being used before the names of places and nouns and pronouns denoting places; we say nach Berlin, nach dieſem Schloſſe, but zu mir, zu dem Kaiſer.

It is also used in certain recognized expressions to denote motion to a place, especially a place not accurately defined, as: zu Felde ziehn, *to take the field* (in a campaign); zu Grunde gehn, *to be ruined;* zur Kirche gehn, zu Bette gehn; von Haus zu Haus, *from house to house*.

(β) *at, on, by*, also in a limited number of common expressions; zu Hauſe, *at home*;* zu Land, *by land*; zur See, *on the sea*; zur Seite, zur Rechten, zur Hand, &c. It was formerly used before the names of towns, but in is now preferred in prose, zu being still often found in poetry. Hence its employment in naming inns (*at the sign of*): der Gaſthof zum roten Roß, *the Red Horse Inn*; der Wirt zur Krone, *the landlord of the Crown*.

(2.) Of time—

(*a*) to denote a point of time. Chiefly limited to phrases in which Zeit or Mal occurs, and to a few other familiar expressions — zur rechten Zeit, zum erſten Male, zu Mittag eſſen; zu Zeiten, *at times*; zu Pfingſten, zu Weihnachten, zu Michaelis.

(β) *up to*, especially with bis — bis zur Stunde habe ich nichts von ihm gehört.

(3.) Simple metaphors—zur Rechenſchaft ziehn, zur Rede ſtellen, *to call to account*; zu Rate ziehn, *to take into counsel*; zu Werke gehn, zu Schaden, Ehren kommen; and where direction only, rather than actual motion is thought of—zu einem ſprechen, ſich wenden, *turn round to*.

(4.) As anything added to another is thought of as brought to it, we have phrases like Brot zum Fleiſch eſſen, Waſſer zu Wein gießen; gehören zu, *to belong to, form part of*,† &c., and the compounds hinzuthun, dazuthun, *to add*. As relations between things imply addition, verbs like ſich verhalten are often followed by zu; vergleichen, &c., take, on the other hand, the simple dative, or mit. Notice zudem, *moreover*.

(5.) It denotes the *purpose* or result of any action or occurrence, the *destination* in fact, to employ an English word applicable both to motion and to intention. Thus Tuch zu einem Kleide, zu etwas beſtimmen, ihr zu Liebe etwas thun, *to do something for love of her*; zu nichts taugen, *to be good for nothing*; zur Lehre dienen, *to serve as a lesson*; zu allgemeiner Zufriedenheit, *to the general satisfaction*; zum Narren haben, *to make a fool of*‡; das ſteht dir zu Dienſten, *it is at your service*; ihm zu Gunſten, *in his favour*; zu Gaſte bitten, *to invite*.

---

* Notice zu Hauſe, *at home*—nach Hauſe, *home*, of motion.

† But gehören applied to possession governs a simple dative.

‡ A phrase with the same meaning, zum Beſten haben, denotes originally *to treat as for the public benefit* and so *to make a butt of*.

The most common use of zu in this way is with werden, machen, &c., where an appositive complement stands in English. (See § 276.) Notice too zu eigen machen, *to make one's own*; zu etwas verhandeln, *to change into*.

(6.) To form adverbial expressions, zu Fuß, zu Pferd, zu Wagen, zu Tausenden, zur Hälfte, zum Teil, zum Glück, zum Beispiel (z. B.), *for instance*; and very often in defining the *price*—ein Brot zu zehn Pfennigen, *a penny loaf*.

(7.) With or without bis, of extent—bis zur Raserei lieben, *to be desperately in love with*; zum Tode betrübt, *sad even to death*; (bis) zum Verwechseln ähnlich, *as like as two peas*.

Chapter XII.—Prepositions with Accusative only.

404. **Durch**, is identical with English *through*, *thorough*, and is also an adverb, as in durch und durch. It is also used of the instrument as *per* in Latin.

(1.) Of place :—

(*α*) *through*, in at one side and out at the other ; er ſtieß ein Loch durch die Wand; er drängte ſich durch die Dornenhecke. Hence the simple metaphors durch das Fenſter ſehen, *to look out of the window ;* einem durch die Finger ſehen, *to connive at*, &c.

(*β*) Like its English equivalent, durch passes from the meaning of *diametrically through*, to that of *all about*, durch ganz Europa verbreiten.

(2.) Of time—to denote duration, mostly placed after its case ; die ganze Nacht durch or hindurch ; unſere durch Jahre geführte Correſpondenz.

(3.) Like the Latin *per*, it is used after verbs to denote the instrument or means, and differs slightly from mit. (*See* § 398.)

Durch drei Linien läßt ſich ein Triangel zeichnen. (Kant.)

Herrſcht er nur erſt durch mich, ſo herrſch' ich bald durch ihn. (Lessing.)

405. **Für** referred originally to place, and was identical with vor. It is now confined to certain derived meanings, and is very like the English *for*.

(1.) The nearest approach to local meaning* is in phrases like Schritt für Schritt, *step by step* (*one step before another*) ; Mann für Mann, *man by man ;* Wort für Wort, *word by word.*

Its derived meanings are :

(2.) *Instead of*, with an implied notion of advantage, by which it is distinguished from ſtatt, anſtatt; für jemanden bezahlen, arbeiten.

* The local meaning of für is retained in the word fürbaß=vorwärts, and in the phrase für und für.

Das Mühlrad von der Flut gerafft
Umwälzt ſich für und für. (Sch.)

Hence in speaking of price, für zehn Mark kaufen. Dafür, connecting sentences comes to mean *on the other hand, as a set-off*.

(3.) Hence with verbs of *esteeming*, &c., nearly equivalent to *as*; Jemanden für einen Narren halten, *to think a person a fool*; ſich für einen Künſtler ausgeben, *to give oneself out as an artist*, &c. *See* also § 278. Under this head comes was für, in which, however, für governs no case.

(4.) *For the benefit of, on behalf of*; für das Vaterland ſtreiten, Futter für das Vieh, für jemanden ſprechen, beten. Hence often meaning little more than *in relation to*: Sorgen für die Zukunft, *anxiety for the future*; ich für meinen Teil, *I for my part*; fürs erſte, *in the first place*; für ſeine Jahre, *for his age, considering his age*, &c.

406. **Gegen** AND **wider** both mean *against*, but gegen has derived meanings, *towards, in comparison with*, &c., which do not belong to wider.

(1.) Both are used, both literally and metaphorically, of motion or action in an opposite direction to a thing or person; wider implying an active resistance which is not involved in gegen. Thus gegen den Strom ſchwimmen is simply *up stream*, wider den Strom adds the idea of struggling with it, making head against it.

Of course there are cases in which they are used indifferently. Thus compare—

Wider der Vögte harten Druck zu klagen. (Sch.)

Ich Rufer rufe die Klage gegen die Miſſethäter. (Goe.)

Gegen has other meanings, with which wider has nothing in common viz.:—

(2.) *Towards*, of place and time; das Haus liegt gegen Weſten (or Abend), *the house faces the west*; gegen zwanzig Jahre alt, *getting on for twenty*; gegen Mitternacht.

(3.) With words denoting relations, such as love, friendship, duty, &c.; Liebe gegen, freundlich geſinnt gegen, Pflichten gegen Gott.

(4.) Denoting *exchange*; gegen einen Schein erhalten, *to receive for a bill (of exchange)*; gegen Bezahlung, *for payment*.

(5.) *In comparison with*; er iſt gegen dich ein Rieſe, *a giant compared with you*.

407. **Ohne, ſonder.** — Ohne is opposed to mit, ſonder to ſamt. Besides the difference thus implied, it should be observed that ſonder is almost obsolete, except in poetry.

Ohne used once to govern a dative, as is seen in the adverb ohnedem

408. **Um** is akin to Greek *ἀμφί*, Latin *amb-*:—It has all the senses of the English *about*, and further corresponds to *by* in comparisons.

(1.) Of place—*about, round*, so as to encompass. It is used indifferently of rest or motion, though, as motion is implied in the very idea of encircling, it takes the accusative: um den Tiſch ſitzen, ſich ſetzen; ein Tuch um den Hals haben, binden. Hence um ſich haben, *to have about one, in one's company.*

(2.) Of time when—*about*, um Mitternacht, um dieſelbe Zeit, &c.; in speaking of the hours of the day, *at*, without any idea of inexactness, um drei Uhr.

(3.) *In reference to*, expressing the object about which thought, feeling, or action busies itself. Wie ſteht es um ihn? *how is it with him?* es iſt um ihn geſchehen, *it's all up with him;* ſich um einen verdient machen, *deserve well of;* um etwas fragen, ſtreiten, werben, &c. It may often be rendered by *for*, especially with bitten, bewerben, ſpielen, &c. It denotes less distinctly than für an interest in the thing in question.

(4.) With comparatives (or in implied comparisons) to denote by how much one thing exceeds or falls short of another. Thus er iſt um einen Kopf größer als ich, *he is a head taller than I;* ich habe mich um zwei Mark verrechnet. *I have made a mistake of two shillings;* um ſo viel beſſer, *so much the better;* um ein Haar wäre ich gefallen, *I was within an ace of falling* (lit. *I should have fallen in respect of a hair's breadth*).

(5.) It denotes *exchange*, and is nearly equivalent to für in phrases like um jeden Preis, *at any price;* um Lohn dingen, um Brot arbeiten Aug' um Auge, Zahn um Zahn.

(6.) With kommen, bringen, ſein, there are some curious phrases: um's Leben bringen, *to deprive of life*, er iſt um ſeinen guten Ruf (gekommen), *he has forfeited his honour.* Possibly the idea is that of going all round about, without ever reaching.

(7.) Einen Tag um den andern means *every other day, i.e.*, one day going round or omitting the second.

Chapter XIII.—Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives.

409. PRONOUNS OF ADDRESS.—The three pronouns Du, Ihr, Sie, and under certain circumstances Er, Sie (*fem. sing.*) are used in addressing a single person under various conditions. The following are the chief rules :—

410. Du (the grammatical 2nd singular) is used not only as the English *thou*, but also in familiar intercourse. We have it thus—

(1.) In the Bible, and in the most elevated lyric and dramatic poetry, in Goethe's Tasso, and Schiller's Braut von Messina, for instance ; in fables, and in conversations between personages very far removed from modern life.

(2.) In addresses to the Supreme Being.

(3.) In familiar conversation between members of the same family and intimate friends, and sometimes to servants ; also in addressing children and animals.

(4.) If addressed to persons with whom one is not on familiar terms, du becomes contemptuous.*

* In a letter Du, addressed to one's correspondent is written with a capital ; in records of conversations, as in a novel or play, with a small letter.

411. **Ihr** was formerly the pronoun used in courteous intercourse.* Hence the characters of plays like Götz von Berlichingen, Wilhelm Tell, &c., use **Ihr** in speaking to each other, unless they are on such terms as to warrant the use of **Du**.† **Ihr**, as a proper plural, is used in speaking collectively to persons who would be addressed individually as **du**. Thus **ihr** is used in sermons, and in talking to the junior classes of a school. **Sie**, on the other hand, is used in addressing Parliament, a public meeting, &c.

412. **Sie** (literally *they*, i.e. *your graces*) is now used in ordinary intercourse between all persons not entitled to say **Du** to each other.

413. **Er** (or **Sie**, singular, if addressed to a woman) was formerly often used in addressing inferiors, or by the lower classes among themselves.

In Minna von Barnhelm, the host of the inn and Just (von Tellheim's servant) call each other **Er**, and both use **Sie** (singular) in speaking to Minna's attendant. It is nearly obsolete. Frederic the Great called even his generals **Er**. The pronouns **Er**, **Sie**, **Sein**, **Ihr**, **Sich** in this sense are written with capitals.

Obs.—In English we have not gone to the extreme of respect implied in **Sie**, nor have we, on the other hand, retained the familiar **Du** in friendly intercourse. In Shakespeare, the use of *thou*, both in familiarity and in contempt, may be noticed. In the Tempest, Prospero constantly says *thou* to Miranda: while she replies with the more respectful *you*. In Twelfth-night, Sir Toby Belch, urging Sir Andrew Aguecheek to send a challenge to Viola, says: "If thou *thou'st* him some thrice, it shall not be amiss."

---

* Luther's father usually called him **Ihr** after he had taken his master's degree. When he heard of his son's having become a monk, he wrote a severe letter to him, in which he styled him **Du**.

(Guesses at Truth.)

† On the other hand, **du** and **Ihr** are used indiscriminately in Goethe's Egmont between Machiavelli and the Regent, Egmont and Alba, &c. In Don Carlos, Carlos asks Posa to call him **du** and to drop the more formal **Sie**.

Thou is also used in several recorded conversations of the same century by parents to their children, and superiors to inferiors, *e.g.* by Sir Thomas More to his daughter :—"Dost thou not see, Megg, &c.;"—and by Fisher to his executioner :—"I forgive thee with all my heart."

The use of *tu* in French is very like that of Du in German (*tutoyer* =duzen). For its use as a term of contempt, notice Jean Valjean's reflections in Les Misérables, when he is about to give himself up to justice, and become a convict again. *Etre tutoyé par le premier venu* is one of the miseries he pictures to himself.*

414. Es REPRESENTING A NOUN, &c.—The neuter pronoun es is used in answering questions or in referring to a foregoing sentence, to represent a noun of any gender, an adjective, or any expression equivalent to a noun, such as the infinitive of a verb.

Ich habe verdient zu ſterben, und ich will's. (Sch.)

Reding. Und nicht fürwahr in Friede wird er weichen.
Stauffacher. Er wird's, wenn er in Waffen uns erblickt. (Sch.)

Nur dramatiſch, ausdrucksvoll, ein treuer Spiegel des Inhalts ſollen ſeine Verſe ſein, und ſie ſind es. (von Treitschke.)

Obs. The French *le*, which is really a neuter, is similarly used.

Lucile. Je ne veux point me marier.
Jourdain. Je *le* veux, moi, qui suis votre père. (Molière.)

415. WHEN Es CANNOT BE USED FOR A NOUN. —Strictly speaking, the neuter pronoun is sometimes out of place, and a masculine or feminine (derſelbe, dieſelbe after the

* In Spanish, where *Usted*, a contraction meaning *your graces*, is the recognised form of address, *vos*, the 2nd plural, is used as a term of contempt. When Philip II. left the Netherlands, he said angrily to Orange : "*No los estados, mas vos, vos, vos.*" Not the States but you (are the cause of trouble). So Alva, says Motley, addressed every one with the depreciatory second person plural. For further discussion *see* Guesses at Truth, vol. i., pp. 163—190, whence several of these examples are taken.

verb, or der or die before it) ought to be used. This happens when the noun whose place the pronoun takes is simply used to *denote*, not to connote or describe.

Thus to the question—

Biſt der Waldfried, der Sohn des Bezirksförſters?

(Auerbach.)

the answer is not, ich bin es, but ich bin derſelbe or der bin ich. In fact, es and derſelbe in answering questions nearly correspond to was and wer in asking them. The distinction is, however, by no means always observed, as for example in Faust, Mephisto says—

Wollte nach Frau Martha Schwertlein fragen.

and Martha replies, Ich bin's. For the French parallel see Eve and de Baudiss's French Grammar, Syntax, § 56.

416. Es INTRODUCTORY.—Es is sometimes used after transitive verbs, with a sentence or an infinitive in apposition to it, and cannot be translated in English.

Du wagſt's, dein Antlitz einem guten Menſchen
Zu zeigen. (Sch.)

Die That bewährt es, daß ſie Wahrheit ſprich. (Sch.)

Thus, like the compounds of da, dadurch, daran, mentioned below, es acts as a link to connect sentences, a link dispensed with in English.

417. Es WITH IMPERSONALS.—The impersonal use of verbs mentioned in § 268 requires further notice. Our impersonals *it rains, it thaws*, &c., are limited in number. In German es can be used with almost any verb, and gives a sense of vagueness and even of mystery that is very effective in poetry.

Es is thus used both as subject and as accusative with infinitive. The following instances are all from Schiller's Der Taucher:—

Und es wallet und brauſet und ſiedet und ziſcht.
Und ſtille wird's über dem Waſſerſchlund,
In der Tiefe nur brauſet es hohl.
Und hohler und hohler hört man's heulen.

418. Es PLEONASTIC.—Es is often used pleonastically, like the English *it* in *to lord it, to hook it, to fight it out*, and the French *le céder, l'emporter.**

Sehe jeder, wie er's treibe. (Goe.)

So hab' ich's gehalten von Jugend an. (Sch.)

Similar phrases are du wirst es kriegen, *you will catch it*; es (sich) mit einem verderben, *to quarrel with*; es einem sagen, *to give a person a bit of your mind.*

419. Sich RECIPROCAL.—Sich, the reflexive pronoun, is sometimes used as a reciprocal pronoun, and must then be translated *one another.*

Kleist schildert den ererbten Haß zweier verwandten Häuser, deren Kinder sich lieben. (von Treitschke.)

Seht ihr dort die altergrauen
Schlösser sich entgegenschauen? (Sch.)

Obs. Many French reflexive verbs supply instances of the same transition, *se battre, se disputer*, &c.

420. HIS, ITS.—Ambiguities in the use of *his*, which are of frequent occurrence in English, may be avoided in German by adding eigen to sein when it refers to the subject of the sentence, and by substituting dessen for it when it refers to something else.

Thus instead of saying—

Karl rief den Vater und seinen Sohn.

we should say either seinen eigenen Sohn or dessen Sohn, according as we meant Charles' son or the father's, unless there were something in the context to make it clear.

Lavater, sagte Goethe, glaubte an Cagliostro und dessen Wunder. (Eckermann.)

Dessen may represent either the objective or possessive genitive; sein only the possessive.

Dessen is still more frequently used for *its.*

Um der Rückkehr zum alten Hofwesen zu trotzen, hatte er bei dessen faulstem Auswuchse wieder angefangen. (Riehl.)

* Eve and de Baudiss' French Grammar, Syntax, § 57.

421. **Dieſer, jener.**—When the demonstratives dieſer, jener, are contrasted with each other, dieſer denotes the nearer of two objects to the speaker, jener the more remote from him. If they refer to things already mentioned, dieſer denotes the latter, jener the former.

Als die drei jungen Leute nach Delphi kamen, brachten die königlichen Prinzen dem Apollon koſtbare Weihgeſchenke dar, Brutus aber ſchenkte dem Gott ſeinen hölzernen Reiſeſtab; jene wußten nicht, daß in dem hölzernen ein goldener Stab verborgen ſei. (Stoll.)

Hence if references be made only to the principal person in the foregoing sentence, dieſer is used.

422. RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.—The relative agrees with its antecedent (the noun or pronoun to which it refers) in gender and number; its case is determined by the requirements of its own clause.

Der Eindruck, den ich auf ihn machte, kam zu ſchnell

Es giebt Unthaten, über welche kein Gras wächſt.

Ein Schloß mit hohen, weiten Gemächern, in deren einem ſo etwas geſchehen iſt.

423. ANTECEDENT OF THIRD PERSON.—When the antecedent is a pronoun of the third person, der or derjenige is generally used.

Wohl dem, der ſein Haus bereitet hat. (Riehl.)

In a few cases where definite persons spoken of before are referred to, the *personal* pronouns of the third person may be used.

Ihnen, die mit dem Volke ſelbſt geworden ſind, war der Stempel des Werdens tief eingeprägt. (Mommsen.)

Er, der von Jugend auf dem Streit gedient,
Beherrſcht ihn jetzt. (Goe.)

424. ANTECEDENT A PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a personal pronoun of the first or second person (or such a pronoun implied in a vocative), and the relative is in the nominative case, der is used, not welcher,

and two constructions are possible, both different from the usage of other languages.

(1.) The personal pronoun is repeated after der, and the verb agrees with it. This is the normal construction.

Du, die du alle Wunden heileſt,
Der Freundſchaft leiſe zarte Hand. (Sch.)

Er wird uns alle, die wir an ſein Glück befeſtigt ſind, in ſeinen Fall herabziehen. (Sch.)

(2.) The relative stands alone, as in other languages, but is followed by a verb in the third person.

Seid mir gegrüßt, befreundte Scharen,
Die mir zur See Begleiter waren. (Sch.)

Was kann ich thun, der ſelber hülflos iſt? (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Notice the following, showing the relative as third person:—

Und ich, der ihre (not meine) beſten Freunde nachſagen, daß die Grazien nicht an ihrer (not meiner) Wiege geſtanden haben. (Freytag.)

Obs. 2. If the relative be not in the nominative, der is still used, not welcher, but of course the personal pronoun is not repeated.

Obs. 3. After ich bin es, &c., the second construction is used, *i.e.* der or welcher with the third person.

Obs. 4. The concord of the relative in person is scarcely used in modern German. The following is an example of it:—

Mann mit der ſcharfen Senſe, der den Säugling
An der weinenden Mutter Buſen mäheſt. (Stolberg.)

Obs. 5. In oblique oration, the pronoun of the 3rd person is often repeated after the relative, representing a pronoun of the 1st or 2nd person in direct oration.

Thus:—

Wie kannſt du, die du es ſelbſt geſehen haſt, das bezweifeln?

becomes

Er wunderte ſich, wie ſie, die ſie es ſelbſt geſehen habe, das bezweifeln könne.

Obs. 6. There are a few instances of welcher used with a pronoun as antecedent, but it is rare.

425. **Der** IN GENITIVE.—In the genitive, except occasionally in the genitive feminine and plural, the relative der is used, and if dependent on a noun, always precedes it. The noun is then without article.

Ich will Ihnen einen Wunsch aussprechen, durch dessen Erfüllung Sie mir große Freude machen werden. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Eine vornehme, gottselige Witwe, deren Lebenswandel jedermann in Frankfurt bekannt gewesen ist. (Freytag.)

Der Friede, dessen ich erwähnte, und worauf Sie zurückkommen. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Obs. It is important to remember that the German construction in this case is like English and not like French. The reason why an article is inserted in French after *dont*, is that *dont* is really a relative adverb, and connects the two sentences without affecting any particular word; dessen, on the other hand, is attached to the word as mein or dein would be, and therefore an article would be superfluous.

426. **Der** OR **welcher.**—The following are cases in which der must be used, and not welcher.

1. In the genitive masculine and neuter singular under all circumstances, and generally in the genitive feminine singular, and the genitive plural (§ 425).

2. When the antecedent follows or is omitted (§ 428), though in this case wer is more used than der.

3. When the antecedent is a personal pronoun of the first or second person (§ 424).

4. When the antecedent is the interrogative welcher or wer, der is nearly always used.

Wer erfreute sich des Lebens,
Der in seine Tiefen blickt? (Sch.)

On the other hand welcher must be used when the relative is an adjective.

Zur Widerlegung welcher groben Rüge
Des Waffenrechtes Wohlthat ich begehre. (Schlegel.)

427. **Der** OR **welcher** CONTINUED.—The use of der or welcher in cases not specified in the last section is very much a matter of individual taste. The following remarks may be useful:—

(1.) der is far more used than welcher in a simple, homely style.*

(2.) In the masculine singular, both nominative and accusative, der occurs much more frequently than welcher.

(3.) in welchem, nach welchem are often used to avoid confusion with the conjunctions indem, nachdem.

(4.) The dative plural denen is much more common than welchen.

(5.) welcher is used (1) in phrases like die, welche die That begangen, to avoid the triple repetition of die, (2) in cases where, preceding a noun without article, der might seem as first sight to belong to it, and (3) generally in one of two relative clauses, one of which is subordinate to the other.†

428. ANTECEDENT OMITTED. **Der, wer.**—When the antecedent is omitted or follows, *he who, they who*, &c., are represented by der or wer, not by welcher. Der then generally means *the known person who;* wer, *any one who;* was *anything which.*

Wer weiß? der diesen Nathan besser kennt. (Less.)

Wer dazu stimmt, erhebe seine Hände. (Sch.)

Wer den besten seiner Zeit genug gethan, der hat gelebt für alle Zeiten. (Sch.)

Den du hier siehst, das ist der Karl nicht mehr,
Der in Alcala von dir Abschied nahm. (Sch.)

Obs. Occasionally in poetry wer is used after an antecedent.

Den schreckt der Berg nicht, wer darauf geboren. (Sch.)

---

* In one of Auerbach's Dorfgeschichten, of about twenty pages, I could not find a single instance of welcher.

† In going through the first fifty pages of Freytag's Bilder, and the first thirty of Schiller's Thirty Years' War and Mommsen's History of Rome, I find a great preponderance of der over welcher in the nominative and accusative masculine singular, and in the dative plural, but Freytag uses welche, welches a good deal more than die, das; Schiller uses them about equally, and Mommsen employs das much more frequently than welches.

429. **Was** AS RELATIVE. Was as a relative means *that which*, and has either no antecedent at all, an indefinite antecedent, or one which will bear repeating. It very closely resembles in its use the French *ce qui*, *ce que*. It is employed—

(1) without antecedent:

Nehmen Sie, was ich da ſage, ja nicht als einen Vorwurf auf. (W. v. Humboldt.)

(2) with an indefinite word like alles, das, for antecedent:

Nur muß man durchaus auf das Verzicht thun, was man gewöhnlich Verſtehen nennt. (Goe.)

Es ſchadet gar nichts, wenn einiges, was Sie darin erzählen, in eine andere Periode gehört. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Ich verſäumte etwas, was ſich nicht nachholen läßt. (Ibid.)

(3) when the logical es is antecedent:

Die Reformation war es größtenteils, was die nordiſchen Mächte in das Staatsſyſtem von Europa zog. (Sch.)

(4) with a sentence or even the idea of a single word for antecedent:

Sie leidet jetzt ſehr an den Augen, was ſie unglücklicherweiſe ſehr am Leſen und Schreiben verhindert. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Lange Jahre hatte der König in ihm einen Philoſophen bewundert, was er nicht war. (Freytag.)

where was refers to the idea implied in einen Philoſophen.

430. ADJECTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSE.—The neuter (or partitive genitive) of an adjective is often inserted in clauses beginning with was, in cases where in English we should prefer to put it in the antecedent clause.*

Ich werde alles, was der Mangel Hartes und Eindringendes hat, zeitig genug empfinden. (Less.)

Pelze, Felle und alles, was Erwärmendes vorrätig war. (Goe.)

Compare in French: *tout ce qu'il y a de bon, de grand*, &c.

Obs. Somewhat similar is the use of a substantive with an after was.

Was er zinſen muß an Getreide, Frohnden und Geld, verſchlingt den größten Teil ſeiner Arbeit. (Freytag.)

* As in Latin, an antecedent is often put in the relative clause.

431. SUCH AS—is often rendered by wie followed by a pronoun of the third person. If ſolcher is expressed, wie alone answers to it.

..... ſollten auch die kürzern und ſichrern Landſtraßen darüber zu Pfaden eingehen, wie ſie durch Wildniſſe führen. (Less.)

Hier iſt, ſagt' er, ein Mädchen, ſo wie ihr im Hauſe ſie wünſchet. (Goe.)

Bei einem Umgange, wie es der zwiſchen uns beiden iſt. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Da ſind Stellen darin, wie ſie nicht beſſer ſein können. (Eckermann.)

432. COMPOUNDS OF wo.—In all cases where was is admissible, a relative governed by a preposition is naturally rendered by a compound of wo. These compounds are also often used instead of a preposition with der or welcher, where an ordinary noun *not denoting a person* is the antecedent.

In dieſem Kreiſe liegt alles Große, was wir zu erkennen fähig ſind, und alles Gute, wodurch wir je unſer Leben geweiht. (Freytag.)

Aber vor den Gewaltthätigkeiten, womit der Landesherr einen gehaßten Unterthanen drücken, vor den namenloſen Drangſalen, wodurch er dem Auswandernden den Abzug erſchweren, vor den künſtlich gelegten Schlingen, worein die Argliſt mit der Stärke verbunden die Gemüter verſtricken kann, konnte der tote Buchſtabe dieſes Friedens ihn nicht ſchützen. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Wo by itself and wie are often used as equivalent to in welchem, auf welchem, &c.

In einer Korreſpondenz, wo weder von wiſſenſchaftlichen Gegenſtänden, noch von Geſchäften die Rede iſt..... (W. v. Humboldt.)

Die Weiſe, wie wir die Welt in unſeren Seelen abſpiegeln. (Freytag.)

Obs. 2. In older German, and sometimes in modern poetry, the compounds of da are used as relatives.

Mir ſind
Vertraut die Pfade, drauf die Norne wandelt. (Geibel.)

433. **Wer** INTERROGATIVE.—Wer, both as an independent and a dependent interrogative, is used in the singular only. When, as is frequently the case, it is the appositive complement of the verb *to be*, it may stand with a plural verb.

Ich möchte wissen, wer die Damen sind.

Obs. Notice the phrase wer alles, &c., as :—

Wer kommt denn alles?

Ich weiß nicht, wen er alles eingeladen hat.

434. ANY.—The use of different words for *any* according to the class of sentence in which it occurs is not so marked as in French and Latin. In a negative sentence, it often coalesces with the negative, kein meaning *not any;* niemand, *not any one;* nichts, *not anything.* In an affirmative sentence, and often even when, as with ohne, a negative is implied, jeder, all, irgend welcher, jeglicher, jedweder are used.

Liebenswürdig hatte sie noch niemanden gefunden.

Das Ganze ist ein Bild finsterer blutiger Kämpfe, ohne jede Spur einer höheren Idee. (von Treitschke.)

Dadurch verliert auch das Unglück einen Teil seiner drückenden Einwirkung, und es schwindet auf jeden Fall alle Bitterkeit davon. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Er kann alles fertigen, was in dem Hause herzurichten ist. (Auerbach.)

So ohne allen Grund, ohne jegliche Spur.

In an interrogative or hypothetical sentence, jemand is used for *any one*, etwas for *anything*.

Chapter XIV.—The Tenses.

435. CLASSIFICATION OF TENSES.—A complete verb has in the indicative mood, three past, three present, and three future tenses. There is in each class an *indefinite* or *aorist* tense, an *imperfect* or *progressive* tense, and a *perfect* or *finished* tense. The tenses in English, German and Latin which approach most nearly to these meanings are shown in the following tables :—

α. *Three present tenses.*

Indefinite.	I dine	Ich eſſe	ceno
Imperfect.	I am dining	Ich eſſe (eben)	ceno
Perfect.	I have dined	Ich habe gegeſſen	cenavi

β. *Three past tenses.*

Indefinite.	I dined	Ich aß or ich habe gegeſſen	cenavi
Imperfect.	I was dining	Ich aß (eben)	cenabam
Perfect.	I had dined	Ich hatte gegeſſen	cenaveram.

γ. *Three future tenses.*

Indefinite.	I shall dine	Ich werde eſſen	cenabo
Imperfect.	I shall be dining		*wanting*
Perfect.	I shall have dined	Ich werde gegeſſen haben	cenavero.

In most languages, one or other of these tenses has no distinct inflexion or periphrasis corresponding to it, and at the same time the tenses in use frequently oscillate between two meanings. Hence it becomes necessary to lay down some rules for the translation of the tenses of one language into those of another.

436. PRESENT.—The German *present* is both a *present indefinite*, and a *present imperfect*. But if the *imperfect* meaning is to be brought out at all conspicuously as in the English *I am writing*, it is necessary to say ich ſchreibe eben, ich bin (eben) daran zu ſchreiben, ich bin im Schreiben begriffen, or to use some similar expression, generally a little stronger than the English.

Obs. Thun is used as an auxiliary of the present in poetical and conversational language, as—

Seht, ihr Herren, das iſt alles recht und gut,
Daß jeder das Nächſte bedenken thut. (Sch.)

and also of the past (also in the form thät).

Die Augen thäten ihm ſinken,
Trank nie einen Tropfen mehr. (Goe.)

437. HISTORICAL PRESENT. — In descriptions and narrations a present is used instead of a past tense to bring the scene more vividly before the reader. This is called the *historical present*. In passages of this kind the compound of the present (ich habe gelobt) is used for the pluperfect.

Der eig'nen Rettung **denkt** jetzt keiner mehr,
Gleich wilden Tigern fechten ſie; es **reizt**
Ihr ſtarrer Widerſtand die Unſrigen,
Und eher nicht **erfolgt** des Kampfes Ende,
Als bis der letzte Mann **gefallen** iſt. (Sch.)

The same idiom is found in French, and is there often introduced in the middle of narration in past tenses, *e.g.*—

Coligny languissait dans les bras du repos,
Et le sommeil trompeur lui versait ses pavots.
Soudain de mille cris le bruit épouvantable
Vient arracher ses sens à ce calme agréable ;
Il se lève ; il regarde..... (Voltaire.)

In English it is not so common, though Carlyle often uses it :—

"Prompt to the request of Barbaroux, the Marseilles municipality has got these men together ; on the fifth morning of July, the Town-hall says : March, strike down the Tyrant, and they, with grim appropriate *Marchons*, are marching."

438. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The present is used for the future in cases where the future event is regarded as certain, or as about to happen at once. It is often accompanied by an adverbial expression denoting the time.

Morgen ſtößt ein Heer zu uns von 20,000 Schweden. (Sch.)

In English the present indefinite is often, though not so freely, used in the same way; *I start to-morrow at 5 o'clock.* Milton has it:—

If from this hour
Within those hallowed precincts thou appear,
Back to the infernal pit I *drag* thee chained,
And *seal* thee so.

439. PRESENT INDICATIVE FOR IMPERATIVE.—As with us, the present indicative is often used as an imperative; English, however, rather prefers the future.

Heute Nacht in aller Stille brecht ihr auf mit allen leichten Truppen. (Sch.)

440. PRESENT IMPERFECT FOR PRESENT PERFECT.—In describing an action which has been going on for some time, and is still continuing, the German present is used, though in English we should employ the present perfect. The word ſchon frequently occurs in such sentences:—

Fünf Jahre trag' ich ſchon den glüh'nden Haß. (Sch.)

Seit der Fürſt die Regierung übernahm, und die Erziehung der anderen Kinder vollendet iſt, lebt ſie blos ſich ſelbſt, arbeitet und ſtudirt für ſich. (W. v. Humboldt.)

It may stand simultaneously in the principal and dependent clause:—

So lang ich dich an dieſer Stätte kenne,
Iſt dies der Blick, vor dem ich immer ſchaudre. (Goe.)

In the first of these examples, we wish to express two things; *I still cherish hatred*, and *I have cherished hatred for five years.* In English we express the latter and leave the former to be inferred by the reader; in German exactly the opposite is done.

Obs. 1. The same idiom is found in French :—

Depuis trente hivers il languit. (Boileau.)

and has occasionally crept into English :—

Over the great restless ocean
Five-and-twenty years I roam. (Adelaide Procter.)

Obs. 2. The German construction is occasionally the same as the English :—

Biſt ſchon lange Knecht geweſen. (Goe.)

441. PAST IMPERFECT FOR PAST PERFECT.—In the same way a German past with ſchon, &c., must be translated by the English pluperfect :—

Ein Volk, das ſeit Jahrhunderten zu ſiegen wußte (had known how).

442. IMPERFECT AND PERFECT.—The scheme of tenses being incompletely filled up in German, it is necessary that some tenses should do double duty. Thus the imperfect is used in its proper sense as an imperfect, to denote a past action going on contemporaneously with another ; as, *I was writing, when you came in.* The perfect, again, is used as a present perfect, to denote a past action whose effects still continue ; as, *I have finished my work.* But there is no past indefinite in German, and therefore both imperfect and perfect have to do duty for it. The difference between them, when thus representing a past indefinite, or aorist, is like that between the two French tenses known as *passé défini* and *passé indéfini*. The tense of history, the tense used in describing a series of past events in order with dates, &c., is the imperfect ; the tense used to speak of them, as all alike past to the narrator, but without any desire to fix their date, is the perfect. Thus the prevailing tense of historical composition is the imperfect, that of conversation the perfect.

For example, in v. Treitschke's „Deutſche Geſchichte im 19. Jahrhundert," after several pages of narrative, in which the prevailing tense is the imperfect, with occasional historical presents introduced, we find a paragraph beginning :—

Erſt dieſe Kirchenpolitik der Hohenzollern hat das Zeitalter der Religionskriege abgeſchloſſen; ſie zwang ſchließlich die beſſeren weltlichen Fürſten zur Nachahmung....

The first sentence of this paragraph is an interruption of the thread of the narrative, a fact which the author wishes to speak of as past to himself, but which he deliberately separates from the even current of his story.

Similarly in the following, from Schiller's „Abfall der Niederlande," the perfect interrupts a series of imperfects proper :—

Kein Staat durfte ſich mit ihr auf den Kampfboden wagen. Frankreich ..... ging ſchon mit ſchnellen Schritten der unglücklichen Epoche entgegen, die es, beinahe ein halbes Jahrhundert lang, zu einem Schauplatz der Abſcheulichkeit und des Elends gemacht hat.

Take again the following conversation.* *A.* meets *B.* coming out of the theatre.

A.—Wo kommen Sie her? Waren Sie auch im Theater? (or, Sind Sie auch im Theater geweſen?) Wie lange ſind Sie überhaupt ſchon hier in Berlin?

B.—Ich bin erſt heute Nachmittag angekommen, aber ich habe mir gleich ein Billet beſorgen laſſen, habe nur eine Kleinigkeit genoſſen, und bin dann ſofort hergeeilt, um doch auch das vielbeſprochene Stück zu ſehen.

A.—Und wie finden Sie es?

B.—Das Stück hat mir ſehr gut gefallen; auch an dem vielgetadelten Schluß des zweiten Aufzugs habe ich keinen Anſtoß genommen.....

When *B.* goes home and relates his experiences, he says, in the course of conversation :—

Ich kam erſt des Nachmittags an, aber ich ließ mir gleich ein Billet beſorgen, genoß nur eine Kleinigkeit und eilte dann ſofort ins Theater, um das vielbeſprochene Stück zu ſehen.

He might then continue in the same tense, or more likely, become a little animated :—

Allerdings habe ich nach dem einmaligen Sehen kein ſicheres Urteil bilden können, aber das Stück hat mir ſehr gut gefallen.....

* From Sanders' „Deutſche Sprachbriefe."

Thus the imperfect is used wherever there is any wish to represent what has happened as one's own impression or experience; the perfect when it is desired simply to relate facts in order. Dr. Sanders says in the same article (187), that the use of the imperfect in conversation gives the impression of talking wie gedruckt, *like a book*. It should be added that this use of the tenses is strictly logical; the perfect is strictly a present perfect, and represents the effect of the action as continuing. To a matter-of-fact nation like ourselves, the past is past, unless its results have an *objective* reality (the house *has been* built, and is standing); our neighbours, with livelier imaginations, like to represent past events as present, even though they have now only a *subjective* reality (das Stück hat mir gefallen).

443. FUTURE.—There is an idiomatic use of the futures, especially of the future perfect, to express one's belief that an action is taking place, or has taken place. It is generally rendered in English by *probably*, though we sometimes use our first future in the same way:—

Ich höre jemanden kommen. Es wird der Wirt sein, uns zu empfangen. (Lessing.)

443A. CONDITIONAL. — The two conditional tenses, properly so called, are used in the apodosis of a conditional sentence (§ 565), convertibly with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. In the protasis the conditionals are seldom used.

444. DOUBLE PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.—Occasionally the perfect and pluperfect of haben (or of sein for certain intransitive verbs) are used as auxiliaries, to emphasize still more the completion of an action.

Er hatte alles vergessen, weit weggesetzt gehabt; jetzt erschaute er es als neuer Mensch. (Auerbach.)

This is easily understood by thinking of the real meaning of ich habe vergessen *I possess* or *hold it as a forgotten thing*. The above example would then be literally: *he had possessed it as a forgotten thing; he had forgotten it, and kept it in that state.*

Der einige Monate verreist gewesen war. (Heyse.)

For the same tense in the passive *see* Chapter on Passive Voice.

445. IMPERATIVE. — The imperative has, strictly speaking, only two persons, the second persons singular and plural. The other persons are borrowed from the subjunctive, the pronoun being put after the verb in the first person, either before or after in the third.

Mache Er Herrn Juſten den Kopf nicht warm! (Lessing.)

Der Menſch verſuche die Götter nicht. (Sch.)

Es ſtrebe von Euch jeder um die Wette. (Lessing.)

446. SUBSTITUTES FOR IMPERATIVE. — As in English, auxiliaries are often used to form circumlocutions equivalent to the imperative. There are also other substitutes peculiar to German.

(1.) laſſen is used for the first plural and third singular and plural imperative.

So laſſen Sie uns doch mit ihm ſeufzen. (Lessing.)

So laßt uns jetzt mit Fleiß betrachten. (Sch.)

O laß von jener Stunde
Sich Höllengeiſter nächtlich unterhalten!
Uns gebe die Erinn'rung ſchöner Zeit
Zu friſchem Heldenlaufe neue Kraft. (Goe.)

(2.) ſollen is sometimes used for the third singular and plural where we should use *let*, and so is mögen occasionally.

Groll und Rache ſei vergeſſen,
Unſerm Todfeind ſei verziehen,
Keine Thräne ſoll ihn preſſen,
Keine Reue nage ihn. (Sch.)

For mögen and ſollen in oblique oration, see § 526.

Du warſt mir entwiſcht, Biſchof! So mag denn dein lieber Weislingen die Zeche bezahlen. (Goe.)

(3.) Sollen is also used exactly as our *shalt* in commandments, as ſechs Tage ſollſt du arbeiten.

(4.) The second person of the present indicative is sometimes, as in English, used with an imperative sense. Du bleibſt hier ꝛc. (*See* § 439.)

(5.) The past participle is also used elliptically for an imperative as Nicht geplaudert = es ſoll nicht geplaudert werden, *Don't chatter*. Notice especially words of command:—Still geſtanden! Angelegt, Feuer!

It may be combined with the accusative absolute (§ 336):—

Die Trommel gerührt, das Pfeifchen geſpielt! (Goe.)

(6.) Children sometimes use the infinitive as an imperative. It is also so used in notices, as Rechts fahren!

(7.) In the first person plural, wollen is sometimes equivalent to *let*, Wir wollen unſere Eltern ehren, *let us honour*, i.e., *I will and you shall*.

446A. WISHES, &c.—A wish may be expressed in several ways.

(1.) As the *imperative* (445), except that the subject generally follows the verb, with or without the introductory es, as Gott ſei dir gnädig, or es ſei Gott dir gnädig.

(2.) By the present or imperfect subjunctive of mögen.

(3.) By an imperfect subjunctive, with or without (O) daß.

O daß ſie ewig grünen bliebe
Die ſchöne Zeit der jungen Liebe. (Sch.)

Gäbe Gott, ich könnte es.

446B. PERIPHRASTIC FORMS.—There is nothing in German exactly answering to the use of *aller* and *venir* in French. But the following forms should be noticed:—

Ich bin (war) im Begriff zu ſprechen, *I am (was) just going to speak.*
Ich will (wollte) eben ſprechen, *I am (was) just going to speak.*
Es hat eben zwölf Uhr geſchlagen, *It has just struck twelve.*

The English *do*, *did*, *was*, *were*, &c., when emphasized, are generally rendered by the addition of doch, &c.

Chapter XV.—Infinitive and Participles.

447. INFINITIVE A VERBAL NOUN.—The infinitive is best described as a verbal substantive, that is, something which possesses the properties both of a verb and of a substantive.

In common with a substantive it has the power of being the subject or object or appositive complement of a verb; in common with a verb, the property of governing a case, and of being qualified by an adverb:—

Noch einmal ein Wunder hoffen, hieße Gott verſuchen. (Sch.)

Where hoffen (1) is the subject of hieße, (2) governs ein Wunder, (3) is qualified by noch einmal; and verſuchen (1) governs Gott, and (2) is the appositive complement after hieße.

448. INFINITIVE CONVERTED INTO A NOUN.—It often happens in German that the infinitive becomes a genuine noun, capable of declension, qualified by an article or adjective, and followed by a genitive, not by the case it would require as a verb. Such infinitives are written, like nouns, with a capital letter.* They differ from ordinary nouns only in having no plural:—

Ich bin des Tanzens müde.

Der Erben Weinen iſt ein heimlich Lachen.

Obs. There is not a great deal of difference between English and German in the use of the infinitive as a noun. For the English inflexion *ing* is really an infinitive as well as a present participle; or, to speak more correctly, it represents two different derivatives of a verb, namely the infinitive, which in Anglo-Saxon ended in *an* or *en*, and a verbal noun similar to those formed in German by the termination ung, as well as the participle properly so called.

* Notice das Baumtragen, das Feueranmachen and the capitals in das Mit-ſich-ſelbſt-Reden hat er ſein Leben lang behalten.

449. INFINITIVE WITH zu, OR SUPINE. — The infinitive with zu, like the corresponding English form with *to*, is by far the most common. It is used as the object of all but a few verbs, as the subject of verbs, after prepositions, and in other ways.

Obs. It has been shown that the infinitive (for examp'e, the Greek infinitive ending in μεναι) was originally a dative case, probably like the phrase *to eat* in *good to eat*. It is curious to notice how modern tongues, after the dative inflexion has completely disappeared, repeat the process by prefixing the prepositions, which, in analytic languages, replace the dative.

450. INFINITIVE OR SUPINE AS SUBJECT.— The infinitive generally stands without zu if used as the subject of a verb; zu may be inserted when the sentence suggests a notion of *duty*, *necessity*, *possibility*, &c.

Verplaudern iſt ſchädlich, verſchweigen iſt gut. (Goe.)

Die Beleidigung verſchmerzen iſt das Merkmal höhrer Seelen, ob ſie ſie gleich tief gefühlt. (Herder.)

Einen Verlorenen zu beweinen, iſt auch männlich. (Goe.)

Mit Euch, Herr Doctor, zu ſpazieren, iſt ehrenvoll. (Goe.)

451. SUPINE IN APPOSITION.—An infinitive with zu often stands in apposition to es, or das, used as the subject to ſein or similar verbs :—

Gefährlich iſt's, den Leu zu wecken. (Sch.)

Das Haupt zu heißen eines freien Volkes,
Das ſei dein Stolz. (Sch.)

Es ziemt dem edlen Mann, der Frauen Wort zu achten. (Sch.)

It also stands in apposition to compounds of da, as dazu, davor (§ 460(4))

452. INFINITIVE AS APPOSITIVE COMPLEMENT.—An infinitive without zu is used as the appositive complement with the verb heißen, *to be called*, *to be equivalent to* :—

Noch einmal ein Wunder hoffen, hieße Gott verſuchen. (Sch.)

453. INFINITIVE AS OBJECT.—An infinitive without zu is used as the object of several classes of verbs, viz.:—

(1.) With the ordinary verbs of mood dürfen, können, mögen, müssen, sollen, wollen (and werden, as auxiliary of the future).

Wer könnte euren Thränen widersteh'n? (Sch.)

(2.) With sehen, hören, fühlen, lernen, lehren, heißen (*bid*), helfen, machen, lassen. These verbs govern at the same time an accusative (helfen a dative).

Ich sah ihn sterben. (Sch.)

Ich drück' an meine Seele dich, ich fühle
Die deinige allmächtig an mir schlagen. (Sch.)

See also examples to Chapter on Verbs of Mood.

Obs. When the infinitive is separated from lehren by a good many words, zu is often inserted. Thus Er lehrte den Knaben tanzen, but Er lehrte den Knaben, der bis dahin sich nur sehr kindisch bewegt hatte, mit Anstand und mit Anmut zu tanzen. (Sanders.)

(3.) With sehen, lassen, hören, accompanied by a transitive infinitive, which must be rendered by a passive in English.

Was man gewöhnlich behaupten hört. (Sch.)

(4.) The verb bleiben is accompanied by the infinitives sitzen, liegen, stehen, and occasionally by others; gehen by various infinitives, as schlafen gehen, betteln gehen; and the verbs reiten, fahren, gehen, führen by the infinitive spazieren.

O, daß sie ewig grünen bliebe,
Die schöne Zeit der jungen Liebe. (Sch.)

Um ein Uhr (bin ich) mit Goethe spazieren gefahren. (Eckermann.)

454. SUPINE AS OBJECT.—The supine or infinitive with zu is used as the object of ordinary transitive verbs, and of many verbs which could not take a noun as their object. It frequently stands as a second object, where the verb governs a noun or pronoun as well. It plays, in fact, the part both of an accusative and of a dative:—

Morgen fangen wir an zu ſchneiden die reichliche Ernte. (Goe.)

Pflegt ſie ſo zu ſein? (Sch.)

Er warnte mich, auf meiner Hut zu ſein. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. This use of the supine corresponds almost exactly to that of the English infinitive with *to*. Notice, however, er glaubt es gethan zu haben, *he believes he has done it*. So with behaupten, ſich einbilden, vorgeben, &c.

Eben fällt mir ein
Gehört zu haben..... (Lessing.)

Obs. 2. As in English, the supine is used with the verbs ſcheinen, dünken, *to seem*.

Obs. 3. After ſich hüten, and similar verbs, the supine denotes the thing guarded against, and here *not* must be inserted in English.

Er hütete ſich ſehr, den Volkskrieg zu ermuntern. (Freytag.)

455. SUPINE DEPENDING ON NOUNS.—An infinitive with zu often takes the place of the English gerundive in *ing*, preceded by *of*, and depending on a noun :—

So weit ging die Begierde, dir zu dienen. (Goe.)

Dies iſt die Art, mit Hexen umzugehen. (Goe.)

456. SUPINE DENOTING PURPOSE.—The supine often denotes a purpose, as might be expected from its really being a dative :—

Ich komme, Lady Stuart, eure letzten
Befehle zu empfangen. (Sch.)

More frequently um...zu is used :—

Was habt ihr denn gethan, um ſie zu retten? (Sch.)

Obs. For the use of um....after genug, von der Art, &c., see on Consecutive Sentences, § 540.

457. SUPINE AFTER **haben**.—Notice the use of the supine after haben :—

Du haſt nichts mehr zu ſchenken. (Sch.)

Occasionally also without an object :—

Ich habe mit der Königin zu reden. (Sch.)

Lastly there are cases like—

Was haſt du hier zu horchen und zu hüten? (Sch.)

458. SUPINE DEPENDING ON ADJECTIVES.—The infinitive with zu is used with adjectives, either—

(1.) Actively, with those denoting *purpose, hope,* &c.

Ich bin, ſpricht jener, zu ſterben bereit. (Sch.)

Das Weib iſt geſchickt, auf Mittel zu denken. (Goe.)

(2.) Apparently, but not really, passively with adjectives like *easy, difficult,* &c.:—

Geflügelt iſt das Glück, und ſchwer zu binden. (Sch.)

See § 461.

459. SUPINE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—The prepositions ohne, um, ſtatt, anſtatt* are followed by zu and an infinitive:—

Die Franzoſen warfen ihre Gewehre weg, um ſich deſto geſchwinder retten zu können. (Archenholz.)

Die Feinde zogen ſich ohne zu ſchlagen zurück. (Archenholz.)

Obs. The same construction is found in English after *for* (not modern). Compare also from Spenser:—

For not to have been dipped in Lethe's stream
Could save the son of Thetis *from to die.*

460. ENGLISH GERUND AFTER PREPOSITIONS.—There are several ways of rendering the English gerund in *ing*.

(1.) By a verbal noun (generally ending in ung), or by the infinitive used as a substantive (and written with a capital letter). It should be remembered that German lends itself far more readily than English to the formation of such nouns:—

Durch Abſchneidung der Zufuhr. (Sch.)

Beim Überſetzen muß man bis ans Unüberſetzliche herangehen. (Goe.)

---

* Really falls under § 455, ſtatt being a noun.

(2.) When it depends on a noun or adjective, by the supine. (§ 455.)

(3.) After *without*, *instead of*, by the supine. (§ 459.)

(4.) With other prepositions it is necessary to use one of the compounds of da, as dadurch, daran, followed either by an infinitive or a clause beginning with daß, according to circumstances :—

Mein guter Stern bewahrte mich davor,
Die Natter an den Busen mir zu legen. (Sch.)

Den Mangel an Reiterei wußte er dadurch zu ersetzen, daß er Fußgänger zwischen die Reiterei stellte. (Sch.)

Ich bestehe darauf, daß der Lord sich entferne. (Sch.)

Daß dem König das fremde Wesen verhaßt war, trug sicher dazu bei, es dem Sohne wert zu machen. (Freytag.)

(5.) A clause with indem is often used with nearly the same meaning as one beginning with dadurch daß.

Aber die gleiche Wut der Verwüstung, womit diese Nationen ihre Eroberung begleiteten, machte alle Länder, die Schauplatz derselben waren, einander gleich, indem sie alles, was sich in ihnen vorfand, auf gleiche Weise niedertrat und vertilgte. (Sch.)

461. SUPINE AS COMPLEMENT IN PASSIVE SENSE.—After the verb *to be*, the German supine must often be rendered by the English passive infinitive :—

Das ist nicht zu ertragen
Das Volk ist länger nicht zu bändigen.

Obs. We have the same idiom in phrases like *that is easy to understand*, das ist leicht zu verstehen. The difference only comes out when there is no adjective present. The fact that the infinitive is a verbal noun, and as such really neither active nor passive, explains the construction.

462. CORRESPONDING PARTICIPIAL FORM.—From this use of the infinitive is formed a participial form, corresponding to the commonest use of the Latin participle in *dus*. Thus from eine reiche Ernte ist zu hoffen, is formed die zu hoffende Ernte, *the to-be-hoped-for harvest*, *the harvest to be looked for*. So die zu lösende Aufgabe, *the problem to be solved*.

Obs. If it be necessary to compare this participle, mehr is used, as, ich kenne keinen mehr zu verachtenden Menschen.

463. LOOSE USE OF PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—Grimm traces a passive or middle use of the present participle in older German. In modern German are found loose uses of the present participle, some of which look like survivals of the older usage, while others may perhaps be better explained as metaphorical.

Thus Goethe has die in der Hand habende kleine Orgel; blaſende Inſtrumente; Schiller has die vorhabende Spazierfahrt, constructions perhaps scarcely to be imitated. Other expressions, such as eine ſchwindelnde Höhe, *a giddy height*, ein ſitzendes Leben, *a sedentary life*, may be fairly explained by supposing the *height*, *life*, &c., personified.* The French *thé dansant*, *café chantant*, *des couleurs voyantes*, are striking instances of a similar loose use of the participle, and so is the English *falling sickness*. In *playing-cards*, *boxing-gloves*, *spinning-wheel*, the word ending in *ing* is more probably a noun, like the first noun in *beer-barrel*, *book-shelf*.

464. ELLIPSIS.—Sometimes an infinitive or supine is used elliptically, as in English :—

Jetzt weiß ich ja auch, wer Sie ſind.—O! ſolch einen Menſchen einſperren! (Auerbach.)

465. PARTICIPLES AS ADJECTIVES.—The participles, either alone or accompanied by words depending upon them, are used exactly like adjectives, both as epithets and as parts of the predicate. They can also, like adjectives, be used for substantives, and follow the same rules of inflexion. If retaining their force as participles, they should be compared by using mehr, am meiſten. (§ 305.)

Da iſt Karl das am meiſten beſchäftigte Haupt der Welt. (Ranke.)

466. PAST PARTICIPLE OF NEUTER VERBS.—Only those neuter verbs that are conjugated with ſein (*see* § 468), such as ankommen, wachſen, possess a past participle active.

---

* *See* Roby, vol. II., p. lxxxviii., where this usage is quoted to illustrate the Latin participle in *dus*.

Thus ungegeſſen zu Bett gehen ought not to mean *to go supperless to bed*, though it is sometimes used colloquially in that sense. But we can say die eben angekommenen Gäſte, *the guests who have just arrived;* ein gut gewachſener Baum, *a tree that has grown well*, or *a well grown tree*.

The past participle of all other neuter verbs, of reflexive verbs and of impersonal verbs, cannot be used like an adjective, but is simply employed in the conjugation of the verb from which it comes.

Usage has made some exceptions to this and the preceding sections, as ein ausgedienter Soldat, *a soldier who has served his time;* ein abgelebter Greis, *an old man who has lived too long;* Verſchworene, *conspirators*, and even die ſtattgefundenen Feierlichkeiten, *the ceremonies that have taken place*.*

467. PAST PARTICIPLE WITH VERBS OF MOTION. — With kommen, and one or two similar verbs, a past participle is used where we should use a present participle in English :—

Als Kaiſer Rotbart lobeſam
Zum heil'gen Land gezogen kam. (Uhland.)

So, mehr geſchwommen als gegangen,
Gelangen ſie zum Wald hinaus. (Uhland.)

This is especially the case with compounds of heran, einher, &c :—

Kommt er beſtürzt herbeigeeilet. (Sch.)

Des Landvogts Reiter kommen angeſprengt. (Sch.)

Obs. The passive past participle with bringen is different.

Und hinter ihm, welch Abenteuer!
Bringt man geſchleppt ein Ungeheuer. (Sch.)

467A. IMPERSONAL USE.—The passive participle is sometimes used impersonally.

Dreimal umgezogen iſt ſo gut als einmal abgebrannt. *Three removes are as bad as a fire.* See also § 446 (5).

---

* Like *impransus, cenatus, juratus* in Latin.

Chapter XVI.—Auxiliaries.—Passive Voice.

468. INTRANSITIVES WITH ſein.—Certain classes of intransitive verbs are conjugated with ſein. We think, in fact, of the subject being in the state resulting from the action rather than of the performance of the action itself. Thus er iſt angekommen suggests *he is here;* er iſt gewachſen, *he is bigger than he was.* They are as follows:—

(1) verbs of motion, as gehen, kommen, fahren;

(2) verbs denoting a change of state, as wachſen, *grow;* geneſen, *recover;* werden, *become;*

(3) ſein, *be;* bleiben, *remain.*

Notice especially the following, which might not be thought at first sight to belong to this group: geſchehen, *happen;* gelingen, *succeed;* gedeihen, *thrive;* geraten, *fall (into);* glücken, *succeed;* mißglücken, *fail;* ſterben, *die;* rinnen, *become liquid;* ſchmelzen, *melt;* ſcheitern, *go to pieces, be ruined* (generally); verunglücken, *meet with an accident;* ſchlagen (in some intransitive senses). Also many compounds of ent, er, ver, like entbrennen, *catch fire;* ergrauen, *turn grey;* verderben, *get spoilt.*

Intransitive verbs not falling under the above heads, as ſchlafen, *sleep;* ſtehen, *stand,* &c., are conjugated with haben. Thus er hat geſchlafen, *he slept,* but er iſt eingeſchlafen, *he went to sleep.*

469. VARIABLE AUXILIARY. — Many verbs of motion, as reiten, ſpringen, are often used without any idea of having reached one's destination. In such cases the auxiliary haben is used. Thus:—

Er hat in ſeiner Jugend ſehr gut geritten.

Wie euch die Stirne brennt!
Ihr habt gelaufen und ihr habt gesprungen. (Freiligrath.)

but—

Der Knabe ist über den Graben gesprungen.

Similarly knieen, *to be on one's knees*, takes haben; niederknieen takes sein; fortreiten, *to go on riding*, takes haben; fortreiten, *to ride away*, takes sein.

Obs. 1. Occasionally one of these verbs takes an accusative even when conjugated with sein, as ich bin diesen Weg noch nie geritten, but the accusative is rather one of *extent* than a direct object.

Obs. 2. The occasional use of verbs like gehen with haben in phrases like er hat sich (den Fuß) wund gegangen, *he made himself footsore with walking*, is worth notice. (*See* § 336A.)

470. ELLIPSIS OF AUXILIARIES.—The auxiliaries haben and sein (not werden) are often omitted when they come at the end of subordinate sentences.

Das Fürchterliche, das er erfahren, hatte auch neue Kraft in ihm wachgerufen. (Freytag.)

Und eh' ihm noch das Wort entfallen
Da sieht man's von den Schiffen wallen. (Sch.)

where hatte is omitted after erfahren, war after entfallen.

Obs. The subjunctive form hätte(n), wäre(n), sei(en) should not be omitted, nor, of course, should any part of sein when it is the copula.

471. AUXILIARIES OF PASSIVE.—It is essential to distinguish from each other the present and imperfect passive, and the two forms of the perfect and pluperfect passive. Thus:—

(1.) Die Thür wird um sechs Uhr geschlossen.
The gate is closed at six (i.e., *the porter shuts it at six*).

(2.) Die Thür ist um sechs Uhr geschlossen worden.
The gate was closed at six (i.e., *the porter shut it at six*).

(3.) Die Thür ist um sechs Uhr geschlossen.
The gate is closed at six (i.e., *not open, having been shut before six*).

(4.) Die Thür wurde um sechs Uhr geschlossen.

The gate was closed at six o'clock (i.e., *the porter shut it at six*).

(5.) Die Thür war um sechs Uhr geschlossen worden.

The gate had been closed at six (i.e., *the porter had shut it at six*).

(6.) Die Thür war um sechs Uhr geschlossen.

The gate was closed at six (i.e., *not open, the porter had shut it before six*).

(3) and (6) denote a state only, the other forms call attention to the action by which the state was produced.

The following passage of Schiller's "Maid of Orleans" shows this very clearly:*—

Ihr seid vereinigt, Fürsten . . . .
. . . . . .
Doch, die das Opfer Eures Zwists gefallen,
Die Toten stehen nicht mehr auf; die Thränen,
Die Eurem Streit geflossen, sind und bleiben
Geweint.

where sind geweint is closely associated with bleiben geweint, and has much the same meaning.

Obs. 1. Take care not to confound the forms sind geweint, seid vereinigt, which come from *transitive* verbs, with sind geflossen, sind gewachsen, sind gescheitert, which come from *neuter* verbs.

Obs. 2. Occasionally the perfect and pluperfect of sein are used as auxiliaries in the passive voice to express more strongly than the ordinary perfect and pluperfect (formed with werden) the completion of the action:—

Nach ihm ist niemand wieder auf diesen Grad begnadigt gewesen. (Goe.)

Since his time no one has been so completely re-established in favour. (referring not merely to the act of pardoning, but the permanent condition of reconciliation resulting from it).

Mit dem vor einem halben Jahre verloren gewesenen und seltsamer Weise erst jetzt gefundenen Armband. (Gutzkow.)

With the bracelet which had been missing six months ago, and strangely enough only just found (meaning not that the bracelet had been actually lost at that time, but that it was lost at some time unknown, and that six months ago it was missing). See § 444.

* Quoted by Sanders, „Deutsche Sprachbriefe," p. 213.

472. PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVES.—Only transitive verbs can be used *personally* in the passive. But intransitive verbs have an impersonal passive form, which, if derived from a verb governing the genitive or dative, or followed by a preposition, retains the same construction. (Cf. § 352):—*

In diesem Coupé wird nicht geraucht.

Ewig werde dein gedacht. (Sch.)

Die Marquise hatte
Nicht mehr gethan, als ihr befohlen worden. (Sch.)

Obs It is not uncommon, though strictly speaking incorrect, in imitation of French and English, to use folgen, helfen, gehorchen, widersprechen, &c., personally in the passive :—

. . . Ein römischer Hauptmann
Von der Wache gefolgt. (Klopstock.)

So würden Sie vielleicht verdienen auf Ihr Wort geglaubt zu werden.

473. MIDDLE VOICE.—In most cases the pronoun sich is added to a German verb to render an English verb, as *to move, to break*, with a middle sense. Thus :—

Die Erde bewegt sich.

Das Schicksal des Carlos hat sich entschieden. (Sch.)

The latter example will show that the German reflexive form is used not only where the English middle is found, but also in many cases where we prefer the passive. Of course some German verbs, as brennen, ziehen, are used in exactly the same way as such English verbs.

French is very like German in this respect. The verb *tourner*, for example, is used both as an active and a middle verb ; the middle of *mouvoir* is *se mouvoir ;* and in translating the last of the examples given above, one would use the reflexive form *se décider*. In both languages the substitution of the reflexive form for the passive, *where no agent is mentioned*, is very common.

474. IMPERATIVE PASSIVE is always formed with sein:—

Seid mir gegrüßt, befreundte Scharen. (Sch.)

* Compare the Latin constructions, *Ventum erat ad limen*, — *Vix deorum opibus resisti poterat.*

Chapter XVII.—The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

475. OMISSION OF zu.—The verbs müſſen, ſollen, dürfen, können, mögen, wollen, laſſen take, like their English equivalents *would*, *can*, *should*, &c., and like the auxiliary werden, an infinitive without zu:—

Wer könnte euren Thränen widerſteh'n! (Sch.)

476. COMPOUND TENSES.—The compound tenses of these verbs, when attached to an infinitive mood, are formed with müſſen, mögen, &c., instead of the past participles gemußt, gemocht, &c.:—

Wie elend hättet ihr werden können. (Lessing.)

Obs. 1. But gemocht, gekonnt, &c., are used when no infinitive accompanies the auxiliaries of mood:—

Er hätte gern kommen mögen, aber er hat nicht gedurft.

Ein Zufall that, was Carlos nie gekonnt. (Sch.)

Especially in elliptical expressions like—

Wo die Karthager noch hingeſollt hätten. (Gervinus.)

Obs. 2. These forms, müſſen, &c., used for the past participle, are not really infinitives, but survivals of a strong past participle; they are often known as *praeterito-praesentia*.

477. PLACE OF AUXILIARY. — In subordinate sentences verbs of mood in their compound tenses deviate from the rule that the finite verb goes last, and place the auxiliary immediately before the governed infinitive, instead of at the end of the sentence. Sometimes it even precedes a word very closely connected with the infinitive:—

Doch hoffte man, die Stadt wenigstens so lange hinzuhalten, bis man das Getreide würde einernten können. (Sch.)

Ich war zu sehr gewöhnt, mich mit mir selbst zu beschäftigen, als daß ich mit Aufmerksamkeit hätte ein Kunstwerk betrachten sollen. (Goe.)

Obs.—The auxiliary is, in such cases, often omitted :—

Mich selbst befremdet, wie
Auf einen solchen Sturm in meinem Herzen
So eine Stille plötzlich folgen können. (Lessing.)

where hat is omitted before folgen.

478. *COULD HAVE, SHOULD HAVE.*—The English verbs of mood have no compound tenses ; for instance the perfect of *can* can only be expressed by the periphrasis *I have been able*. Hence care must be taken in translating *I could have done it, I should have done it.*

I could have done it means either (1) *I was able to do it*, ich konnte es thun, or ich habe es thun können; or (2), and more commonly, *I should have been able to do it* (*facere potuissem*), ich hätte es thun können.

Similarly *you should have done it* is generally du hättest es thun sollen; but du hast es thun sollen, meaning *it was expected of you to do it*, may also be translated *you should have done it.*

479. PERFECT INFINITIVE WITH VERBS OF MOOD.—There is, however, a case in which the perfect infinitive is used as in English, and that is when a *logical* possibility or obligation is to be expressed. Thus :—

Ich kann es gethan haben, means *I may have done it ;*

i.e. *it is possible that I did do it*, where the possibility is a feeling or inference in the mind of the speaker that he has done it, not a possibility of doing it. So again :—

Er muß es gethan haben, *He must have done it,*

implies a *logical necessity, i.e.* a certainty in the speaker's mind that he did do it, not any obligation to do it.

480. VERBS TREATED LIKE AUXILIARIES.—The verbs heißen (*to bid*), helfen, hören, ſehen, lehren, lernen are generally treated like the auxiliary verbs of mood. So are machen and brauchen occasionally :—

Ihr habt ſie unter Euch aufwachſen ſehen. (Sch.)

Die nämlichen Batavier hatten ihm dieſe Inſel mit erobern helfen. (Sch.)

Habe ich doch den Narren nicht kommen heißen. (Lessing.)

Seitdem habe ich vom Reich ganz anders denken lernen. (Sch.)

Ohne meine Bemühungen in den Naturwiſſenſchaften hätte ich die Menſchen nie kennen lernen, wie ſie ſind. (Goe.)

Die Wahrheit, die
So oft mich blut'ge Thränen weinen machen. (Lessing.)

Ich habe ihn eine ſchwere Stelle des Cäſars bei der Tafel erklären hören. (Varnhagen von Ense.)

But notice :—

Aber zu meinem Verdruß mußt' ich ſchon manches verſäumen, weil ich nicht leſen und ſchreiben gelernt. (Goe.)

Ich habe Degen blinken geſehen und Kugeln um mich ſummen gehört. (Sch.)

Mein Herz hat
Mich geheißen zu thun, ſo wie ich genau nun erzähle. (Goe.)

Freilich hat er läuten hören, nur zuſammenſchlagen hat er nicht gehört. (Lessing.)

Obs.—With the perfect infinitive with zu the verbs ſehen, hören, &c., are used in the past participle.

Sie ſcheint ihm nicht ſelbſt ſtürzen geſehen zu haben.

481. **Müſſen** is the equivalent of the English *must*, and implies that the subject is compelled by physical force or a law of nature. It is thus distinguished from ſollen, which denotes *moral* constraint.

It is important to remember that in English *must* is present only, and that consequently mußte, habe ... müſſen, &c., must be rendered by a periphrasis, *it was necessary that, I had to, could not fail to*, &c. The same applies to the subjunctive and to the compound tenses.

Die Vollkommenheit des Gegenſtandes ſelbſt mußte in ſeinen Werken entzücken. (Lessing.)

482. **Sollen**, *ought, am to*, denotes *moral constraint*, that of some one's will, a law, public opinion, &c. Hence among other idiomatic meanings, it can often be rendered *is said to*.

(1.) It means, especially in the conditional, *ought to*, independently of the context.

Die Kinder ſollen ihren Eltern gehorchen.

Ein Schauſpieler, ſagte Goethe, ſollte eigentlich auch bei einem Bildhauer und Maler in die Lehre gehen. (Eckermann.)

(2.) In many cases the obligation, instead of being a general one, is implied in the context.

Schiller trieb ſich auch an ſolchen Tagen und Wochen zu arbeiten, in denen er nicht wohl war; ſein Talent ſollte ihm zu jeder Stunde gehorchen und zu Gebote ſtehen. (Eckermann.)

Bei dieſem Spiel war die Aufgabe ganz einfach; nämlich den Philoktetes nebſt dem Bogen von der Inſel Lemnos zu holen. Über die Art, wie dieſes geſchieht, das war die Sache des Dichters ... der Ulyſſes ſoll ihn holen; aber er ſoll von Philoktetes erkannt werden oder nicht ... (Eckermann.)

(3.) It often means simply *is said, is supposed*.

Er ſoll krank ſein, *they say he is ill*.

Er ſoll es gethan haben, *he is said to have done it*,

to be distinguished from

Er hätte es thun ſollen, *he ought to have done it*.

(4.) It is used as a periphrasis for the imperative.

(*a*.) In ordinary speech, Er ſoll gehen, *let him go* (§ 446).

(*b*.) In formal commands, Du ſollſt nicht ſtehlen, *thou shalt not steal*.

(5.) In many dependent sentences ſollen (especially the imperfect subjunctive) often does little more than form a substitute for the subjunctive, like the English *should*.

Die Geſetze fordern, daß er es thun ſoll.

(6.) It is used elliptically with an infinitive like bedeuten, dienen, helfen, &c., understood.

Was ſoll ihnen Reichtum?
Was aber ſoll der Kelch da auf der Fahne? (Sch.)

483. **Können** corresponds to müſſen, as dürfen to ſollen, and means that there is no physical obstacle in the way to the accomplishment of something. It is equivalent to the English *can, could, may, might.* It may denote either an actual or a logical possibility. (§ 479.)

Er kann tanzen, *he can dance.*

Es kann regnen, *it may rain.*

Er hätte es thun können, *he could have done it, might have done it.*

Er kann es gethan haben, *he may have done it; it is possible he did it.*

Obs. 1.—Können is used elliptically of knowing a language:—

Können Sie deutſch? *Do you speak German? do you understand German?*

Obs. 2.—Notice the idiom ich kann nicht umhin, es zu thun, *I cannot help doing it.*

484. **Dürfen** really represents two older verbs, one meaning *to need*, the other (türren), *to venture, dare*, the original of our word *dare*. Bedürfen is now used in the former sense, and the common meaning of dürfen is *to be allowed, to venture.*

(1.) *To need.* In this sense it is found in a few conversational expressions, but in ordinary prose writing not later than Lessing or the earlier works of Kant.

Ich habe das Unnütze nicht unnütz geleſen, wenn es von nun an dieſer oder jener nicht weiter leſen darf. (Lessing.)

Er darf nur kommen; es iſt alles bereit.

(2.) *To dare.*

Wie darfſt du frecher, ungerechter Schurke einen ſo großen und herrlichen Ritter zum Tode verurteilen? (v. Raumer.)

(3.) *To be permitted, may.* It then corresponds to ſollen, as können to müſſen, implying that there is no moral obstacle in the way.

Wohl darf Liebe werben um die Liebe; doch ſolchem Glanz darf nur ein König nahen.

(4.) In the imperfect subjunctive, implying possibility or probability, *may, might, will probably.*

Die Unterſuchung dürfte bald zu Ende ſein. (Grimm.)

Der Herzog überlegte, daß eine ſo ſchöne Gelegenheit nicht zum zweiten Male wieder kommen dürfte.

485. **Mögen** is distinguished from wollen, by expressing rather *adaptation* (Geeignetsein), and hence inclination, to an action, while wollen denotes will or intention (Selbstbestimmung). It is identical with the English *may*, *might*, and is the root of Macht, *power*.

(1.) It denotes, like *may* in English, a logical possibility.

Gedichte, von denen auch manche hier und dort im Privatbesitz verborgen sein mögen. (Eckermann.)

passing sometimes into little more than a periphrasis for the subjunctive.

Wie bedeutend und groß Byron als Talent auch sein mag, so möchte ich doch sehr zweifeln, daß aus seinen Schriften für reine Menschenbildung ein entschiedener Gewinn zu schöpfen. (Eckermann.)

which also gives an example of (3).

(2.) Closely connected with this is the use of mögen to make a concession, generally with auch, or simply to introduce a parenthetical *whether*.

Wer nur immer Fürsten nahe kommt, den stempelt das Volk sofort für einen Mann des Einflusses, er mag sich stellen, wie er will. (Riehl.)

So viel ist gewiß, daß eine starke Säule von rotem Porphyr und eine darüber erbaute Kapelle — mögen sie nun später von reuigen Königen oder teilnehmenden Bürgern oder auf Kosten Elisabeth's aufgerichtet worden sein—Jahrhunderte lang die Stelle bezeichneten. (v. Raumer.)

(3.) Perhaps the commonest meaning of mögen is *to like*, *to be inclined to*. The imperfect subjunctive is especially used in this sense, *see* second example to (1.) The adverb gern is often added.

Was sich verträgt mit meiner Pflicht, mag ich ihr gern gewähren. (Sch.)

Also einen Pfeil haben Sie sich aus Brabant mitgebracht. Ich möchte ihn sehen. (Goe. in Eck.)

(4.) In poetry mögen is often nearly equivalent sometimes to können, sometimes to dürfen.

Ruhig mag ich euch erscheinen,
Ruhig gehen sehn. (Sch.)

Ich lasse den Freund dir als Bürgen,
Ihn magst du, entrinn' ich, erwürgen. (Sch.)

(5.) The subjunctive of mögen is often used in wishes:

Möge ein besserer Rat sie führen!

(6.) It is used as a periphrasis for the imperative. (§ 446.)

486. **Laſſen,** properly *to leave*, has as an auxiliary three meanings :—(1) *to allow*, (2) *to cause* or *order*, (3) *to represent as doing*. In all three senses it is followed by an infinitive capable of being rendered in English either by an active or a passive infinitive according to circumstances.

I. Rendered actively in English :—

(1.) Man ließ ihn nicht einmal zu Worte kommen. (Sch.)

Laßt's gut ſein, Vater Arc, laßt ſie gewähren. (Sch.)

Wer dieſer Mann geweſen,
Läßt, Wand'rer, dich ſein Grabmal leſen. (Gellert.)

(2.) Laß, Herr, des Opfers Düfte ſteigen.

(3.) Und auch dieſen (den ſterbenden Hercules) läßt Sophokles klagen, winſeln, weinen und ſchreien. (Lessing.)

Notice in this connection :—

Chateaubrun läßt ihn blos von dem vergifteten Pfeile eines Trojaners verwundet ſein. (Lessing.)

Obs.—Occasionally, when the infinitive with laſſen is transitive, the object of laſſen is put in the dative, probably in imitation of French.

Wenn Sie mir gegen Weihnachten wiſſen laſſen, wie weit Sie damit gekommen ſind. (Lessing.)

But this usage is obsolete.

II. Rendered passively in English :—

(1.) Sie folgten dem Dichter, ohne ſich in der geringſten Kleinigkeit von ihm verführen zu laſſen. (Lessing.)

(2.) Der Gouverneur ließ mich in ſein Zimmer rufen. (Goe.)

So ließ Karl mehreren Römern die Füße abhauen. (v. Raumer.)

Obs. 1. The real object of laſſen just above is the infinitive—thus—*without allowing the misleading themselves — ordered the summoning me—caused the cutting off.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes an ambiguity arises, as in :—

Laß deinen Zorn die Klugheit überwinden. (Lessing.)

Let wisdom get the better of your wrath;

which might also be rendered :—

Let your wrath get the better of wisdom.

Such ambiguities can easily be avoided by writing :—

Laß deinen Zorn von der Klugheit überwinden,

or Laß die Klugheit von deinem Zorn überwinden;

according as the first or the second is meant.

Obs. 3. Laſſen has also an intransitive meaning :—

Ein weißer Hut ließ' lächerlich;
Schwarz, Bruder, ſchwarz, ſo ſchickt es ſich. (Gellert.)

487. **Wollen,** *will, wish,* is used just like the English *will,* when not a mere sign of the future. It has the following idiomatic uses :—

(1.) With a past infinitive, *to assert, maintain.*

Die Leute wollen es in den Zeitungen geleſen haben.

(2.) It often means little more than *to be about to.*

Erſt wollte ſie unſer Betragen gelaſſen billigen; nachher merkte ſie an, was ſich doch auch für ein falſches Licht darauf werfen laſſe. (Goe.)

(3.) As an optative :

Wollte Gott, es gäbe keine unruhige Köpfe in ganz Deutſchland. (Goe.)

(4.) Elliptically with the omission of gehen, in

Wo willſt du hin?

488. PLEONASTIC USE OF VERBS OF MOOD.—In English the subjunctive is almost entirely superseded by auxiliaries like *may, should,* &c. The same tendency is noticeable in German, and verbs of mood are used more freely by modern writers, and especially in modern conversation, than they were by the classics.

488A. ELLIPTICAL USE.—The infinitive is sometimes idiomatically omitted with verbs of mood and words like fort, mit, as darf ich mit (gehen), *may I go with you*; ich kann nicht mehr fort(gehen), *I can't go on.* Compare §§ 482(6), 483, *Obs.* 1, 487(4).

Chapter XVIII.—Order of Words.

489. PARTS OF A SIMPLE SENTENCE.—A simple sentence consists of subject and predicate. The predicate, if not contained in a single finite verb (*i.e.*, a part of the verb which has number and person-endings), consists of such a finite verb together with a complement; under which head we include—

(1.) an appositive complement after ſein, &c.;

(2.) the participles, &c., that make up a compound tense;

(3.) separable prefixes, or words closely connected with the verb, as Trotz in Trotz bieten.

Lastly, it may contain an object or objects and adverbial additions.

490. DECLARATORY SENTENCE. — The natural order, then, in a declaratory sentence is—

(1.) the nominative or subject;

(2.) the finite verb or auxiliary;

(3.) objects and adverbial additions;

(4.) the complement:—

Subject.	*Finite Verb.*	*Objects and Adverbial Additions.*	*Complement.*
Die Idee	war	für ſie	empörend.
Der Knabe	hat	geſtern ſeinem Freunde ein Buch	gegeben.
Du	wirſt	ihn ſeiner Freude	beraubt haben.
Er	wird	es dir leicht	überlaſſen können.
Man	gab	mir dieſelben	zurück.

490A, THE SUBJECT. — It must be clearly understood that the subject is considered to include not only the noun or pronoun which is the nominative to the verb, but also—

(1.) an epithet or genitive preceding it;

(2.) a genitive or a noun with a preposition depending upon it;

(3.) an adverb like allein, erſt, für meinen Teil, belonging to the subject and not to the sentence;

(4.) another noun in apposition to it;

(5.) a relative clause qualifying it;

(6.) a participle with words depending on it, forming a secondary predicate:—

Der kluge Mann	baut		vor.
Die Axt im Haus	erſpart	den Zimmermann.	
Ich allein	muß	einſam	trauern.
Nicht du	biſt	mein Feind.	
Pfingſten, das liebliche Feſt,	war		gekommen.
Ein Mann, der recht zu wirken denkt,	muß	auf das rechte Werkzeug	halten.
Der Knabe, gegen ſeinen Beſchützer für die empfangenen Wohlthaten in hohem Grade dankbar,	übernahm	freudig den gefährlichen Auftrag.	
Die franzöſiſche Garde, dem allſeitigen Sturm erliegend,	gerät	in Unordnung.	

But an *adverbial* sentence, as distinguished from an adjectival, must not intervene between the nominative and the verb. Therefore the following passage from Lessing's Fables is not to be imitated :—

Ein frommer Pelikan, da er ſeine Jungen ſchmachten ſah, ritzte ſich mit ſcharfem Schnabel die Bruſt auf.

491. VERB ALWAYS SECOND. — It may be desirable for the sake of emphasis, to begin the sentence with other words than the subject. In this case the finite verb remains *second*, and the nominative is normally placed immediately after it. The rest of the order remains as before:—

Mein Freund	kannſt	du	nicht weiter	ſein.
Neapel	habe	ich	nach ſeiner eignen Art	behandelt.
Bei der Wiederkehr	ſoll	manches		nachgeholt werden.
Jetzt	trat	ich		vor.

Obs. 1. Sometimes a reflexive pronoun or the oblique case of another pronoun precedes the nominative, coming immediately after the verb. Other words are then often interposed before the nominative.

Aber eben dieſer Landſtraße hatte ſich Wallenſtein am Abend vor der Schlacht zum großen Nachteil ſeiner Gegner bemächtigt.

Es fehlte mir der Appetit zum Eſſen. (Heine.)

Heute aber hatte ſich nach dem ſonnenheißen Tage ein feiner Nebel aus den Schluchten herauf gewälzt. (Heyse.)

Obs. 2. Notice that when *he said, said he*, is put after the introductory words of a speech, it is ſagte er, not er ſagte.

492. INTERROGATIVE, &c., SENTENCES. — In interrogative, optative, and most imperative sentences the finite verb is placed first, the nominative second; or if the sentence begins with an interrogative adverb or pronoun (wo? wann? was, ꝛc.) the verb stands second, and the nominative third:—

	Werden	Sie	mit uns heute ins Theater	gehen?
	Möge	er		glücklich werden!
	Schreiben	Sie	täglich an uns.	
Wo	haben	Sie	ihn	geſehen?

Obs. 1. As a question is often asked by the tone of the voice, many interrogative sentences retain the order of declaratory sentences:—

Und du haſt das im Ernſt geglaubt? (Heyse.)

Wir ſollten Ihren politiſchen Ueberzeugungen Gewalt thun? (Freytag.)

This is always the case when nicht wahr? follows.

Obs. 2. In wishes, the nominative often stands first:—

Gott ſei dir gnädig!—Es lebe die Freiheit!

In commands in the third person, either order is admissible, as mache der Herr Wirt, or der Herr Wirt mache...

Obs. 3. Vocatives, and the word o! do not affect the order:—

Frommer Stab, o hätt' ich nimmer
Mit dem Schwerte dich vertauſcht!

493. PLACE OF COMPLEMENT. — In a principal sentence the infinitives and participles forming part of a compound tense are placed at the end; past participles precede infinitives, and the past participles of the principal verbs those of their auxiliaries. Thus, er wird gelobt worden ſein; ich würde gelobt werden.

Graf Eugen Moritz wurde demnach am Hofe von Verſailles als Prinz von Geblüt betrachtet. (Sch.)

Some nouns and adverbial expressions are so closely connected with verbs as to form a single idea with them; such are—zu teil, in zu teil werden; Trotz, in Trotz bieten; ein Ende, in ein Ende machen, and the second or predicative accusative with verbs of *naming*, *making*, &c. Such expressions naturally take their place as far on as possible in the sentence. So does the adjective serving as the complement of ſein. Thus:—

Des Lebens ungemiſchte Freude
Ward keinem Irdiſchen zu teil. (Sch.)

Dann erſt machten ſich die gepreßten Geiſter in anhaltendem Bravo Luft. (Heyse.)

494. PLACE OF OBJECTS. — In arranging the objects of a sentence, much must depend on the wish of the writer to emphasize particular words. The following rules are therefore only approximate:—

(1.) When one object is a noun, another a pronoun, the pronoun precedes.

Ich empfehle mich Ihrer Gnade, Fräulein.

(2.) As to the relative order of pronouns, the following is generally adopted:—

I. reflexive pronoun; II. es; III. accusative of personal pronoun; IV. dative or genitive of personal pronoun; V. demonstrative das, dieſes, &c.

Ich empfehle mich Ihnen.
Ein Fremder hat mir dies gemeldet.
Er ſelbſt hat es mir heute geſagt.
Du mußt dich ſeiner annehmen.

Notice that there is a tendency to put ſich as early as possible in the sentence, though it may, in a subordinate sentence, go with the verb. Es may stand as an enclitic to mich, euch, &c., mich's, euch's.

(3.) When the objects are nouns, an accusative object precedes a genitive object or a noun depending on the verb by a preposition (prepositional complement); a dative object precedes an accusative, but when both denote persons, the accusative *may* precede :—

Sie hätte ihrem Vater die Wahrheit ſagen ſollen.
Wer dürfte den Sokrates der Gottloſigkeit beſchuldigen?
Darf ich es wagen, Ihre Majeſtät
An ein koſtbares Leben zu erinnern? (Sch.)

(4.) A noun completing the sense of the verb goes last (§ 493).

495. PLACE OF ADVERBIAL ADDITIONS.—As to the relative position of objects and adverbial additions, there is a good deal of latitude. The general principle is that the least important words come next to the finite verb, and those most essential to complete its meaning are put last. The following are approximate rules :—

(1.) Adverbs, and nouns with prepositions equivalent to adverbs, are placed as late as possible in the sentence when they are in any way necessary to complete the sense of the verb (§ 493).

(2.) If an adverb like nicht, ſchon, noch, nur, ſelbſt, ſogar, beſonders, vorzüglich, qualifies a particular word in a sentence, it must, of course, immediately precede that word.

(3.) If the object be a pronoun, it comes first; if the adverbial addition be a pronoun governed by a preposition, it precedes a noun. A noun object follows adverbs of time, and often precedes other adverbial additions.

Da hörte er hinter ſich das Schnauben eines Pferdes. (Freytag.)

Dabei hatte er den Kopf flüchtig nach dem Bilde gewandt. (Heyse.)

(4.) Unemphatic adverbs (adverbiale Formwörter), like oft, heute hier, nirgends, precede everything except pronouns.

(5.) Adverbs and adverbial expressions of *time* precede those of *place*, and those of *place* precede those of *manner*, if there is no particular emphasis on any of them.

Filippo war zehn Tage droben im Gebirg. (Heyse.)

Das Andenken an den Geburtstag Schillers ist am 10. November 1859 in ganz Deutschland mit großem Glanze gefeiert worden.

(6.) nicht, negativing the whole sentence, stands next to the verb in a principal sentence, next to the finite verb or just before the participle in a subordinate sentence.

The above rules are necessarily vague. Considerations of emphasis and euphony come in largely. Clearness is often gained by inversion, one or another of the adverbial additions being put before the verb.

496. PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES.—Participles and infinitives often have words depending on them. They are then placed at the end of the phrase of which they form part, and the words depending on them are arranged as they would be in a simple sentence ;—

Wie glücklich ist der, der, um sich mit dem Schicksal in Einigkeit zu setzen, nicht sein ganzes vorhergehendes Leben wegzuwerfen braucht. (Goe.)

Er nannte seinen Namen, den der Major, mit Wohlgefallen die stattliche Gestalt betrachtend, niederzuschreiben im Begriff war. (Heyse.)

497. COORDINATE SENTENCES.—Two independent sentences, formed by *and*, *therefore*, *for*, &c., are said to be co-ordinate. The second of such sentences retains its usual order, provided the conjunction connecting it with the preceding be und, oder, allein, sondern, denn, aber, nämlich.

Ich muß zu Hause bleiben, denn ich bin krank.

Der Mensch darf sich nie für vollkommen halten, sondern er muß stets nach höheren Zielen streben.

Die goldene Zeit ist wohl vorbei,
Allein die Guten bringen sie zurück. (Goe.)

If, however, the connecting word be a real adverb, auch, deshalb, dennoch, zwar, indessen, &c., inversion takes place, that is, the nominative follows the verb.

Obs. 1. Entweder, *either ;* doch, *yet*, sometimes cause inversion, and sometimes not :—

Entweder deine Behauptung ist (ist deine Behauptung) richtig, oder du irrst dich.

Doch ihr redet zu viel von allerlei Dingen. (Goe.)

Doch will ich fallen, doch! gerächet oder nicht. (Sch.)

Obs. 2. Even with words like indes, it is possible to avoid inversion by putting them after the subject, in which case they almost form part of it, and therefore do not affect the order :—

Blücher indes ſandte allen Truppenteilen ..... den Befehl.
(Varnhagen von Ense.)

Obs. 3. In sentences with doch, the verb is sometimes placed first as in an interrogative sentence ; the real object is then to affirm more strongly.

Seit lange war die Kunſt aus dem Leben getreten und war ein Artikel des Luxus geworden.....Weiß ich doch die Zeit noch, wo man in den Gallerien die ſchönſten Werke eines Leonardo nur als merkwürdige und ſonderbare Altertümer vorwies..... *I do remember the time when* .....
(Tieck.)

Hat die Königin doch nichts voraus vor dem gemeinen Bürgerweib.
(Schiller.)

498. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.—In all subordinate sentences introduced by a subordinative conjunction, or by a relative or interrogative pronoun, the finite verb or auxiliary is placed at the end, all other words remaining in the same order as in principal sentences.

There are, however, two cases in which the introductory conjunction is omitted, and the order is that of a principal sentence :—

(1) in oblique oration, daß being left out; as, er ſagte, es ſei unmöglich.

(2) in hypothetical and concessive sentences, *if*, and the wenn or ob of *although* are omitted, and the clause assumes an interrogative form :—

Und wär' ich bei Geld, ſo wär' ich bei Sinnen.
Iſt es gleich Nacht, ſo leuchtet unſer Recht. (Sch.)

499. APPARENT EXCEPTION AFTER als.—There is an apparent exception to the ordinary rule after als rendered in English *as if*.

Es iſt mir immer, als hätte ich ihn irgendwo geſehen.

The explanation is easily seen by supplying the ellipsis :—

Es iſt mir, als es ſein würde, hätte ich.....

500. ORDER OF COMPLEX SENTENCES. — Should a complex sentence begin with an adverbial clause, the same inversion takes place in the principal sentence as if it began with an adverb :—

Wenn das die Sternkunst ist,	will	ich	froh zu diesem heitern Glauben mich	bekennen.
Als er ankam,	fand	er	niemand da.	

Obs. When the subordinate sentence begins with ſo, inversion does not always take place in the principal sentence.

So gefährlich auch seine unweise Handhabung der Kronbesitzer sein mochte, die feste Geschäftsführung der Behörden und der überlieferte Brauch machten vieles wieder gut. (Pauli.)

501. IRREGULARITIES. — The strict rules of order are often violated by the poets, occasionally by prose writers. Heine, who spent most of his life in France, is particularly fond of deviating.

Doch, als er's wog in freier Hand,
Das Schwert er viel zu schwer erfand. (Uhland.)

Der alte Schmied den Bart sich streicht. (Uhland.)

Er war dein Gast und hatte sich gesetzt an deinen Herd. (Heine.)

Und er wollte noch einmal nachträumen die Träume seiner Jugend. (Heine.)

Nur eine schmale Gasse öffnete sich zwischen den Kirchenstühlen, durch welche die freiwilligen Kämpfer, einer hinter den andern, dem Altar zuschritten, um dort ihre Namen aufzuzeichnen und sich mit einem Handschlag von dem Officier anwerben zu lassen für den heiligen Krieg. (Heyse.)

Chapter XIX.—The Complex Sentence.—Introductory.

502. SUBSTANTIVAL SENTENCE. — In writing or speaking, we must necessarily use one of three forms of speech; we make a statement, we ask a question, or we express a desire in the form of a command, petition, or wish. Any one of these may, *like a noun*, occur in a sentence as the object of a verb of believing, saying, asking, &c.; as the subject of a verb; as the appositive complement after verbs like *is*, *seems*, &c.; or lastly, it may depend on various prepositions. Thus we have three forms of substantival sentences:—

I. Oblique Enunciation.
II. Oblique Interrogation.
III. Oblique Petition.

Each of which may occur—

(α) as object;
(β) as subject;
(γ) as apposition;
(δ) as appositive complement.

To illustrate this classification, let us take a simple sentence, having for its theme "the triumph of good over evil."

There are three forms of such a simple sentence:—

Enunciation: *Good will triumph over evil.*
Interrogation: *Will good triumph over evil?*
Petition: *Let* (or *may*) *good triumph over evil.*

The next step is to introduce one or another of these forms into a sentence in the place of a noun. We shall begin with the first form—Enunciation.

503. ENUNCIATION.—

(α) In the sentence—

I anticipate the triumph of good over evil,

write for the noun "the triumph," &c., the sentence "that good will triumph over evil," and we have—

I anticipate that good will triumph over evil,

where "that good," &c., is therefore the *object* of *I anticipate.*

(β) Again in the sentence—

The triumph of good over evil is certain.

perform the same operation, and we have—

That good will triumph over evil is certain,

an illustration of the Oblique Enunciation as *subject.*

(γ) A far commoner way of turning the last phrase, both in English and German, is—

It is certain that good will triumph over evil,

where the sentence "that good," &c., is in *apposition* to the grammatical subject *it.* Strictly speaking this sentence represents—

It (the triumph of good over evil) is certain.

In German the noun sentence is frequently in apposition to a compound of da, such as darauf, daran. Thus—

He grieves over the triumph of good over evil

may be rendered—

Er iſt darüber betrübt, daß das Gute über das Böſe ſiegt.

(δ) Lastly, the Oblique Enunciation may form the *appositive complement,* as in—

The most reasonable of all creeds is that good will triumph over evil,
compared with
The most reasonable of all creeds is the certain triumph of good over evil.

504. INTERROGATION.—It will now be easy to see how the noun sentence plays the part of a noun in the following instances of Oblique Interrogation:—

I wish to know whether good will triumph over evil.

Whether good will triumph over evil is uncertain.

It has often been asked whether good will triumph over evil.

The gravest of all questions is whether good will triumph over evil.

505. PETITION.—And in Oblique Petition.

All men wish that good may triumph over evil.

That good may triumph over evil is the earnest desire of all good men.

It is feared by bad men that good will triumph over evil (let good not triumph.....).

The anxiety of the wicked is lest good should triumph over evil (let good not triumph.....).

506. ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES.—Sentences beginning with the relative are attached to nouns, and qualify them like adjectives. Thus—

Der Mann, der neulich angekommen iſt

is the exact equivalent of

Der neulich angekommene Mann.

As to the construction of adjectival sentences, there are two things to be observed—(1) the finite verb is placed at the end of the sentence; (2) the indicative mood is used, unless the sentence is something more than a simple adjectival sentence. (*See* §§ 545, 576.)

507. ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES WITH ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—It often happens that a sentence beginning with a relative, especially wer, was, is the subject of a verb, or otherwise takes the place of a noun. Such a sentence may be considered a substantival sentence. It is, however, perhaps better to look upon it as an adjectival sentence, serving as epithet to a noun or pronoun understood. Thus in

Wer dazu ſtimmt, erhebe ſeine Hände!

wer dazu ſtimmt may be looked upon as an epithet of der understood, the subject to erhebe.

508. CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.—Adverbial sentences are divided into several classes, according to the kind of adverb which they replace in a sentence. The classes are as follows :—

(I.) Consecutive sentences beginning with *so that*, or with *that*, preceded by some such word as *such*, *so*.

(II.) Final sentences, denoting a purpose, and introduced by *in order that*, or by *that* meaning *in order that*.

(III.) Sentences beginning with *when*, *until*, *where*, &c., and serving instead of an adverb of time or place.

(IV.) Causal sentences, answering the question *why ?*

(V.) Comparative sentences, beginning with *than*, or answering the question *how ?*

(VI.) Conditional sentences, beginning with *if*, or an equivalent word.

(VII.) Concessive sentences beginning with *though*.

The following are instances, the sentences in italics being subordinate :—

(I.) He practises so often *that he will be in the eleven.*

(II.) - - *in order that he may be in the eleven.*

(III.) - - *when he ought to be at work.*

- - *wherever he can find a net.*

(IV.) - - *because he cannot help it.*

(V.) - - more *than he ought to practise*, as much as *he likes.*

(VI.) He will practise, *if he has time.*

(VII.) „ „ *even though it rains*

Chapter XX.—Substantival Sentences.

509. DECLARATORY SENTENCES appear in three forms :—

(1.) Introduced by the conjunction daß with indicative or subjunctive, according to circumstances (§ 523, &c.).

(2.) Expressed by a dependent sentence in the order of a principal sentence with no introductory conjunction, and with the verb in the subjunctive. (*See* chapter on Oblique Oration.)

(3.) In an abridged form, expressed by the infinitive (§ 514).

In the examples to be given in this chapter the use of the subjunctive will generally be avoided. Its employment will be fully discussed in the next chapter, headed Oblique Oration. The object here is to show what part substantival sentences may play in a complex sentence.

510. DECLARATORY SENTENCES AS SUBJECT, OBJECT, &c.—A declaratory sentence introduced by daß may stand exactly as in English.

(1.) As subject—

Daß Unterdrücker nichts zu fürchten haben, iſt weder nötig noch gut. (J. Müller.)

(2.) As object of a verb—

Ich weiß, daß alle Länder gute Menſchen tragen. (Lessing.)

(3.) As appositive complement—

Die ſchönſte Antwort auf Verleumdung iſt, daß man ſie ſtillſchweigend verachtet. (Goe.)

(4.) In apposition to the subject, especially when the subject is a pronoun, das or es. In this case the substantival sentence may be considered the true subject of the verb.

Daß die Wogen ſich ſenken und heben,
Das iſt eben des Meeres Leben.

(5.) In apposition to the object of a verb, in whatever case—

Daß unſer Gott uns Leben gab,
Des wollen wir uns freuen. (Stolberg.)

Ich fand es ſchrecklich, daß ich Schlaf und Ruhe und Geſundheit aufgeopfert hatte. (Goe.)

(6.) In apposition to a noun not immediately dependent on a verb—

Zur Gewähr, daß ich euch ſende, bring' ihm dies Schreiben. (Sch.)

511. IN APPOSITION TO COMPOUNDS OF **da**.—A sentence beginning with **daß** may also stand in apposition to compounds of **da** with prepositions. Such substantival sentences in German are not represented by substantival sentences in English, but by prepositions with verbal nouns, &c.

Er rettete ſich dadurch, daß er durch das Fenſter ſprang.

Vielleicht trägt der Gram um ihn dazu bei, daß mein Vater ſeit einiger Zeit unkenntlich wird. (Auerbach.)

Cavour erſcheint auch darum als ein rechter Sohn der neuen Zeit, weil er ſelbſt ſeine Verſchwörungen unter freiem Himmel trieb. (von Treitschke.)

Mein eigentlichſter Vorteil beſtand darin, daß die Liebe zur Stille herrſchend war. (Goe.)

512. SUBJUNCTIVE IN APPOSITION TO COMPOUNDS OF **da**.—Occasionally the clause in apposition to **dadurch**, &c., contains the statement, not of a fact, but of a mere conception. In such cases a subjunctive is used.

Er war feſt entſchloſſen, den Staat nicht dadurch zu verderben, daß er als Gefangener Öſterreichs lebe. (Freytag.)

513. SUPINE IN APPOSITION.—A substantival sentence in apposition to **es**, **das**, and compounds of **da**, is often replaced by an infinitive with **zu** (supine).

Es ist ein großes Ergötzen, sich in den Geist der Zeiten zu versetzen.
which might be rendered daß man.....sich versetzt.

Mein guter Stern bewahrte mich davor,
Die Natter an den Busen mir zu legen. (Sch.)

Alle deine Verrichtungen werden darin bestehen, den Homer bei meinem Tische vorzulesen. (Wieland.)

Also frequently when the compound of da is omitted—

Die Tyrannei begnügt sich nicht, ihr Werk nur halb zu thun. (Sch.)
where damit might be supplied.

514. SUPINE AS OBJECT. — The infinitive with zu as object represents a substantival sentence after verbs of *thinking*, *hoping*, *fearing*, and also after behaupten, and some similar verbs, but not after ordinary verbs of saying, &c.

Ich hoffte mit der Fichte Kranz
Des Sängers Schläfe zu umwinden. (Sch.)

Tilly konnte sich rühmen, noch keine Schlacht verloren zu haben. (Sch.)

515. SUBJECT OF SUPINE.—It is important to observe that when the supine represents a substantival sentence, its subject is the same as that of the principal sentence, unless the principal sentence is impersonal, or, as in the case of the 3rd example of § 513, readily suggests the subject of the supine.

516. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES are introduced by the conjunction ob, *whether*, or by interrogative pronouns or adverbs, wer, was, wo, wie, woher, &c. The verb in them is either in the indicative or the subjunctive mood, § 530. Such sentences are generally the object or in apposition to the object of verbs of *asking*, *denoting*, &c.

Laßt seh'n, ob sie ihn zweimal retten wird. (Sch.)

The *independent* question of which this is the oblique form is—Wird sie ihn zweimal retten?

Laß uns Eins nur wissen, was wir sind. (Herder.)

Chapter XXI.—Oblique Oration and Reported Speech.

517. REPORTED SPEECH.—The narration of speeches in the third person, as in the reports of Parliamentary debates, affords the best illustration of the rules of oblique oration, especially of oblique enunciation or statement. The rules are, of course, the same whether the reported portions be long or short, whether it represents a regular speech, or only a short statement, &c., for which the subject of the principal verb is not responsible. But the principles are more clearly brought out in the case of continuous speeches, and this chapter begins with several examples of such speeches.

518. MOOD AND TENSE.—German differs both from English and from Latin in the treatment of oblique oration. In English, the tense only is changed; in Latin the infinitive is used in oblique statement, the subjunctive in the subordinate clauses, and in oblique interrogation and petition; the tense is regulated by the ordinary laws of the sequence of tenses. The characteristics of German oblique oration are:—(1) the subjunctive is used throughout, both in principal and subordinate clauses, and (2) there is no such thing as sequence of tenses, the principal tenses (present, perfect, and the two futures) being regularly used except in the cases noted below, §§ 521, 522.

Thus the—

Present indicative...	becomes the	present subjunctive.
Imperfect indicative (as aorist)	„	„ perfect subjunctive.
Imperfect indicative (as imperfect)	„	„ perfect subjunctive.
Perfect indicative	„	„ perfect subjunctive.

Pluperfect indicative	becomes	the perfect subjunctive.
Future indicative	„	„ future subjunctive.
Future perfect indicative... ..	„	„ future perfect subj.
Conditional	„	„ future subjunctive [(or remains).

Thus compare :—

Einmal ſagte Rotfuß ganz deutlich hinter mir: „Jetzt weiß ich ja auch, wer Sie ſind. Sie ſind ja der Sohn des Bezirksförſters, da ſind wir ja aus einer Gegend. Ich habe oft bei Ihrem Vater im Walde gearbeitet. War ein ſtrenger fadengrader Mann."
(Auerbach.)

and the following (from Sanders) :—

Rotfuß ſagte zu dem Gefangenen, jetzt wiſſe er auch, wer dieſer ſei, er ſei ja der Sohn des Bezirksförſters, ſie ſeien ja Beide aus einer Gegend, er habe oft bei dem Vater des Gefangenen im Walde gearbeitet. Das ſei ein ſtrenger, fadengra er Mann geweſen.

Obs. In older German, the sequence of tenses was as strictly observed as in Latin. There are many survivals of the earlier usage, especially in colloquial German (notably in central Germany). Thus in Grimm's Tales, we find many examples (see Rippmann "Twenty Stories," note to p. 2, l. 21).

518A. VERB OF SAYING IMPLIED.—As in Latin, oblique oration may be introduced without a verb like "he said" being actually inserted, when it is suggested by the verb of the preceding sentence :—

Sie verlangten die Beſtätigung der Geſetze Edwards des Bekenners und die Charte Heinrichs des Erſten: der König ſelbſt habe es ihnen zu Wincheſter verheißen, und er ſei verpflichtet, den dort geſchworenen Eid zu halten.
(Pauli.)

Here verlangten implies a verb of saying. Notice the colon, as before a quotation in direct speech (§ 12). A similar example is given in § 530.

519. FORM AND ORDER.—A sentence in oblique oration may either depend on daß, and consequently have its verb at the end, or it may be put in its natural order without an introductory conjunction, its oblique character being marked solely by the mood of the verbs.

Wellington's Freunde frohlockten, daß es nun endlich reine Bahn gebe zwiſchen zwei Parteien, wie in dieſen Tagen das Tory-Stichwort lautete. Die Aufforderung Canning's an den Herzog, unter ihm Miniſter zu bleiben, ſei eine Inſolenz; eines Helden würdig habe der Sieger von Waterloo damit geantwortet, daß er ſamt dem Feldzeugmeiſteramt nun auch ſofort den Oberbefehl der Armee niedergelegt habe. (Pauli.)

In this passage the first sentence (es...gebe) is introduced by daß; the following sentences, die Aufforderung.....Inſolenz and eines Helden..... geantwortet, have their verbs in the subjunctive, but stand in the same order as principal sentences, one of them being inverted, exactly as a principal sentence would be.

520. APPOSITION.—An oblique statement often stands in apposition to a noun or a compound of da.

Der engliſche Hof machte dem Streit durch die Erklärung ein Ende, daß er ſich von dem ferneren Unterhalt der heſſiſchen Truppen gänzlich losſage, wenn der Landgraf ſie nicht der Verwendung des Königs von Großbritannien ſofort überlaſſen wolle. (Archenholz.)

521. IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—As the third person plural of the present subjunctive is the same as that of the present indicative, the imperfect subjunctive is preferred to the present in that person. The same applies to tenses formed with the present of an auxiliary, *i.e.*, the perfect and the two futures. Thus:—

Man ſagte, er leſe, but ſie läſen.

Man ſagte, er habe geleſen, but ſie hätten geleſen.

Should the first singular or plural occur, as it sometimes does in oblique oration, the same rule applies. It should be added that, though ſein has a distinct form for the present subjunctive, wären is often used:—

Das wären die Planeten, ſagte mir
Der Führer, ſie regierten das Geſchick;
Drum ſeien ſie als Könige gebildet. (Sch.)

The following passage from Paul Heyse, who is a very accurate writer, illustrates the use of the tenses. It is from an account of a sermon preached when the Germans were rallying to the Befreiungskrieg:—

> Seid unerschrocken, lautete der Ruf, und haltet fest ob dem Gesetz, dann erst wird euch Gott wiederum herrlich machen. Denn ein heiliger Krieg sei es, in den sie auszögen, und heiligen müsse sich, wer des Sieges teilhaftig werden wolle. Nicht gottloser Trotz werde den Trotz der Gottlosen niederwerfen, sondern ein reiner, demütiger Sinn, der unter den Gräueln des Krieges festhalte ob dem Gesetz, und sich nicht mit Kot beflecke, der die Herrlichkeit jener gewesen sei.

Notice in this passage (1) the transition from direct to oblique; (2) the present subjunctive, except in auszögen, which is used because ausziehen is like the indicative; (3) gewesen sei, to represent the past tense in a dependent clause.

The following, from Freytag's Friedrich der Große, shows also the substitute for the imperative—

> Und wie kam es endlich, daß schon nach dem Tode Friedrichs des Großen unbefangene Beurteiler ermahnten, man möge doch aufhören, dem Vielgehaßten den Untergang zu prophezeien? Nach jeder Niederlage sei er um so kräftiger in die Höhe geschnellt, alle Schäden und Kriegswunden würden dort schneller geheilt, als wo anders.

Obs.—It should be added that usage is not quite uniform. Some authors use an imperfect, &c., subjunctive whenever a past tense precedes. (518 *Obs.*)

522. UNTRUE STATEMENTS.—It is sometimes said that the imperfect, &c., subjunctive are used where the oblique statement is made merely to be contradicted, or is, by the nature of things, untrue :—

> Mir meldet er aus Linz, er läge krank;
> Doch hab' ich sich're Nachricht, daß er sich
> Zu Frauenberg versteckt beim Grafen Gallas. (Sch.)

where the true statement is in the indicative.

This is, however, doubtful, as Schiller, being a Suabian poet, uses the imperfect subjunctive rather freely.*

---

* Compare Sanders „Hauptschwierigkeiten," p. 180, with Breul, Note to „Wallensteins Tod," l. 665.

523. TRUE STATEMENTS. — When the oblique statement is vouched for by the speaker, the indicative is used. In such case the reader's attention is to be fixed chiefly on the oblique statement, not on the fact of its having been made by such and such a person.

Ihr ſagtet ſelbſt, daß er von Sinnen war. (Sch.)

Hence the indicative is the natural tense of an oblique statement after verbs like wiſſen, bekennen, ſehen, erfahren, &c. The following passage shows the two constructions side by side.

Da Goethe um dieſelbe Zeit geſchrieben hat, er ſei über die Idee mit ſich ſelbſt einig, ſo hatten wir in dieſer genialen Einleitungsſcene den Beweis, daß er bald darauf mit ſich einig wurde. (Vischer.)

524. **Als ob**, ALMOST EQUIVALENT TO *THAT*. — Sometimes an English statement introduced by *that* may be rendered in German by als ob, when the preceding words imply that the statement is untrue. So also when ob is omitted.

Unter den Frauen vornehmlich lebt weit verbreitet der liebenswürdige Irrtum, als ob die reinſte Blüte der Menſchlichkeit allein im Kreiſe der Dichter und Denker ſich entfalte. (v. Treitſchke.)

Es iſt der wahrhaft entſcheidende Charakter des Chriſtentums, den Dünkel, als gäbe es eine von der Gottheit bevorrechtete Nation, genommen zu haben. (W. v. Humboldt.)

525. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—Even in such sentences the principal tenses of the subjunctive are often used.

Eine bedeutende, das Volk aufregende Weiſſagung, als werde an einem gewiſſen Tage ein ungeheurer Sturm das Land verwüſten, traf ein. (Goe.)

526. IMPERATIVE. — An imperative occurring in direct oration is represented in oblique by an auxiliary, generally mögen, with the infinitive. This applies only when the imperative comes in the course of a piece of oblique oration, or depends on a verb like ſagen:—

Goethe ſagte: „Sehe jeder, wie er's treibt"
Goethe ſagte: „ jeder möge ſehen, wie er's treibe."
Die Antwort war: Thut, was ihr am ratſamſten findet.
Die Antwort war: ſie möchten thun, was ſie am ratſamſten fänden.

See also the last example to § 521.

527. OBLIQUE PETITION.—There are a great number of cases in which an imperative would stand were the sentence actually in direct oration, but where its true character is a little disguised, and it depends upon verbs and expressions denoting or implying a *wish*, a *command*, or *requirement*, *permission*. In such cases daß with a subjunctive is used to introduce a substantival sentence, which is the object of the verb. The rule of tenses is the same as in oblique statement :—

Der König entſchied, daß das Amt einem andern Kinde zu teil werde. (von Sybel.)
Erlauben Sie, daß dieſer fremde Mann
Gerufen werde. (Sch.)
Nimm dich in acht, daß dich die Rache nicht verderbe. (Sch.)
Sie iſt ein Weib, und die möchten immer gern, daß ſich alles unter ihr ſanftes Joch gelaſſen ſchmiege. (Goethe.)
Er iſt nicht wert, daß man ſich um ihn bekümmere.

In the last sentence, iſt ... wert is equivalent to a verb expressing *requirement*. "His character does not demand that one should, &c. ..."

Obs. 1. Oblique Petition may also stand in apposition as an appositive complement, or as the subject to a verb :—

Ich beſtehe darauf, daß der Lord ſich entferne. (Sch.)
Die Hauptſache iſt, daß man ihm ruhig entgegengehe.
Ich bin es nicht gewohnt, daß mich der Zufall,
Blind waltend, finſter herrſchend, mit ſich führe.

Were this last sentence put into direct oration, it would run—
Let not chance lead me, chance shall not lead me.

Obs. 2. There is some tendency, however, to use an indicative in such sentences :—

Fordre nicht von ihm, daß er dich jetzt verlaſſen ſoll. (Goe.)
Iſt nur der Saracen es wert,
Daß ihn bekämpft der Chriſten Schwert? (Sch.)

528. INFINITIVE IN OBLIQUE PETITION. — It often happens that a verb of *entreating*, *commanding*, &c., is followed by an infinitive which would, in direct oration, be in the imperative. The subordinate clauses show that the laws of oblique oration are still recognised,

Thus in the „Jungfrau von Orleans" the King would have prayed :—

Wenn unrecht Gut an dieser Krone haftet, nimm mich zum Opfer an.

Johanna relates his prayer thus :—

Zum ersten flehtest du den Himmel an,
Wenn unrecht Gut an dieser Krone hafte,
* * * * *
Dich zum Opfer anzunehmen.

529. HOPING AND FEARING.—After hoffen, erwarten, fürchten, a subjunctive may be used, but the tendency is to prefer the indicative :—

Guebriant fürchtete, daß die Absicht der Schweden sei..... (Sch.)

Der König ist gut, und wir wollen hoffen, daß er gerecht ist. (Sch.)

Ich fürchte, wir sind alle betrogen. (Goe.)

Ich sagte dir vorher, daß Gretchen krank liege; ich hoffe, daß es kein Fieber ist. (Niebuhr.)

Ich fürchte nicht, daß man dieses Wort belächeln werde. (v. Treitschke.)

530. OBLIQUE INTERROGATION. — In dependent questions the normal construction is the same as in oblique statements, *i.e.*, the subjunctive mood, generally in the present tense or one of the same group of tenses, unless the imperfect be required as in § 521. But, especially when the principal verb of the sentence is in the present tense, the verb of the dependent question is frequently in the indicative. It is difficult, however, to lay down a precise rule :—

Unentschieden ist es, wo größere Lebensfülle verbreitet sei, ob auf dem Continent oder in dem unergründeten Meere. (A. v. Humboldt.)

Ob er lebe, konnte sie nicht unterscheiden. (Heyse.)

Ob sich wirklich Gold machen läßt, gilt mir gleich viel. (Lessing.)

Gelernt haben wir endlich, jeden Mann zu fragen, ob er ein Vaterland habe. (v. Treitschke.)

Du weißt so wenig wer als wo du bist. (Goe.)

The following is an instance of a very distinctly quoted question :—

Der König fährt fort, in den Freundesbriefen, welche er d'Argens nachsendet, dies Krankthun zu höhnen. In Frankreich solle sich jetzt ein Wärwolf zeigen; kein Zweifel, daß der Marquis dies sei..... Ob er jetzt kleine Kinder esse? Die Unart habe er doch sonst nicht gehabt. (Freytag.)

531. REPEATED QUESTIONS.—It often happens that a person, when asked a question, repeats it before he gives an answer. This is generally done in German by the particle ob, unless the first question begins with an interrogative pronoun or adverb. Of course, in that case a principal sentence is suppressed. Thus—

A. Gehen Sie morgen aufs Land?—B. Ob ich morgen aufs Land gehe? versteht sich.

Somewhat similar is the case of an indignant or rhetorical question, in which the thought of the last speaker is taken up :—

Burleigh. Ihr wart mit Babington, dem Hochverräter,
Und seinen Mordgesellen einverstanden.

Mary. Wann hätt' ich das gethan? Man zeige mir
Die Documente auf. (Sch.)

Similarly in Freytag's die Journalisten, one of the characters, objecting to the presence of a political opponent at an entertainment, says :—

Er hat so entschieden andere politische Grundsätze, daß . . .,

and Bolz, the person objected to, replies :—

Ich hätte andere politische Grundsätze? Ich kenne in Gesellschaft keinen anderen politischen Grundsatz, als den einen, mit braven Leuten zu trinken.

532. SUBORDINATE SENTENCES IN OBLIQUE ORATION. — In oblique oration, when the principal verb of the oblique statement stands in the subjunctive, the verbs of the dependent clauses are also in the subjunctive, and follow the same rule as to tenses. Examples will be found in § 521. The same principle applies when the principal verb of the oblique part of the sentence is in the infinitive, § 528.

It may happen, however, that the subordinate sentence is only a comment of a narrator. In that case its verb is in the indicative :—

Vor allen Dingen fordert er,
Daß ihm du Châtel ausgeliefert werde,
Den er den Mörder seines Vaters nennt. (Sch.)

533. IMPLIED OBLIQUE ORATION. — Sometimes, instead of a complete sentence in oblique oration, only a subordinate clause appears.

Thus the sentence—

Die Athener verurteilten Sokrates zum Tode, weil er die Jugend verderbe

differs from—

Die Athener verurteilten Sokrates zum Tode, weil er die Jugend verdarb.

The latter means that Socrates actually corrupted the youth, and that therefore he was condemned. In the former, we must remember that verurteilten implies, though it does not actually express, a *thought* of the Athenians. The intermediate step is :—The Athenians thought *that Socrates deserved to die, because he corrupted the youth ;* in fact, *condemned to death* is the equivalent of *thought that he deserved to die.* The words in italics give in oblique oration the thought of the Athenians, and it is for that reason that the subjunctive mood is used, even when part of the thought is suppressed. In translating we should say, "*because, in their opinion, he corrupted the youth.*"

Sie fiel endlich dem Criminalgericht in die Hände, und nannte demselben den großen Marschall Luxembourg, der seine Seele dem Teufel verschrieben hätte. (v. Sybel.)

(*Who, according to her, had signed away his soul to the devil.*)

Chapter XXII.—Consecutive Sentences.

534. DEPENDENT ON **ſo, derart,** &c.—The natural form of a consecutive sentence is that it should begin with **daß**, the previous clause containing a demonstrative adverb, like **ſo, derart**, or the adjective **ſolch**. In such sentences the indicative is generally used :—

Er hatte ſich bei dem großen Brande im Städtchen derartig ausgezeichnet, daß er die Lebensrettungsmedaille erhielt. (Auerbach.)

Es iſt ſoweit gekommen, daß der Kaiſer vor ſeinen eigenen Armeen zittert. (Sch.)

535. ELLIPSIS OF **ſo**.—Sometimes the adverb is omitted, so that **daß** by itself must be rendered *so that* :—

Geſchrieben ſoll ſie werden, daß ſie vor Gericht für eure Hand gelten kann. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. Compare in English, from Shakespeare's "Julius Cæsar":—

Have you not made an universal shout,
That Tiber trembled underneath her banks?

Obs. 2. Sometimes **daß** with a negative represents the English *without* with a gerund :—

Kannſt du von allem dieſem etwas brauchen, daß deine Epiſtel kein Buch wird. (Goe.)

536. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.—When the sentence on which a consecutive clause depends is negative, or virtually negative, the consecutive clause often denotes not an actual result, but one that is simply conceived. It is, in fact, conceived merely to be contradicted.

In such consecutive clauses the imperfect subjunctive, and still more frequently the pluperfect subjunctive, is used. In very many of them daß nicht (=*quin*) occurs, and the English rendering is by *but* or *without*:—

Kaum verging ein Tag, daß nicht irgend etwas Neues und Unerwartetes angestellt worden wäre. (Goe.)

Es fehlte viel, daß die Länder der österreichischen Prinzen rein katholische Länder gewesen wären.

In these examples the statements of the subordinate clauses are "something new was not arranged," "the territories were purely Catholic." But when principal and subordinate are taken together, the meaning is "something new *was* arranged," "the territories *were not* purely Catholic." So after weit entfernt.

537. ADJECTIVAL SENTENCES.—It is in this form that the consecutive *adjectival* sentence with a subjunctive mood appears, *i. e.*, after a negative principal sentence, to bring forward a statement only meant to be contradicted.

Es ist in den Wahlverwandtschaften keine Zeile, die ich nicht selbst erlebt hätte. (*i. e.*, I *have* experienced it all.) (Eckermann.)

Wer ist unter uns, der nicht im Laufe eines Jahres hier und da eine Hoffnung vereitelt gesehen hätte?

Keiner unter uns, der nicht den sittlichen Zorn wider höfische Tyrannei und Verderbnis aus diesem Drama genommen hätte. (v. Treitschke.)

Es geht dem Bilde kein Zug ab, dessen Vermissen eine Lücke verursachte. (W. v. Humboldt.)

Einen Müßiggänger, der es seiner Meinung nach wäre, giebt es wohl nicht auf der Welt. (Ibid.)

Obs. It is often hard to say, as in the 4th and 5th examples, whether the verb of the dependent clause is really a subjunctive, or represents a conditional.

538. **Als daß.**—After a principal sentence containing the adverb zu, als daß with an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is often, but not necessarily, used, especially with the pluperfect of the auxiliary sollen.

Eure Versöhnung war ein wenig zu schnell, als daß sie dauerhaft hätte sein sollen. (Goe.)

Doch war die Stimmung im Lande zu günstig für den König, als daß jener mächtige Prälat sie zu erschüttern vermochte. (Pauli.)

Obs. 1. As in the last two sections the subjunctive clause with als daß contains a statement brought forward only to be contradicted.

Obs. 2. Notice the close imitation of Latin in the following, which would hardly be allowed now :—

Der Sänger des Messias hat überflüssige Schönheiten, als daß man ihm welche andichten müßte, die keine sind. (Lessing.)

539. **Ohne daß.** — Sentences beginning with ohne daß are really consecutive, the meaning being *in such a way that not*. The subjunctive, especially the pluperfect, is very common in such sentences, but the indicative is also used.

Dies geschah, ohne daß ich dadurch klüger gewesen wäre. (Goe.)

Ein Zweikampf war vorüber, ohne daß ich etwas davon erfahren hatte. (Goe.)

So with statt daß:—

Statt daß jetzige Künstler auf dem trefflichen Weg fortgehen sollten, kehren sie wieder zur Beschränktheit zurück.

540. SUPINE. — The Supine with um, which is the natural way of turning *final* sentences, is often used in consecutive sentences, after genug, &c., and sometimes after so. The subject of the supine must be the same as that of the principal verb. The same remark applies to the supine with ohne.

Sie standen in dem verhältnismäßigen Alter, um dereinst Gatten zu werden. (Goe.)

Ich bin nicht tugendhaft genug, um jemals dieser Partei mich anschließen zu können. (Heine.)

Deine Leser sind schwerlich in der römischen Geschichte so bewandert, um über den Unterschied zwischen Tribun und Tribüne völlig klar zu sein. (Heyse.)

Chapter XXIII.—Final Sentences.

541. ADVERBIAL WITH **damit, daß**.—The normal construction of a final sentence is a subjunctive with the word damit, *in order that*. Its literal meaning, like that of the Latin *quo* (= *ut eo*), is *wherewith* or *that therewith*. Daß with a subjunctive is also used, and in older German auf daß.

Soll ich den gegenwärtigen Augenblick nicht genießen, damit ich des folgenden gewiß sei? (Goe.)

Bleibt nicht in England, daß der Britte nicht
Sein stolzes Herz an eurem Unglück weide. (Sch.)

Der Tod seines Vaters hatte ihn heimgerufen, damit er das verwaiste Geschäft in die Hand nähme. (Heyse.)

Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß du lange lebest, und daß dir es wohlgehe in dem Lande, das dir der Herr dein Gott geben wird. (Luth. Bib.)

Obs. The rule of the sequence of tenses (§ 518 Obs.) is more strictly observed in final sentences than elsewhere. But we find

Da warf Konradin seinen Handschuh vom Blutgerüste herab, damit er dem König Peter von Aragonien gebracht werde. (v. Raumer.)

542. INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL FINAL SENTENCES.—When the result is looked upon as practically certain, and not a mere conception, an indicative may be used after damit and daß final. The tendency to use an indicative is, naturally enough, gaining ground.

Millionen stolzer Krieger sind gefallen, damit wir Adoptiv-Enkel der römischen Welt werden konnten. (Freytag.)

Da kamen die Jahre der Prüfung, wo ihm fast alles unterging, was er für sich selbst an Freude und Glück besaß, damit er der entsagende Fürst seines Volkes, der große Beamte des Staates, der Held einer Nation wurde.* (Freytag.)

543. SUPINE.—When the subject of the final sentence is the same as that of the principal sentence, the infinitive with zu or um ..... zu (supine) is frequently used.

Was habt ihr denn gethan, um sie zu retten? (Sch.)

which might be written damit ihr sie rettet.

Obs. Occasionally the subject of the infinitive is different from that of the principal sentence, but is clear from the context:—

Scheint mir die Sonne heute, um das zu überlegen, was gestern war? (Goe.)

544. AUXILIARIES OF MOOD.—Instead of a simple subjunctive, an auxiliary of mood (especially mögen) is sometimes used in a final sentence, exactly as we use *may*, *might*.

Darum eben bin ich vorangeeilt, damit ich euch in Fassung setzen möchte. (Sch.)

Sie entließ ihn gern, damit er für sich sorgen möge. (Goe.)

545. ADJECTIVAL FINAL SENTENCES.—As in Latin, a relative pronoun with a subjunctive is often used to express a purpose:

Schickt einen sichern Boten ihm entgegen, der auf geheimem Weg ihn zu mir führe. (Sch.)

---

* The indicative in final sentences is chiefly used after past tenses. But we find:—

Drum liebt dich der Tyrann, damit er jemand hat, dem er befehlen kann. (Goe.)

Chapter XXIV.—Sentences of Time and Place, Cause, &c.

546. **Wenn** is of wider application than als or da; it may refer to any time, past, present, or future, and means *on any occasion when*. It is often said to express *indefinite frequency*.

Wir fahren zu Berg, wir kehren wieder,
Wenn der Kuckuk ruft, wenn erwachen die Lieder. (Sch.)

Sonst, wenn der Vater auszog, da war ein Freuen, wenn er wiederkam. (Sch.)

Obs. Wann, which was formerly used as the correlative of dann, and is still sometimes so used in poetry, has, in this sense, given place to wenn, and is mostly limited to its interrogative meaning, dependent or independent.

547. **Als, da,** refer to definite events, als in the past only, da in the present as well.

Als Friedrich Wilhelm unter die Kurhut trat, fand er nichts als bestrittene Ansprüche auf zerstreute Territorien. (Freytag.)

Da noch alles in weiter Ferne lag, da hattest du Entschluß und Mut; und jetzt, da der Erfolg da ist, da fängst du an zu zagen. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Als may be used with the historical present: Als die Vorhänge sich öffnen, sieht man ein prächtiges Lager. (Goe.)

Obs. 2. Nachdem is the equivalent of *when* with pluperfect only.

548. **Wie,** as a conjunction of time, generally means *as soon as*; sometimes it corresponds almost exactly to the English *as*.

Wie er winkt mit dem Finger,
Auf thut sich der weite Zwinger. (Sch.)

549. **Während, indem.**—Während denotes that an action is going on simultaneously with another; indem, though in older German and in poetry used interchangeably with während, generally adds to the idea of *while* the notion of *inasmuch as*, and often represents the gerund with *by*, &c.

Sie fassen ihren Feind mit Wut,
Indem ich nach des Tieres Lende
Aus starker Faust den Speer versende. (Sch.)

Wer lernt nicht, indem er lehrt? (Herder.)

Obs. 1. Während daß is sometimes used. Indes, indessen, are conjunctions meaning *while* as well as adverbs meaning *meanwhile*. Derweil also means *while*. Während (not indem), is used for contrast.

Obs. 2. Weil, generally the equivalent of *because*, is also, in older German, a temporal conjunction meaning *while*:—

Das Eisen muß geschmiedet werden, weil es glüht.

550. TENSES WITH **seit, seitdem.**—A present with seit, seitdem, both in the dependent clause and in the clause on which it depends, is rendered in English by a perfect; an imperfect by a pluperfect.

Die Deutschen können erst über Litteratur urteilen, seitdem sie eine eigne Litteratur haben.

Nimmer sang ich freud'ge Lieder,
Seit ich deine Stimme bin. (Sch.)

551. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH **bis, ehe.**—Bis, bis daß, ehe, occasionally take a subjunctive, when the clause introduced by them refers to a future and uncertain event. The sequence of tenses is in this case observed, an imperfect subjunctive being used after a past tense.

Melde ihm die Nachricht, ehe er sie durch andere erfahre.

Doch hoffte man, die Stadt wenigstens noch so lang hinzuhalten, bis man das Getreide würde einernten können. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. But these conjunctions are by far the most frequently used with an indicative. In French the tendency is to put a subjunctive after *jusqu'à ce que* wherever there is any excuse for doing so; in German it is just the opposite.

Obs. 2. Bis is often, as in the second example above, preceded by ſo lange.

552. HARDLY...WHEN; NO SOONER...THAN.—The English dependent sentence after *hardly*, *no sooner*, is often rendered in German by another principal sentence beginning with ſo, occasionally da:—

Kaum war der Vater tot, ſo kommt ein jeder
Mit ſeinem Ring. (Lessing.)

Es währte nicht lange, ſo kam Goethe, in einem blauen Oberrock. (Eckermann.)

Obs. Sometimes ſo is omitted, and the order is unaffected, the sentences being really co-ordinate:

Doch dem war kaum das Wort entfahren,
Möcht' er's im Buſen gern bewahren. (Sch.)

Kaum iſt ein großes Werk gethan,
Ein neues iſt ſchon ausgedacht. (Goe.)

Sometimes the second clause is connected to that containing kaum by the conjunction und.

553. ONLY WHEN is rendered either by nicht eher als bis or by erſt als:—

Man erkannte ſie nicht eher, als bis ſie ganz nahe herangetreten waren,
or—Man erkannte ſie erſt, als ſie.....waren.

Und eher nicht erfolgt des Kampfes Ende,
Als bis der letzte Mann gefallen iſt. (Sch.)

554. ADJECTIVAL WHEN, WITH ANTECEDENT.—If *when* has an antecedent, it is generally rendered by wo, sometimes by da:—

Es giebt im Menſchenleben Augenblicke, wo er dem Weltgeiſt näher iſt als ſonſt. (Sch.)

Erinnere mich nicht der ſchönen Tage, da mir dein Haus die freie Stätte gab. (Goe.)

555. WHEREVER, WHENEVER.—Wo auch (immer), wohin auch (immer), *wherever*, *whithersoever*, are sometimes followed by a subjunctive, oftener by the indicative of mögen or können:—

Es ist brav und löblich, einen Bösewicht, wo er auch stehe, anzugreifen. (Sch.)

Whenever is generally rendered by so oft (als); *wherever*, when definite, by überall wo.

556. WHEN RENDERED BY **worauf**.—*When*, in the latter part of an English sentence, is often equivalent to *and thereupon*. It is then rendered by worauf, wobei, sometimes by als.

Endlich ward ihm hinterbracht, daß Lodroni's Anschlag glücklich von statten gegangen sei, worauf er die Unterredung abbrach und die Staatsräte vor sich ließ. (Sch.)

557. INDICATIVE IN CAUSAL SENTENCES.—The causal conjunctions weil, da, are followed by an indicative. So is nun when used, as it occasionally is, as a conjunction.

Obs. Occasionally davon daß, daran daß, daraus daß are practically equivalent to *because*, as

Einer stirbt nicht davon, daß er einen Tag fastet.

Ich erkannte ihn daran, daß er stammelte.

558. **Da** AND **weil**.—The difference between weil and da is this: weil gives the real cause of an action or fact (Seinsgrund), da the ground of an inference, the reason why we make the statement (Erkenntnisgrund). The one gives the real, the other the logical ground. Compare—

Da das Holz im Wasser schwimmt, so ist es leichter, als das Wasser (where *because wood swims in water* is not the reason why it is lighter than water, but the reason why we think so) with

Das Holz schwimmt im Wasser, weil es leichter als das Wasser ist (where *because it is lighter than water* is the real reason of its swimming).

If correlative adverbs are used in the principal sentence, darum, deswegen, &c., correspond to weil; folglich, also, so, &c., to da. (§ 199.)

559. USE OF **da**. — Hence the use of da is very common when the principal clause does not merely state a fact, but at the same time implies an inference :—

Das Unternehmen war desto leichter, da Sachsen von Verteidigern entblößt war. (Sch.)

Here not only the actual easiness of the undertaking, but the conclusion of some persons concerned that it was easier, is suggested.

Da is also very often used when the principal clause contains a question.

Warum noch länger abgesondert leben, da wir vereinigt reicher werden. (Sch.)

560. **Als, wie.**—The commonest forms of comparative sentence are introduced by als after a comparative, or by wie after so, ebenso, expressed or understood.

Ich singe wie der Vogel singt. (Goe.)
Sein Glück war größer als man berechnet hatte. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Je nachdem means *in proportion as, according as.*

Jeder gab, der eine weniger, der andere mehr, je nachdem der Beutel beschaffen war und das Herz. (Hebel.)

Obs. 2. Als at the beginning of a dependent clause is never to be rendered *as*, except before *if*. *As* of time is da, *as* of comparison wie.

561. INSERTION OF A NEGATIVE. — It is not uncommon to find a negative in the clause after a comparative and als when there is no negative in English.

. . . . fürstlicher bezahlt,
Als er noch keine gute That bezahlt. (Sch.)

For the corresponding French idiom, which is a normal construction, while in German it is comparatively rare, *see* Eve and de Baudiss, Syntax, § 291.

562. SENTENCES BEGINNING WITH **so**. — Both principal and dependent sentences often begin with so, qualifying an adjective or an adverb. The so of the dependent

clause is rendered by *as*, and influences the order like a relative adverb. The ſo of the principal clause is a demonstrative adverb.

Though such sentences can be rendered literally in English, it is only by a free translation that their real force can generally be given:—

So hoch er ſtand, ſo tief und ſchmählich ſei ſein Fall. (Sch.)

where a literal rendering ("let his fall be as great as he stood high") would be out of the question.

So ſehr Ariſtoteles die Einrichtung von Carthago in politiſcher Rückſicht rühmt, ſo wenig Wert hat ſie für die Geſchichte der Menſchheit. (Herder.)

563. *THE...THE* BEFORE COMPARATIVES. — These words which, in English, are of course not the article, but a case of a demonstrative pronoun, are rendered in German by je...deſto, je..., or je ..um ſo.

Je mehr der Vorrat ſchmolz, deſto ſchrecklicher wuchs der Hunger. (Sch.)

564. AS IF is rendered in German by als wenn, als ob. But perhaps the commonest idiom is to use the elliptical form of the conditional sentence, arranged like an interrogative sentence. A present subjunctive is often used :—

Thut als wenn Ihr zu Hauſe wäret. (Goe.)

Mit ſinnendem Haupt ſaß der Kaiſer da,
Als dächt' er vergangener Zeiten. (Sch.)

The real construction is—

Als (in modern German wie) er ſitzen würde, dächt' er...

Mir war zuweilen, als ſei ich von unſerm lieben Gott geſchieden. (Freytag.)

In such sentences, the imperfect subjunctive is common; in many cases the supposition is admittedly false (cf. § 522); in others, as in the last example, it may be conceived as true.

559. USE OF **da**. — Hence the use of da is very common when the principal clause does not merely state a fact, but at the same time implies an inference :—

Das Unternehmen war desto leichter, da Sachsen von Verteidigern entblößt war. (Sch.)

Here not only the actual easiness of the undertaking, but the conclusion of some persons concerned that it was easier, is suggested.

Da is also very often used when the principal clause contains a question.

Warum noch länger abgesondert leben, da wir vereinigt reicher werden. (Sch.)

560. **Als, wie.**—The commonest forms of comparative sentence are introduced by als after a comparative, or by wie after so, ebenso, expressed or understood.

Ich singe wie der Vogel singt. (Goe.)
Sein Glück war größer als man berechnet hatte. (Sch.)

Obs. 1. Je nachdem means *in proportion as, according as.*

Jeder gab, der eine weniger, der andere mehr, je nachdem der Beutel beschaffen war und das Herz. (Hebel.)

Obs. 2. Als at the beginning of a dependent clause is never to be rendered *as*, except before *if*. *As* of time is da, *as* of comparison wie.

561. INSERTION OF A NEGATIVE. — It is not uncommon to find a negative in the clause after a comparative and als when there is no negative in English.

. . . . fürstlicher bezahlt,
Als er noch keine gute That bezahlt. (Sch.)

For the corresponding French idiom, which is a normal construction, while in German it is comparatively rare, *see* Eve and de Baudiss, Syntax, § 291.

562. SENTENCES BEGINNING WITH **so**. — Both principal and dependent sentences often begin with so, qualifying an adjective or an adverb. The so of the dependent

clause is rendered by *as*, and influences the order like a relative adverb. The ſo of the principal clause is a demonstrative adverb.

Though such sentences can be rendered literally in English, it is only by a free translation that their real force can generally be given:—

So hoch er ſtand, ſo tief und ſchmählich ſei ſein Fall. (Sch.)

where a literal rendering ("let his fall be as great as he stood high") would be out of the question.

So ſehr Ariſtoteles die Einrichtung von Carthago in politiſcher Rückſicht rühmt, ſo wenig Wert hat ſie für die Geſchichte der Menſchheit. (Herder.)

563. *THE...THE* BEFORE COMPARATIVES. — These words which, in English, are of course not the article, but a case of a demonstrative pronoun, are rendered in German by je...deſto, je..., or je ..um ſo.

Je mehr der Vorrat ſchmolz, deſto ſchrecklicher wuchs der Hunger. (Sch.)

564. AS IF is rendered in German by als wenn, als ob. But perhaps the commonest idiom is to use the elliptical form of the conditional sentence, arranged like an interrogative sentence. A present subjunctive is often used :—

Thut als wenn Ihr zu Hauſe wäret. (Goe.)

Mit ſinnendem Haupt ſaß der Kaiſer da,
Als dächt' er vergangener Zeiten. (Sch.)

The real construction is—

Als (in modern German wie) er ſitzen würde, dächt' er...

Mir war zuweilen, als ſei ich von unſerm lieben Gott geſchieden. (Freytag.)

In such sentences, the imperfect subjunctive is common; in many cases the supposition is admittedly false (cf. § 522); in others, as in the last example, it may be conceived as true.

Chapter XXV.—Conditional and Concessive Sentences.

565. PROTASIS AND APODOSIS. — The statement made subject to a condition, in other words the principal sentence containing the conclusion, is called the *apodosis*, the adverbial sentence in which the condition is contained is called the *protasis* or *hypothetical sentence*. Thus in the proverb—

If wishes were horses, beggars would ride,

"beggars would ride" is the *apodosis*, "if wishes were horses," the *protasis*.

The normal form of introducing a condition is by wenn; other forms will be discussed in § 570, &c.

566. FORMS OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.—A condition may refer to present, past, or future time. If it refers to present or past time, the fulfilment or nonfulfilment of the condition, whether known to the speaker or not, is matter of history. But he may state it in two ways: he may either treat it as quite an open question, or he may imply his belief that it is not fulfilled. Thus—

If he sees you, he is trying to avoid you,
If he saw you yesterday, he tried to avoid you;

leaves the question of his seeing you doubtful; while—

If he were (had been) here now, he would try (have tried) to avoid you,
If he had been here yesterday, he would have tried to avoid you;

implies that the speaker thinks he is not or was not present.

In dealing with future time, the question is really open, but there are the same two points of view—

If he sees you to-morrow, he will try to avoid you;
If he were to see you to-morrow, he would try to avoid you.

The mood and tense of the verb in the apodosis is generally the same as that in the protasis.

567. PRESENT TIME. — The indicative is used when nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition, the imperfect subjunctive (never, except in oblique oration, the present subjunctive), when its non-fulfilment is suggested.

Wenn euer Gewiſſen rein iſt, ſo ſeid ihr frei. (Goe.)
Zufrieden wär' ich, wenn mein Volk mich rühmte. (Goe.)

Thus, German agrees with English, except that the pluperfect is not used as we sometimes use it, of present time.

568. PAST TIME. — The rule is the same as for the present time, except that the pluperfect subjunctive is of course used in the second case.

Warum duldete ſie die Annäherung eines Fremden, wenn ſie ihm keine Hoffnung zu machen hatte? (Heyse.)

Mancher wäre kein Böſewicht geworden, wenn man ihn nicht dafür gehalten hätte.

569. FUTURE TIME. — There is no special form in German for a condition in future time, but it is treated exactly like a condition in present time.

Es wird uns freuen, wenn es Ihnen gefällt. (Freytag.)

Aufſtehen würde Englands ganze Jugend,
Sähe der Britte ſeine Königin. (Sch.)

The auxiliary ſollte is sometimes used of a future condition, implying still less than the simple imperfect subjunctive the hope of its being fulfilled.

Ich bin ein verlorenes Waisenkind, und wenn ich auch einen Vater haben sollte, mich verlangt nicht vor sein Angesicht zu treten. (Heyse.)

Ich höre Schritte draußen, sagte sie. Wenn es der Walter sein sollte, laßt die Nacht darüber nicht vergehen. (Heyse.)

Obs. The use of a present with a future sense is very common in the apodosis, when a present indicative stands in the protasis. *See* also first example of § 570.

570. OTHER CONJUNCTIONS MEANING *IF.* — Falls *in case*, wofern, literally *in so far as*, are sometimes used instead of wenn, and with the same construction. Wo is chiefly used in the phrase wo möglich, *if possible*.

Denn Sicherheit ist nicht für euch, wofern
Der Landvogt lebend diesem Sturm entkommt. (Sch.)

Manches könnten sie thun, wofern sie es heimlich vollbrächten. (Goe.)

Sie werden mich retten, und wo ich ohne Rettung verloren bin, teilnehmend um mich weinen. (Sch.)

Obs. So, which stands regularly at the head of the apodosis, is occasionally used in the protasis, and then like other words meaning *if*, throws the verb to the end (§ 202(4)).

571. ELLIPSIS OF *IF.* — The conjunction wenn is frequently omitted, and the protasis is then arranged like an interrogative sentence, which it really is; that is, the finite verb first, then the subject, and so on.

Willst du dich selber erkennen, so sieh, wie die andern es treiben,
Willst du die andern verstehen, blick' in dein eignes Herz. (Sch.)

572. CONDITION IN ANOTHER FORM. — It often happens that the protasis of a conditional sentence is not put in the shape of a subordinate sentence, but implied by some words in the principal sentence.

Nicht um dies ganze reiche Eiland, nicht
Um alle Länder, die das Meer umfaßt,
Möcht' ich vor euch so steh'n, wie ihr vor mir. (Sch.)

Were the condition embodied in a clause, it would be Wenn man mir dies.....gäbe.

Ich hätte gern nur immer fortgewacht,
Um so gelehrt mit euch mich zu besprechen. (Goe.)

So in English—

I would outstare the sternest eyes that look
To win thee, lady;
i.e., *if I might thereby win thee.*

573. MODEST STATEMENT.—Hence the conditional tense or the imperfect subjunctive is used, as in English, for making a statement modestly; some such protasis as, *if you would allow me to say so*, being understood.

Von den Menschen wüßte ich nur weniges und wenig Erfreuliches zu sagen. (Goethe.)

574. APODOSIS IN ANOTHER FORM.—Sometimes the apodosis assumes a different form.

Der König schwört, die hinterlist'ge That
Und wär' es auch an seinem eig'nen Sohn
Auf's schrecklichste zu ahnden. (Sch.)

where zu ahnden implies, daß er ahnden würde. Notice further the ellipsis after und.

575. INCONSISTENCY OF TENSES.—The following examples illustrate an idiom found in most languages—

Und käm' die Hölle selber in die Schranken
Mir soll der Mut nicht weichen und nicht wanken. (Sch.)

Hätte er in diesem Augenblicke sich entzündet, so war der beste Teil seiner Wirkung verloren.

Instead of an imperfect subjunctive or a conditional in the apodosis to correspond to that in the protasis, instead, in fact, of saying *my courage would not yield*, he says, *my courage shall not yield*. The explanation is easy. The writer having made the assumption that hell would appear in the lists against him, and having put that impossible supposition in the imperfect subjunctive, as grammar requires, is so struck with the vividness of the picture he has called up, that he goes on as if it were real, and concludes his sentence as if he had said "If hell appears in the lists against me."

So in English—

I'll speak to it though hell itself *should* gape.

And in Latin—

Me truncus illapsus cerebro
Sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum
Dextra levasset.

And in French—

S'il épousait la fille du duc de Bourgogne, il *réunissait* tôt ou tard en un royaume gigantesque l'Aquitaine et les Pays-Bas, entre lesquels Louis XI. *périssait* étouffé. (Michelet.)

On croyait surprendre et conquérir Dôle ; elle prise, la province eût suivi ; la Meilleraie *revenait* couvert de gloire, le premier général du siècle. (Ibid.)

Dr. Farrar (Greek Syntax, p. 150) remarks : "These occasional irregularities are due to the triumph of the dramatic tendency over formal grammar."

576. CONDITIONAL SENTENCE ADJECTIVAL.—Sometimes a relative pronoun practically introduces a condition; in that case the construction of the sentence is the same as if the conjunction were present.

Sie hätte jeden Mann täuſchen müſſen, dem ſie anzugehören gelobt hätte. (Heyse.)

Es ſengt mir meine Locken,
Und wie ein Strahl der Sonne, der zu heiß,
Das Haupt mir träfe, brennt es mir die Kraft
Des Denkens aus der Stirne. (Sch.)

Und gewiß, wer ſein Leben lang von hohen ernſten Eichen umgeben wäre, müßte ein anderer Menſch werden, als wer täglich unter luſtigen Birken ſich erginge. (Goe.)

577. CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.—A concessive sentence is really a conditional sentence with some word like *even* inserted. Accordingly in German such sentences are introduced by wenn auch, wenn ſchon, wenn gleich, or by compounds of ob, obgleich, obſchon, obwohl.—If a compound of wenn be used, the moods and tenses follow the rules given above.

The apodosis is introduced by ſo, doch, dennoch.

Wenn er es auch nicht war, der die Sachſen nach Prag lockte, ſo war es doch ſein Betragen, was ihnen die Einnahme dieſer Stadt erleichterte. (Sch.)

Wir fürchten uns nicht, wenn gleich die Welt unterginge, und die Berge mitten in's Meer fielen. (Luth. Bib.)

578. COMPOUNDS OF **ob.**—As the speaker implies that the condition introduced by obgleich, &c., is fulfilled, these conjunctions are nearly always followed by an indicative.

Obgleich man dem Feinde nur eine geringe Macht entgegenzuſetzen hatte, ſo konnte man doch hoffen, ſich behaupten zu können.

Ob ſie den Menſchen gleich wunderlich vorkam, ſo war Niemand aufmerkſam oder klug genug, die innere wahre Urſache zu entdecken. (Goe.)

Obs. 1. Notice ob.....gleich, &c., separated.

Obs. 2. Ob without ſchon or gleich is sometimes used in the sense of *although*.

Ob alles in ewigem Wechſel kreiſt,
Es beharre im Wechſel ein ruhiger Geiſt. (Sch.)

Obs. 3. Occasionally a subjunctive present (not an imperfect) is found with ob auch, &c.

Ob auch die Lebensbahn
Im Nebelmeer verſchwimme,
Geſichert leitet uns
Das Wort der innern Stimme.

579. OMISSION OF **ob** AND **wenn**.—As in conditional sentences, the conjunction is often omitted in the protasis. In this case auch, gleich, &c., are often retained, and only ob, wenn, &c., dropped.

Two forms may be used :—

(1.) The order and moods of an interrogative sentence :—

Sind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand,
Sie ſind in unſern Herzen eingeſchrieben. (Sch.)

Doch, hätt' auch gleich ein Zufall der Natur
Sie weggerafft—wir hießen doch die Mörder. (Sch.)

(2.) The order and form may be that of an imperative sentence, with a present subjunctive or mögen:—

Der Mensch erfährt, er sei auch, wer er mag,
Ein letztes Glück und einen letzten Tag. (Goe.)

So wie die Tiefe des Meeres allezeit ruhig bleibt, die Oberfläche mag auch noch so wüten. (Winkelmann.)

Denn jene Stellen, sie mögen nun von einem zukünftigen Leben reden oder vom gegenwärtigen, verweisen doch alle auf eine ferne Zukunft. (W. v. Humboldt.)

580. **Es sei denn .....daß**, *only grant that.....*, may often be rendered by *unless indeed*.

Ich sehe nicht, welchen Nachteil es der folgenden bringen könnte, wenn uns der vorhergehende noch so gerührt hätte. Es sei denn, daß die folgende an sich selbst nicht rührend genug wäre. (Lessing.)

Der, was er rettete.....weiter
Auch nicht zu sehn verlangt', es wäre denn,
Daß er zum zweitenmal es retten sollte. (Lessing.)

A similar idiom explains the following:—

Trau' niemand, du habest denn einen Scheffel Salz mit ihm gegessen. (Proverb.)

Sank je ein Schlaf auf meine Augenlider,
Ich hätte denn am Abend jedes Tags
Berechnet, wie die Herzen meiner Völker
In meinen fernsten Himmelstrichen schlagen? (Sch.)

Die Nürnberger hängen keinen, sie hätten ihn denn. (Proverb.)

.....unless they have caught him.

581. ADJECTIVAL FORM.—Concessive sentences are often introduced by the interrogatives wer, welcher, or by interrogative adverbs, wo and its compounds, wie, &c., with auch attached. Some sentences in English may begin either with *however* or *whoever*, &c., or with *though...ever so*, &c.

The same principles apply to the words in such sentences as to the moods in ordinary concessive sentences. An indicative is used if the statement of the dependent clause is intended to be accepted as a fact, a present subjunctive or mögen in other cases.

Wie weit er auch die Stimme ſchickt,
Nichts Lebendes wird hier erblickt. (Sch.)

Was es auch ſei, dein Leben ſichr' ich dir. (Sch.)

Was er auch Schweres mag verſchuldet haben,
Strafe genug iſt ſein entſetzlich Handwerk. (Sch.)

Sometimes such sentences begin with ſo:—

So große Erwartungen auch ganz Europa jetzt hegte, ſo ging doch alles ganz anders. (Archenholtz.)

582. WHETHER...OR. — It is important to distinguish two uses of the English word *whether;* (1) in the sentence—

I will ask whether he likes it or not,

whether is an interrogative adverb to be rendered by ob; (2) in the sentence—

Whether he likes it or not, he must do it,

whether introduces a conditional or concessive clause.

In case (2), it is usual to put the conditional clause in the form of an imperative or one of the substitutes for it.

Nicht wahr — dem Weſen, das
Dich rettete — es ſei ein Engel, oder
Ein Menſch — dem möchtet ihr, und du beſonders,
Gern wieder viele große Dienſte thun? (Lessing.)

Especially is the construction § 579 used.

583. **Wer** for **wenn einer.** This old construction is not infrequent in modern German.

Freiheit? Ein ſchönes Wort, wer's recht verſtände. (Goethe).

which may be rendered, *if any one understood it*, or *for any one who understood it.*

584. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE IN REPORTED NEWS.—The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are often used, especially in newspapers, when a statement is made on some authority other than that of the writer.

Herr X griff den Deputierten thätlich an und zertrümmerte sein Augenglas. Wie es heißt, wären die Augen verletzt und die Sehkraft gefährdet.

Compare the use of the past conditional in similar cases in French.

APPENDIX I.

Translations of Examples in Syntax

CHAPTER II.

262. Thou hast experienced the favour of the gods.—I am the spirit that ever denies.—263. Hesperus and Aurora scaled alternately the vault of heaven.—Neither eye nor mind is adequate to grasp it.—(*Obs.* 1.) In her apartments there was endless grumbling, indignation, and carping at the king's heartless stinginess.—(*Obs.* 2.) Ye sources of all existence, on which heaven and earth depend!—Treason and suspicion lurk in every corner.—Then heart and cellar are opened freely.—(*Obs.* 4.) A wolf or a bear seldom escapes when a Lapp aims at them.—(*Obs.* 5.) His constant attention, without obtrusiveness, his loyal support on several occasions when they were in trouble, the frank but quiet way in which he had urged his suit with her parents, his willingness to wait, as she was still but young: all this prepossessed her in his favour.—264. I and my house will serve the Lord.—You and your neighbour gain by it.—(*Obs.* 1.) Yonder man and I come from Eger.—(*Obs.* 2.) I know not what ideas you or I have of liberty.—I don't know whether you or he has done it.—265. And on the way a swarm of hornets meets him.—Several houses are burnt down.—There were a number of French deserters there.—266. The glorious columns fell.—Not all are free who scoff at their chains.—268. Under this tree one's fancy runs wild.—And lo! from the darkly-heaving bosom of the sea rises a white form.—No smoking in this compartment.—269. Your Royal Highness does not quit the place in better spirits.—Of town I knew nothing, but that His Majesty the King lives there.—Your reverence was being catechized there.—270. I am neither Miss nor pretty.—Needs must thou leave me my own earth withal.

CHAPTER III.

271. To Dionysius the tyrant crept Mœros.—You know him, the creator of bold armies.—(*Obs.* 1.) The boldness of this thinker shows itself in his theory of monads, a most extraordinary hypothesis.—

272. Whom Venus, bringer of good hap, hath joined,
Mars, the star of ill-luck, may soon sever.—

273. In the month of May.—They built the village of Stanz.—274. The flower of the old officers lay dead on the battle-fields ; in the course of the seven years every general of note, with scarcely an exception, had fallen or was permanently invalided, an unprecedented event in military history.—275. Fain would the serving-man be a knight himself.—Thou, child, shalt be called a prophet of the Highest.—Thus these rights ceased to be personal distinctions ; they became an hereditary appanage of families.—The sin which in our eyes is deemed the greatest sin of all.—But yet it seems to me a far more unpardonable fault.—To his dying day he remained the courtly squire of dames.—276. L'Étrées was considered the best French general.—We may be deemed *one* nation. —Then suffering often became a luxury, and even the deepest sadness turned to harmony.—As the peasant wanted to become a knight, the knight wanted to become a nobleman.—278. Him once the people named The Wise.—Thus let each believe his ring the true ring.—He upbraided him with effeminacy (called him an effeminate fellow).—(*Obs.* 1.) He persists in thinking sensible men fools.—The physician pronounced him dead.—Reynard lay for dead in the road.—(*Obs.* 2.) That is making the goat your gardener. — Let him who understands his own advantage make himself ruler. — Do not make the mischief worse.—279. He is looked upon as a madman.—You have always looked upon me simply as an enemy.—280. You have proclaimed yourself a thorough connoisseur ; will you prove yourself such?—By acting towards her simply as an affectionate brother.—The Rector spoke of Sybel's influence as a University teacher.—The distrust of the emperor as a military enthusiast has given way to reverence for him as a friend of humanity.

CHAPTER IV.

283. Language is certainly a spiritual, immaterial means of forming ideas.—The law of retribution is an eternal ordinance of nature.—Lift the veil, and there is no death in creation.—(*Obs.*) I find that money has a certain right to honour ; money we have made ourselves is evidence of energy, of caution.—284. Were I cautious, my name would not be Tell.—(*Obs.* 4.) The scholars who were returning to their country,

the Fichtes and Arndts (*i.e.*, Fichte, Arndt, and men like them).—285. The executioner struck off the heads of Counts Egmont and Horn.—The dogs were panting and hung their tongues out of their mouths.—286. Thus art thou mine by more than one law.—288. To hesitate is treason.—Virtue is its own reward.—Be it ever so humble, there's no place like home.—Women, children, and old men were not spared.—A knight rode abroad through fields and over plains; suddenly at his side walks a lady fair.—And horse and rider saw I never more.—290. The Cretan's invincible hosts.—The hearts of Hero and Leander.—292. The dog, the cat, and the horse are domestic animals.—The lion, tiger, wolf, and lynx are beasts of prey.—(*Obs.* 2.) But when ye go into a town or market-place.—293. There is no line drawn between soldier and citizen.—The whole of a long life have I devoted to the service of king and country.—That is the dragon—come and see it—which has devoured our herdsmen and our herds.—Of his pride which he transmitted to Christian or Mussulman.—293a. But the silence was broken by Bero, a sturdy farmer.—Gerard Richwin, citizen and weaver of Wetzlar, was a rich man.—The most distinguished of these theologians was Theodore Beza, a preacher of Geneva, a man as subtle as he was enthusiatic.—It was in the song of Walter and Hildegond that as a student he first found poetry which touched his heart.—293b. On the top of the hill by the abattis, which divided the forests of the Thuringians from the Chatti, stood the young sentinel ... in the thick underwood, the blackberries blossomed. The youth carried on his back a long horn fastened to a strap; he was leaning carelessly against a tree ... whenever a wild animal made its way through the thicket.—Through the break in the colonnade runs a narrow path ... this path leads to the grey house.

CHAPTER V.

294. Then fell torrents of rain.—You shall hear a real masterpiece.—(*Obs.* 2.) Every "God bless you."—297. Silesia, a beautiful country, inhabited by an industrious population.—Remains of a town once so magnificent.—(*Note.*) The document draws for us a most painful picture of the gifted poet ruined by want of self-control, and the cruel harshness of a father of iron will, pitilessly refusing to pardon anything.—299. All hearts are filled with joy.—Happy do I deem Polyxena.—Thee my lips cannot pronounce fortunate.—Time only makes you more certain.—O redden not those dear eyes with weeping.—*Obs.* Is an old impression a lost one?—But it is strange that my taste in trees only extends to those which may to a certain extent be called wild ones.—

Prejudices against foreign nations are in most cases very one-sided, unjust prejudices.—300. Richly laden with the treasures of other lands, the fleet, like a forest of masts, is returning to its native shores.—

Conceive it only, 'tis a vulgar crime:
Achieved, an enterprise of deathless fame.—

There dwelt a virtuous trading population, revelling in the fruits of their industry, and jealously guarding laws which were their benefactors.—He came to Germany, with a pure, unsophisticated heart, with all his thoughts set on work, self-denial and high renown.—I have always been a lover of stories well told.—301. With teeth as of a panther they tear the foeman's heart, ere it has ceased to quiver.—304. The storm of yesterday was the most violent of the century.—The storm was most violent at two o'clock.—Then will this day be the brightest of my life.—The strong man is strongest alone.—(*Obs.* 1.) In this case too it is best to hear but one.—305. And care which is more hateful to me even than evil itself.—306. These exclamations are rather rhetorical than essential.—Perhaps he has spoken with more of truth than of wisdom and reverence.—308. The terrible experiences he had gone through had roused in him corresponding energy.—During the last few weeks my friend's thoughts were quite taken up with his own sad and painful experiences.*—309. Which of you did it? None of us.—Now you have each got your shares, go quietly home.—The like of us are already old, and have too many cares.—Where all are loving, Charles alone cannot hate.—And all are kneeling and beating their breasts.—Then all that have hands hasten to make themselves comfortable.—310. Carefully the mother brought of the clear noble wine in a cut decanter upon a bright tray of tin.—311. There are many distinct spheres of creative energy.—The zeal of many enthusiastic admirers of the beautiful.—The credit of it is due to several ladies in the town.—313. (1.) The proposal is worthy of all consideration.—I have not seen him all the week.—Neidhart of Reuenthal, the most gifted and the most melancholy of all the knightly minstrels of the thirteenth century.—After all the melancholy humiliations of recent years.—All the wisest men of all times.—(2.) The only regiment that had kept all its old trophies.—I relieve him of all his cares.—He has lost his whole fortune.—(3.) What avails all this profusion of suns and planets?—I begin to feel so bewildered, so dazed in the presence of it all.—The suspicion which brought about all this mischief.—The scene of

* mußte cannot be literally rendered in English any more than the French *devoir* in similar cases.

all my happiness.—(4.) Of all good things there are three.—It was necessary for each to have all the other votes in his favour.—All great questions were brought before the assembly.—(6.) The bullets are exhausted; we will cast new ones.—314. I am your debtor for many acts of courtesy.—A vault where lie heaped up many weapons of iron, remains of ancient spoils.—He is surrounded by many pleasant acquaintances, but not many devoted friends.—315. Although I have already given away several books, I still have more books than you have. —The more resemblances we detect and the closer they are ... —Your blood courses swifter in your veins.—316. Rarely has such weather come with such a harvest.—Such a commission does not frighten me; such treasures I can place at your disposal.—Let us see how many such mole-hills you must pile on one another.—317. For very trees, he cannot see the wood.—318. Then go, you German bear.—Rest peacefully, ye beloved.—To unhappy me.—You younger men.—320. Every bitter sorrow of my people smote my heart, and it felt the blow.—It stands by the public road, a hospitable roof.—Bring me in some newspaper or other.—When Emperor Barbarossa the Good came marching to the Holy Land, needs must he pass with his pious army through a mountain region waste and bare.—(*Obs.*) Even poverty, undeserved poverty makes a man proud.

CHAPTER VI.

322. About an hour's walk from the town lies Waldheim.—So sat he many a day and many a year.—The convent demon blundered upstairs. —323. They will arrive before noon to-day.—Be ready for orders at any hour. — (*Obs.* 1.) At every feast he drained it. — (*Obs.* 2.) This very evening Gustavus Adolphus appeared. — (*Obs.* 3.) On the 28th of August, 1749, as the clock struck 12, I made my appearance in the world.—324. The box weighs a hundredweight.—It is not worth a brass farthing.—(*Obs.*) That has done us much harm.—325. What is it that graces the youth and adorns the grown man?—Every one of them is flourishing his handkerchief and wiping off the sweat.—(*Obs.*) Sing, immortal soul, the redemption of sinful men. — 327. (*Obs.* 1.) Alas! how will the reckoning after dinner suit you?—The other met a thrust of this kind by doing the same.—328. I have fought a good fight.— He died a trooper's death. — In the night did I dream a sad dream.— (*Obs.*) She died a miserable death. — He died of cholera. — 329. The mill-wheel scatters diamond foam. — It rained blood. — He swore an oath.—330. If my friend shows me what I can do, my enemy teaches

me what I ought to do. — Who taught you to deal such blows? — (*Obs.* 1.) Believe you not that now and then dreams teach us things to come?—(*Obs.* 2.) I will ask you something.—Only follow me ; that is all I ask of you. — 331. Picture to yourself my terror. — 332. If thy enemy hunger, feed him ; if he thirst, give him drink.—I am all impatience to hear his name.—(*Obs.* 5.) Now speedy counsel is all-important. — The existence of the nation was at stake. — 333. Then there is great fun.—334. Sire, let the odours of sacrifice ascend to heaven.—He bade me meanwhile remain in the convent as a lay-brother.—335. They are rid of the evil one, evil men are yet there. — To that I am not accustomed. — With this we too are content.—336. To Dionysius the tyrant, Mœros stole, his dagger hidden in his gown. — But the old man still stood there, with his eyes fixed on the cloud below, and with sad, musing melancholy on his brow.

CHAPTER VII.

338. I paid my debt to fortune. — Give me back my blindness. — I will dedicate it to the Furies, if so be that they will pardon me my good fortune. — To Tell I owe my rescued life. — I have promised thee to my master. — Yet daily dost thou commit thyself to the wild sea. — Say, to whom shall I compare this merry troop? — (*Obs.* 1.) Who grudges it you?—(*Obs.* 2.) I advise you, then, without more ado, to put on the same costume.—339. For to you my allegiance is due.—And, little maid, what is lacking to me is lacking to many a man on German soil. — Honour to whom honour is due. — (*Obs.* 1.) The fairest guerdon shall be thine.—340. Yet I had a beloved son, God took him from me; I saw him die. — He withholds from him his just inheritance. — The ring which he had taken from the giant. — And her head, from which her arm's support was withdrawn, sinks on the pillow. — (*Obs.* 1.) She was able to give up her wild life. — (*Obs.* 2.) Ye have bereaved me of my children. — 341. Thou art near me. — It is as I wish. — The first course is open to us. — All this is subject to me. — Then begins the billeting, a burden to the peasant, vexatious to every gentleman, and to citizens positively hateful. — I bid you welcome, ye friendly companies, that accompanied me on the sea.—'Tis well for us! For what makes me a Christian in your eyes makes you a Jew in mine. — He hoped to find a citizen his friend.—(*Obs.* 1.) A spirit alike inaccessible to intrigue and to love.—342. The shepherd is sad indeed.—It all makes me feel as bewildered, as dazed as though a mill-wheel were going round in my head.—Pray, don't let yourself be alarmed.—It went ill with him.

—A nun who had escaped from her cell because of a love affair, as happens to so many. — 343. The father shudders ; he rides fast. — 344. Woe to the Persians ! — Hail to thee, venerable man. — Happy for him who keeps his soul pure as a child's from guilt and sin.—345. The king, whom the song pleased.—I cannot say how hateful the place is to me. — Thou art like the spirit thou canst comprehend. — A mere sound to which nothing corresponds. — How gladly would I serve the duke on horseback.—Because he mightily can stem the stream.—Game and fish is fitting fare for my mother. — Now art thou terribly wroth with me. —Wrecked or safe on shore he trusts his gods.—(*Obs.* 1.) None ever yet withstood him. — Unmixed happiness never yet fell to mortal's lot.—(*Obs.* 2.) It will, I hope, not hurt her.—346. He follows the sound through the air, the sunbeam through the æther.—But one mourner have I met, who must shun men's sight where all are joyous.—347. If I could thus alleviate my father's cares too. — Had I not reserved fire for myself. —Take it not amiss of me, Nathan. — You see (*lit.*, in her) she comes of a sturdy race. — Forget them now, and live only to joy. — The expression of high-wrought feeling adapted itself to the trammels of French verse without much effort on his part. — (*Obs.*) That was a great piece of good fortune for you.—348. The God of Victory marches at her side.—The lyre, which erst rang out so clear, lies silent in his arms.—I drew it from his bosom.—He passed his hand over his eyes.—349. Pray, what are you doing before my darling's door ? — The bridal wreath will I twine with my own hand : how lovely will it look when I see it on this pretty head ! — 351. George had been present at the battle of Dettingen. — What do they want to do to me ? —They took precedence of the other knights. — Submit to the Emperor. — Then my spirit inspired me with the thought. — You were mine, betrothed to me before all the world by two great potentates, acknowledged mine by heaven and nature !—(*Obs.* 1.) If any one were to profess to despise the arts because they imitate nature, it is open to me to reply that nature, in her various forms, imitates many other things.—(*Obs.* 2.) One can overlook children's peccadilloes. —352. In return for that all joy is taken from me. — Names which are consecrated to virtue alone. — For the sake of this thy dear son, shalt thou be forgiven. — Therewith am I not served. — 353. I am travelling to Berlin. — Come to me. — His entreaties reach no deliverer's ear. — (*Obs.*) Do you bring me nothing from Unterwalden—nothing from my father ?—355. I also want you to send me a pat of butter for my sergeant's wife.

CHAPTER VIII.

358. (1.) The loud grinding clash of shield and spear.—The clash of shields and the noisy breaking of light spears on the shields they encounter. — Such a general encounter of fantastically accoutred champions.—(3.) After the lapse of two years.—A mass of all sorts of things.—(4.) The history of the building of the town.—He is the heir of the King's throne.—360. The merry festival of knightly champions. —I shudder at the envy of the gods.—Wallenstein too is Fortune's child. —361. The smaller favour is in my eyes an earnest of the greater favour. —363. The Teutons were a part of the Cimbric host.—A number of French soldiers.—Sixty or seventy of those left behind presented a petition to the council.—Of 25,000 pilgrims, only 3,000 escaped to an old castle. —Of all good things there are three.—There were sixteen of us.—The bravest of his heroes lay dead in Saxony.—The most loyal of my friends. —Hugo was in point of birth the first of the pilgrims.—Let each of you do his utmost to manifest the virtue of the jewel in his ring.—Several of the preachers were brought to trial, and some of them were even hanged.—364. Should we not hope that more of such princes may reign? —He felt himself man enough to get the better of another deep sorrow. —Because after all an impending war requires more and more money. —He has more luck than sense.—There he saw iron and steel enough.— (*Obs.* 1.) That might lead to something terrible. — (*Obs.* 2.) The Elfin King hath hurt me. — We bore together our share of love and sorrow. —365. Carefully the mother brought of the clear, generous wine.—367. A cavalier of wit and pluck is everywhere welcome.—I have been summoned before a court of men.—A ray of hope. — A system of rules. — Among baskets and tubs and things of no use.—(*Obs.* 1.) Aye, we are of one heart, of one blood.—She proved herself brave and strong, and endowed with presence of mind. — He is of good lineage. — (*Obs.* 2.) A passionate feeling of patriotism, which scarcely finds a parallel in our literature.—369. And are the nobles associated with this league?—Unused to the sword is this hand.—You are conscious only of the one impulse. — (*Obs.* 2.) You sympathised in my deep sorrow. — They will have to accustom themselves to many things. — 370. The earth is full of the goodness of the Lord.—Alas, I am weary of unrest.—If your resolution is taken and you need my aid. — The noblest is not for ever free from fetters.—In the midst of the rain we were actually short of water.—My household misses its head. — (*Obs.* 1.) The face so vigorous, bronzed, and wrinkled, and every wrinkle full of expression.—(*Obs.* 2.) No period is so poor in characters.—Happy is he who keeps his soul pure

as a child's from guilt and sin.—(*Obs.* 3.) Nor will you lack boldness.—371. Even enjoyment seems stripped of some of the poetry, with which the German is so ready to invest his pleasures.—We are relieved from a great anxiety.—Even the Sultan cannot resist the temptation.—O! spare him, father. — I almost shrink from the strange being. — (*Obs.*) From fear of the foe are we delivered. — War does not spare even the tender babe.—372. To have pity on the oppressed.—Let not the bloody tyrant boast of that. — Who would take pleasure in life that looks into its secrets. — My noble captain, who grieves over the bloodshed. — The knight, proud of his beautiful panoply. — Not to care for thee. — Take pity on me.—(*Obs.* 1) How the populace stared at the new liveries. — I enjoy the benefit of the laws.—(*Obs.* 2.) To think of the Frenchman who had no heart to feel this.—373. *Memento Mori.*—Forget-me-not.—I think of thee.—Be thy memory ever cherished.—Be diligent in writing.—Say, what shall we expect of you?—There sat a man and waited for the ferry.—Has the peasant presumed to do such a deed?—Expect the order at any hour.—(*Obs.*) The rough basalt awaits the informing hand.—Let me remember those golden days.—374. Of what sin does your conscience accuse you?—375. I am not acquainted with the road.—And when the lord caught sight of me.—How did you get possession of the castles?—The French had secured the sea.—376. (2.) Yet swiftly must you hurry past.—(3.) So when on my way I was driving along the new road....

CHAPTER X.

383. (4.) After bloody battles come song and dance. — The tree falls not at the first stroke.—(5.) Then I can appeal to Duke Alva's evidence. —The prisoner relies proudly in his innocence.—Once for all that is my view, and in that faith I will live and die.—384. The moon was rising from behind a promontory. — 385. (1.) Each was to remain in the sphere in which birth and education had placed him.—(2.) They disguised themselves as heroes of the legendary King Arthur's court.—386. Thou shalt have no other gods beside Me.—387. (4.) These grand doings quite drove the quiet country-house at Hadamar out of his head.—In the joy of fight both completely forgot the consequences. — (5.) Next I could not help laughing at the wood-cut of Egmont. — The compassion which cries of (*lit.* over) physical agony were intended to produce.—(6.) The sun gets the better of the clouds.—It is an axiom that the laws must not presume to exercise any control over science. — The disciple is not above his master.—389. He fell sick for love.—He sacrificed himself for love of her.

CHAPTER XI.

391. (3.) The mould fire-hardened out of clay.—(4.) Friends may turn to foes.—392. I sell all my lands except the garden.—Besides his pay he requires kind treatment.—No one came to meet me but an impudent fellow.—I found no one but a stranger.—393. (3.) At sunrise the stars grow dim.—Inasmuch as now, in spite of the best intentions, nearly all the courts were short of money.—It is true that even Philip the Good, considering the increasing population of these provinces, had thought of extending the hierarchy.—Trespassing in these field-paths is forbidden under a penalty of eighteenpence.—(7.) Fevers which carried off the foreigners by thousands.—(10.) Then some thirty theological students gradually appeared.—The drawing is upwards of 7 feet long. —395. You ascend the valley to meet the torrent of the Reuss.—Up and face the foe! — 396. Then I should have given myself unnecessary trouble in dealing with these good people.—Opposite Frankfort lies a village; it is called Sachsenhausen.—398. By these swords we won our lands, and with them will we defend them. — 399. Considering his age, he should act more sensibly.—400 To destroy the ship, steersman and all.—401. From that day my lips have been sealed.

CHAPTER XII.

404. A triangle can be described by means of three lines. — If he only first rules by my help I will soon rule by his.—406. To appeal against the cruel oppression of the governors.—I, the crier, cry the accusation against the evildoers.

CHAPTER XIII.

414. I have deserved to die, and I will die.—And assuredly he will not yield in peace.—He will when he sees us in arms.—His verses are only expected to be dramatic and expressive, and to reflect faithfully the subject of the piece; and such they are.—416. You dare to show your face to an honest man. —The fact proves that she speaks the truth.—417. And there is a heaving, and a roaring, and a seething, and a hissing.—And over the abyss the surface grows calm, only far below is a hollow roaring heard.—And more hollow and more hollow still is the howling of the waters.—418. Let each look to it how he acts.—Such have been my principles from my youth up.—419. Kleist depicts the inherited feud of two houses, the children of which are in love with

each other.—Do you see yonder the venerable castles facing each other? —420. Lavater, said Goethe, believed in Cagliostro and his miracles.— To defy the return to the old court *régime*, he had begun with its most rotten excrescence.—421. When the three young men came to Delphi, the princes of the royal house offered splendid gifts to Apollo, but Brutus presented to the god a wooden staff; the others knew not that a staff of gold was concealed in the wooden one.—422. The impression which I made upon him came too quickly.—There are evil deeds over which no grass grows.—A country house with lofty, large rooms, in one of which something of the kind happened.—423. It is well for him who has prepared his house.—On these institutions which had grown up with the people was the stamp of gradual growth.—He who from his youth up hath been the servant of the battle, now controls it.—424. Thou that healest all wounds—the gentle, tender hand of friendship.— He will involve in his ruin all of us who are attached to his fortunes. —(2.) I bid you welcome, ye friendly companies, who attended my course to the sea.—What can I do who am myself, helpless?—And I whose best friends say of me that the Graces did not stand by my cradle.—(*Obs.* 3.) Man with the sharp scythe, who dost cut down the suckling at the weeping mother's breast. — (*Obs.* 4.) How can you, who have seen it with your own eyes, call it in question?—425. I will tell you plainly one of my wishes, by complying with which you will give me great pleasure.—A pious widow lady, whose walk and conversation is well known to everyone in Frankfort.—The peace which I mentioned, and to which you return.—426. Who would take pleasure in life that looks into its secrets?—To refute which gross slander I demand the benefit of an appeal to arms.—428. Who can tell? He who knows this Nathan better (*i. e.*, the speaker, Nathan himself). — Whoever agrees let him lift up his hands.—Whoever has satisfied the best of his contemporaries has lived for all time.—He whom you see here is no longer the Carlos who bid you adieu at Alcala. — (*Obs.*) The mountains have no terror for him who was born on them.—429. (1.) You must on no account take what I say as a reproach.—(2.) Only we must entirely give up what is commonly called understanding.—I missed something which I cannot recover.—It will do no harm if you introduce into the narrative something belonging to another period.—(3.) It was chiefly the Reformation that brought the Northern Powers into the European system.—(4.) She now suffers much from her eyes, which unfortunately very seriously interferes with her reading and writing.—For many years the king had admired in him a philosopher, which he was not.— 430. I shall soon enough feel all the cruel piercing sorrows that poverty

involves.—Furs, skins, and every other warm covering to be had.—(*Obs.*) What he has to pay in the way of corn, forced labour and money swallows up the greatest part of his work.—431. Even though the shorter and safer high roads should in the process degenerate into by-paths, such as lead through deserts.—Here, he said, is a maid such as we want in the house.—In intercouse, such as that between you and me. —There are passages in it such as cannot be improved.—432. In this sphere is to be found all the greatness we are capable of recognizing, and all the goodness by which we have ever made our lives holy. But from the outrages, wherewith the sovereign could oppress a subject whom he hated; from the nameless hardships by which he could make it difficult for one disposed to emigrate to leave his territories; from the cunningly-devised traps in which chicanery combined with force can entrap the intellect, the dead letter of this peace could not protect him.—(*Obs.* 1.) In a correspondence in which neither scientific subjects nor business is spoken of. — The way in which we mirror the world in our own minds. — (*Obs.* 2.) To me are known the paths along which the Norn wanders.—433. I should like to know who the ladies are.—(*Obs.*) Who are all the people coming?—I don't know who all those people are he has invited.—434. As yet she had not found any one amiable.—The whole is a picture of grim, bloody conflicts, without any trace of a higher idea.—Thus even misfortune loses some of its crushing effect; in any case every sort of bitterness disappears from it.—He can do anything that is to be set right in the house.

CHAPTER XIV.

437. Now none thinks of saving his own life; they fight like wild tigers; their stubborn defence rouses the wrath of our soldiers; and not till the last man had fallen does the conflict end.—438. To-morrow an army of 20,000 soldiers will join us.—439. To-night you will march in perfect silence with all the light troops.—440. For five years have I cherished the passionate hatred.—Since the prince has taken the government into his own hands and the education of the other children has been completed, she has lived entirely to herself, and worked and studied for herself.—Ever since I have known thee in this place has this been the look at which I have ever shuddered.—(*Obs.* 2.) You have long been a servant.—441. A nation that for centuries had been familiar with victory.—442. This policy of the Hohenzollerns, and this alone, put an end to the religious wars; it finally compelled the better temporal sovereigns to imitate it.—No country ventured to enter the lists against

her.—France was already hurrying towards that unhappy period which for nearly half a century made it the scene of horrors and of misery.—443. I hear some one coming. It is probably the landlord to receive us.—444. He had long forgotten everything and put it quite out of sight; now he looked at it as a new man. Who had been away some months.—445. Don't you put Mr. Just out of temper!—Let not men tempt the gods.—Let each of you do his utmost.—446. (1.) Then, at any rate, let us sigh with him.—Then let us carefully consider.—

> Oh, of that awful hour let fiends of hell
> Hold nightly converse! Of a time more fair
> Let the remembrance animate our hearts
> To fresh heroic deeds.

Let grudges and revenge be forgotten, let our bitterest foe be forgiven, let no tear afflict him, no repentance torture him.—(2.) You had given me the slip, Bishop! Then let your favourite Weislingen pay the reckoning.—(3.) Six days shalt thou labour.—(5.) Attention! present! fire! Beat the drum, play the fife.—446A. Would that the bright days of young love might endure for ever.—Would to God I could.

CHAPTER XV.

447. To hope for another miracle were to tempt God.—448. I am tired of dancing.—The weeping of heirs is a secret laughter.—450. To betray a secret is evil; to keep it, good.—Not to resent an injury, even though deeply felt, is the mark of nobler natures.—To mourn a lost friend is not unmanly.—To walk with you, doctor, is an honour.—451. It is dangerous to rouse the lion.—To be called the chief of a free nation, be that thy pride.—It becomes a noble-minded man to respect a lady's word.—453. (1.) Who could withstand your tears?—(2.) I saw him die.—I press thee to my heart; I feel thy heart throbbing mightily in unison with mine.—(3.) What we commonly hear asserted.—(4.) Oh, if the fair season of first love would remain fresh for ever.—About one o'clock I went for a drive with Goethe.—454. To-morrow we begin to reap the bounteous harvest.—Is she wont to be thus?—He warned me to be on my guard.—(*Obs.* 1.) It just occurs to me that I have heard.—(*Obs.* 3.) He was most careful not to encourage guerilla warfare.—455. So far did the desire of serving you go.—This is the way to deal with witches.—456. I come, Lady Stuart, to receive your last commands.—What have you done, then, to save her?—457. You have nothing more to give.—I have to speak with the queen.—What business have you listening and watching here?—458. (1.) I am, said the other, ready to die.—Woman is clever in devising expedients.—(2.) Fortune has wings,

and is hard to bind.—459. The French threw their muskets away in order to be able to escape the more quickly.—The enemy retired without fighting.—460. By cutting off the supplies.—In translating you must attack even the untranslatable.—(4.) My lucky star saved me from taking the serpent to my bosom.—He succeeded in making up for the deficiency of cavalry by placing foot-soldiers between the horsemen.—I insist on his lordship's withdrawing.—The king's dislike of foreign ways certainly contributed to make the son appreciate them.—(5.) But the unvarying fury of the devastation, with which the nations accompanied their conquest, equalised the countries which were the scene of it, by trampling down and destroying in the same ruthless way whatever was to be found there.—461. This is no longer to be borne.—The people are no longer to be controlled.—464. Now I know, to be sure, who you are. Oh, to think of putting such a man in prison! —465. Then Charles is the busiest chief in the world.—467. When Emperor Barbarossa, the Good, came marching to the Holy Land.—Thus swimming rather than walking, they find their way out of the wood.—He comes hurrying up in bewilderment.—(*Obs.*) And behind him, oh, marvellous sight, they drag a monster!

CHAPTER XVI.

469. As a young man he rode well.—How hot your foreheads are! You have been running and jumping.—The boy jumped over the ditch.—470. The terrible experience he had gone through had roused corresponding energy in him.—And ere the word had yet escaped his lips they see a movement in the fleet.—471. You are united, princes... Yet those who fell the victims of your quarrel, the dead, rise no more; the tears shed over your quarrels are wept and cannot be recalled.—472. No smoking in this compartment.—Be thy memory ever cherished.—The marchioness has done no more than she was bidden.—(*Obs.*) A Roman captain followed by the guard.—Then you would perhaps deserve to have your word taken.—473. The earth moves.—The fate of Carlos is decided.—474. I bid you welcome, ye friendly companies.

CHAPTER XVII.

475. Who could withstand your tears.—476. How miserable might you have become!—He would have liked to come, but he was not allowed to.—Chance did what Carlos could never do.—To whatever other regions the Carthaginians ought to have gone.—477. Yet they

hoped to hold the town at least till the harvest could be collected. — I was too much accustomed to occupy myself with my own thoughts to study a work of art with attention.—(*Obs.*) I am myself bewildered to think how such a calm could so suddenly follow such a storm in my breast.—480. You have seen her grow up among you.—The same Batavians had helped him to conquer this island.—Why, I did not tell the buffoon to come.—Since that time I have learnt to think quite differently of the empire.—Had it not been for my efforts in natural science I should never have come to know men as they really are.—The truth which so often hath made me weep tears of blood.—I heard him explain a difficult passage of Cæsar at the black board.—But to my annoyance I found that I must miss a good deal, because I had not learnt to read and write.—I have seen swords flashing and heard bullets whistling round me.—My heart bid me do what I now relate to you.—She seems not to have seen him fall herself.—481. The perfection of the object itself could not fail to charm in his works.—482. (1.) Children ought to obey their parents.—An actor, said Goethe, should really go to school to a sculptor and a painter.—Schiller forced himself to work even on days and in weeks when he was not well; he expected his powers to be at his beck and call at any moment.—In this part of the action the problem was quite simple; namely, to fetch Philoctetes with the bow from the island of Lemnos. The way in which this is done was a matter for the poet . . . he intends Ulysses to fetch it; but to be recognised or not by Philoctetes, as the case may be.—(4.) Aye! that's it. It is all a plant. They shall find out they are mistaken.—(5.) The laws require that he should do it.—(6.) Of what use are riches to them.—But what does the chalice yonder on the banner mean?—484. (1.) It has not been useless for me to read useless matter, if hereafter some other person need not read it.—He need only come; it is all ready.—(2.) How dare a shameless unrighteous villain like you condemn to death such a great and glorious knight?—(3.) Love may indeed ask for love; but such beauty only a king may approach.—(4.) The investigation will probably soon be over.—The duke reflected that such a good opportunity might never recur.—485. (1.) Poems, many of which may still be hidden away here and there in private collections.—Considerable as Byron may be as a genius, I am very much disposed to doubt whether any decided contribution to the education of the world is to be found in his writings.—(2.) Whoever has the *entrée* to a sovereign, is at once stamped by the people as a man of influence, disguise it as he will.—Thus much is certain, that a large column of red porphyry, and a chapel over it, whether subsequently erected by repentant sovereigns or

sympathising citizens, or else at the expense of Elizabeth, marked the spot for centuries. – (3.) What is compatible with my duty, I will gladly give her.—So you brought an arrow with you from Brabant. I should like to see it.—(5.) Unmoved I can see you appear, unmoved can I see you depart.—I leave you my friend as a surety; him may you slay, if I escape.—May better counsels guide you.—486. (1.) He was not even allowed to speak.—Let things take their course, Master Arc; let her have her will.—His tombstone, traveller, lets thee read who this man was. — (2.) Bid, sire, the odour of sacrifice ascend to heaven. — (3.) And Sophocles represents even Hercules as complaining, moaning, weeping, and shrieking.—Chateaubrun makes him out merely wounded by the poisoned arrow of a Trojan.—(*Obs.*) If you will let me know towards Christmas how far you have got on with it.—II. (1.) They followed the poet, without allowing themselves to be misled by him in the smallest trifle.—(2.) The governor ordered me to be summoned to his room.—So Charles cut off (caused to be cut off) the feet of several of the Romans.—(*Obs.* 3.) A white hat would look ridiculous; black, brother, black is the thing.—487. People declare they have read it in the papers.—At first she was about (*or* was disposed) quietly to acquiesce in our proceedings; afterwards she remarked in what a false light they might after all be looked at.—(3.) Would to God there were no restless spirits in all Germany.—(4.) Whither would you go?

CHAPTER XVIII.

490A. A good pelican, seeing her young pining, tore her breast open with her sharp beak.—491. (*Obs.* 1.) But this very road had been occupied by Wallenstein the evening before the battle to the great disadvantage of his opponents.—I had no appetite for my dinner.—But today after the intense heat a thin mist had rolled up out of the gorges.—492. (*Obs.* 1.) And you really believed it?—We do violence to your political convictions?—(*Obs.* 2.) God be gracious to you!—Hurrah for freedom!—(*Obs.* 3.) Thou holy staff, would that I had never exchanged thee for the sword.—493. Prince Eugene Maurice was accordingly looked upon as a prince of the blood at the court of Versailles. — Unmixed joy in life never fell to a mortal's lot.—At last their suppressed enthusiasm burst out in a long-continued cheer. — 494. (3.) She ought to have told her father the truth. — Who would venture to accuse Socrates of impiety? — May I venture to remind your Majesty of a precious life? — 495. Filippo was up in the mountains for ten days.—Schiller's birthday

had been kept all through Germany on the 10th of November, 1859, with great *éclat*. — 496. How happy is he, who need not throw aside his whole past life to bring himself into harmony with his lot. — He gave his name, which the major was just about to enter, delighted to see such a splendid figure. — 497. I must stay at home, for I am ill. —Man may never look upon himself as perfect, but he must always strive towards higher aims. — The golden age is past, no doubt, but the good bring it back. — (*Obs.* 1.) Either your assertion is correct, or you are mistaken.—But you talk too much of all sorts of things.—But I will fall, aye, that I will, avenged or unavenged.—(*Obs.* 2.) Blücher meanwhile sent orders to all the divisions. — (*Obs.* 3.) For a long time art had ceased to be a part of life, and had become an article of luxury. —I do remember the time when the most beautiful works of a Leonardo were pointed out in picture galleries only as remarkable and curious antiquities. — The queen *has* no advantage over the ordinary citizen's wife.—498. And were I in cash, I should be in my right mind.—Even though it is night, our right shines bright.—499. I still feel as though I had seen him somewhere.—500. Though their unwise treatment of the occupants of the throne was not without its dangers, the resolute administration of the deputies and their traditions made amends for much.—501. But when he weighed it in his unsupported hand, he found the sword far too heavy. — The old smith strokes his beard. — He was your guest and had taken his seat by your hearth. — And he wished to dream once more the dreams of his youth.—There was only a narrow passage between the pews, along which the volunteers marched up, one by one, to the altar, in order to enter their names and to be enlisted for the holy war by shaking hands with the officer.

CHAPTER XX.

510. (1.) That oppressors should have nothing to fear is neither necessary nor right.—(2.) I know that all countries produce good men.—(3.) The best answer to calumny is to treat it with silent contempt. — (4.) The rising and falling of the waves is the life of the sea. — (5.) Of this will we be glad, that our God gave us life.—I thought it a terrible thing, that I had sacrificed sleep and rest and health.—(6.) For a proof that I send you, take him this paper.—511. He saved himself by jumping out of the window.—Perhaps it is sorrow for him that has contributed to make my father unlike himself for some time past.—Cavour shows himself a true child of the nineteenth century, and especially by carrying on even his conspiracies in broad daylight.—My chief advantage con-

sisted in the prevalence of the love of quiet. — 512. He was firmly resolved not to ruin his country by living as a prisoner of Austria.—513. It is a great delight to transport oneself into the spirit of other times.—My good star saved me from taking the serpent to my bosom.—All your duties will consist in reading Homer aloud to me at meal-times.—Tyranny is not content with doing its work by halves.—514. I hoped to crown the minstrel's temples with the wreath of pine. — Tilly could boast that he had never yet lost a battle.—516. Let us see whether she will save him twice.—Let us know but one thing, what we are.

CHAPTER XXI.

518. Once Rotfuss said quite plainly behind me, "Now I know quite well who you are. You are the son of the forester of our district, so we are from the same part of the country. I have often worked for your father in the forest. He was a strict, precise man."—518A. They demanded the confirmation of the laws of Edward the Confessor and the Charter of Henry I. ; the king himself had promised it to them at Winchester and he was bound to keep the oath he had taken there.—519. Wellington's friends were jubilant at the idea that there was at last a clear line of demarcation between the two factions, as the Tory catchword had it in those days. Canning's appeal to the Duke, to remain minister under him, was a piece of insolence ; the reply of the victor of Waterloo, that he had resigned the command-in-chief of the army along with the office of Master-General of the Ordnance, was worthy of a hero. — 520. The English Court put an end to the contest by the declaration that it absolutely declined to maintain the Hessian troops any longer, if the Landgrave would not at once leave them at the disposal of the King of England.—521. These are the planets, said my guide to me, they rule our fate ; therefore they are figured as kings. — Be undismayed, so ran his appeal, and hold fast to the law ; then and then only will God exalt you again. For it was a holy war, he said, to which they were marching, and each man who desired to share the victory must make himself holy. It was not godless self-confidence that would overthrow the self-confidence of the godless, but a pure and humble mind, that amid the horrors of war held fast to the law and did not soil itself with the impurity which had been the glory of those wicked men.—And finally, how was it that even immediately after Frederick's death unprejudiced judges warned the world that people might as well give up predicting the ruin of the hated kingdom? After every defeat, they said, it had sprung up with renewed vigour, while all the damage done by war was more quickly repaired there than elsewhere. — 522. They bring me a report from Lenz that he is sick ; but I have certain intelligence that he is in hiding at Frauenberg with Count Gallas. — Persuade yourself I am an

orphan child.—For a long time past they had never heard of his having transgressed the letter of his charter.—523. He is out of his mind, and you said so yourself.—As Goethe about the same time wrote that he had no longer any doubt as to the idea of the play, we found in this brilliant opening scene clear evidence that he soon got rid of such doubts.—524. The amiable illusion that the purest development of human perfection is to be found only in the circle of poets and thinkers is widely spread, and especially among women.—It is the most striking characteristic of Christianity that it has abolished the idea of there being one nation specially favoured of heaven.—525. An important prediction was repeated, which caused much excitement, to the effect that on a certain day a tremendous storm would devastate the country.—527. The king decided that the office should be given to another child—Permit this stranger to be called.—Take care lest revenge be your ruin.—She is a woman, and women would always be glad that everything should bend under their soft yoke.—He is not worth troubling about.—(*Obs.* 1.) I insist on his lordship's withdrawing.—The main thing is that we meet him quietly.—I am not accustomed to let chance lead me whither it will, with its blind government and dark supremacy.—(*Obs.* 2.) Do not insist on his leaving you now. — Is only the Saracen worthy to be conquered by the sword of Christians? — 528. First of all didst thou beseech Heaven, if unjust possessions were attached to this thy crown, to accept thee as a sacrifice.—529. Guebriant feared that the intention of the Swedes was . . . —The king is good, and we will hope that he is just.—I fear we are all deceived. — I told you before that Margaret was ill; I hope it is not a fever. — I have no fear that they will laugh this word to scorn. — 530. It is an open question, whether life is more abundant on the mainland or in the unfathomed depths of the sea. — Whether gold can really be made is a matter of indifference to me. — We have at last learnt to ask every man whether he has a country.—You know as little who you are as where you are.—The king continues in his familiar correspondence with d'Argens to ridicule this hypochondria. "It is said," he writes, "that a weir-wolf is now to be seen in France; no doubt it is the marquis . . . does he now eat little children? That was a bad habit he used not to indulge in." — 531. Are you going into the country to-morrow? Am I going into the country to-morrow? To be sure I am. — You were in league with Babington, the arch-traitor, and his murderous crew. — When did I act thus? Show me the evidence. — He holds such decidedly opposite political views that . . . I hold opposite views! I know no political principle in society but one, and that is to drink with honest people. — 532. First of all he demands that du Châtel, whom he describes as his father's murderer, be given up to him.—533. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death because he corrupted the young.

CHAPTER XXII.

534. He had so distinguished himself at the great fire in the village that he received the medal of the Humane Society.—Things have come to such a pass that the emperor is afraid of his own armies.—535. It shall be written so that it may pass for your own hand in a court of law.—(*Obs.* 2.) If you can use something of all this without your letter becoming a book.—536. Scarcely a day passed without something new and unexpected being arranged.—The territories of the Austrian princes were far from being purely Catholic countries.—537. There is not a line in "Elective Affinities" that is not within my own experience.—Who of us but has seen here and there a hope disappointed in the course of a year?—There is not one of us but has taken from this drama the sense of moral indignation against the corruption and tyranny of courts.—Not one detail, the want of which would leave a blank, is missing to the picture.—I am sure there is not in the world such a thing as an idler who is an idler in his own judgment.—538. Your reconciliation was a little too speedy to be lasting.—Yet the feeling in the country was too favourable to the king to be unsettled by that powerful prelate.—(*Obs.* 2.) The poet of the Messiah has far too many beauties for us to credit him with unreal ones.—539. This happened without my being any the wiser for it.—A duel was over without my having heard anything of it.—Instead of going on in the more excellent way, the artists of the present time are returning to a narrow school.—540. There was just the right difference of age between them for them to be married some day.—I am not virtuous enough ever to be able to join his party.—Your readers are scarcely sufficiently versed in Roman history to be quite clear as to the two meanings of the word "tribune."

CHAPTER XXIII.

541. Am I to forego enjoyment of the present moment in order that I may be certain of the next?—Stay not in England, lest the Briton gloat his proud heart on your misery.—His father's death had called him home to take in hand the business now left without a master.—Honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.—(*Obs.*) Thereupon Conradin threw down his glove from the scaffold, in order that it might be conveyed to King Peter of Aragon.—542. Millions of proud warriors fell that we might enter into the inheritance of the Roman world.—Then

came the years of trial when he made shipwreck of all his personal pleasures and happiness, that he might become the self-denying sovereign of his people, the great permanent Secretary of State, the hero of a nation.—543. What have you done, then, to save her?—(*Obs.*) Does the sun shine on me to-day that I may ponder on what happened yesterday?—544. I hurried on before on purpose to prepare you for the result.—She willingly let him go that he might look after himself.—545. Send a trusty messenger to meet him, who may guide him to me along secret paths.

CHAPTER XXIV.

546. We go to the mountain; we return there again when the cuckoo calls, when the birds begin to sing.—Once, whenever the father left home, there was a rejoicing when he came back again.—547. When Frederick William became Elector he found nothing but disputed claims to scattered patches of territory.—When everything was still in the dim distance, you showed resolution and courage; and now that success is before you, you begin to hesitate.—548. As soon as he beckons with his finger the doors of the great prison fly open.—549. They grapple furiously with their foe, while I with vigorous hand hurl my spear against the monster's loins.—Who but learns by teaching?—(*Obs.* 2.) Iron must be forged while it is red-hot.—550. It is only since they have possessed a literature of their own that Germans have been able to pronounce an opinion on literature.—Never since I have been thy voice have I sung joyous songs.—551. Tell him the news before he hears it from others.—Yet they hoped to hold the town at least until they could get in the harvest.—552. No sooner was the father dead than each came with his ring.—I had not to wait long when Goethe appeared in a blue surtout.—(*Obs.*) Yet scarce had the word escaped his lips than he would gladly have recalled it.—No sooner is one great work accomplished than a new one is planned.—553. They were only recognised when they came quite close.—And only when the last man has fallen does the conflict end.—554. There are moments in man's life when he is nearer to the spirit of the universe than at other times.—Do not remind me of those bright days, when your house gave me free entertainment.—555. It is good and praiseworthy to attack a villain wherever he may be placed.—556. At last he was privately informed that Lodroni's plan had been successful; whereupon he broke off the negotiation, and admitted the town council to an audience.—557. (*Obs.*) A man does not die of a day's fasting.—I recognised him by his

stammering.—559. The undertaking was all the easier, as Saxony was entirely denuded of troops.—Why live apart any longer when union makes us richer?—560. I sing as the bird sings.—His good fortune was greater than had been supposed.—561. . . paid for more royally than he ever paid for a good deed.—562. Once he stood high; let his fall be all the greater and more shameful.—Though Aristotle praises very highly the organisation of Carthage from a political point of view, yet it played but an insignificant part in the history of the world.—563. The more the provisions melted away the more terribly did the famine increase (*i.e.*, gradual melting away of the provisions brought with it a terrible increase of famine).—564. Do as if you were at home.—Pensively sat the emperor there, as though he were dreaming of bygone days.—I sometimes felt as if I were separated from God.

CHAPTER XXV.

567. If your conscience is clear you are free.—I should be contented if my people praised me. — 568. Why did she permit the advances of a stranger if she had no hope to offer him? — Many a man would never have become a reprobate if he had not been thought to be one.—569. We shall be glad, if it pleases you. — England's youth would rise as one man, if the Briton saw his queen.—I am a destitute orphan, and if I still *should* have a father I have no desire to see his face.—I hear footsteps outside, said she. If it should be Walter do not let the night pass without speaking. — 570. For safety is not for you if but the governor escape this storm alive. — Many things could they do, did they but accomplish them secretly.—They will save me, and should I be irretrievably lost, weep tears of sympathy for me. — 571. Wouldst thou know thyself, see how others act; wouldst thou understand others, look into thine own heart.—572. Not for all this rich island, not for all the lands the sea encompasses, would I stand before you as you stand before me.—Gladly would I have watched yet longer to enjoy such learned conversation with you.—573. Of the men I could not say much, nor would that be very satisfactory.—574. The king swears that he will punish the trick most terribly, even were his own son the culprit.—575. And though hell itself should enter the lists, my courage shall not quail or falter.—Had it caught fire at that moment, the best part of its effect would have been lost.—576. She must have deceived any man had she promised him her affection.—It scorches my hair, and like some ray of the sun smiting my head with too intense heat, it burns the power of thought out of my brain.—And certainly a man surrounded all his life long by tall, solemn

oaks must needs become a different being from one who took his daily walk under sprightly birches.—577. Though it was not he who invited the Saxons to Prague, yet it was his conduct which facilitated their occupation of the town. Therefore will we not fear, though the earth be moved, and though the hills be carried into the midst of the sea.—578. Though they had only a small force to oppose to the enemy, yet they might hope to maintain their position. — Though she seemed odd to people, no one was observant or sagacious enough to discover the real reason. — (*Obs.* 2.) Though all is circling in eternal change, let a calm spirit stand fast amid the change. — (*Obs.* 3.) Even though the path of life be lost in the sea of mist, the still, small voice within leads us in safety.—579. (1.) Even though the old books are lost, they are written in our hearts.—Yet even though some natural cause had reft her of life, we should be called her murderers.—(2.) To man comes, be he who he may, his last success and his last day.—As the depths of the sea remain ever at rest, be the surface never so ruffled.—For those passages, whether they speak of a future life or of the present life, do all point to a distant future.—580. I do not see what harm it could do to the second description had the first moved us ever so strongly, unless indeed the second is not in itself sufficiently moving.—Who did not ask even to see again her whom he had saved, unless indeed it should be his fate to save her a second time.—Trust no one unless you have eaten a bushel of salt with him.—Did ever sleep sink o'er my eyelids without my having on the evening of each day bethought me how the hearts of my people beat in the furthest climes of my empire. — The Nurembergers never hang a thief unless they have caught him. — 581. However far he sends his voice, nothing living is seen here.—Whatever it be, I guarantee you your life.—However grave the crime he has committed, his own terrible handiwork is punishment enough for him.—Great as were the expectations all Europe now cherished, everything went quite differently.—582. Would you not gladly, both of you, and you especially, my daughter, do great services in return to the being who saved you, whether an angel or a man?

APPENDIX II.

Government of some Verbs and Adjectives.

VERBS.

Only Verbs presenting some difficulty to an Englishman are given here.

	abraten	dissuade	einem etwas
	abtreten[1]	resign	einem or an einen etwas
	abnehmen	take away	einem etwas
	achten	heed	(1) gen.; (2) auf, acc.
		consider as	einen für or als
		esteem	acc.
5	ahnden	avenge, punish	etwas an einem
	ahnen (imp.)	forebode	dat. (acc. old)
	anbeten	adore	acc.
	anfallen	attack	acc.
	anfangen	begin	(1) acc.; (2) mit
10	anflehen	beseech	einen um
	angehen	accost, affect	acc.
		apply to for	einen um etwas
	angrenzen	be adjacent	an, with acc.
	angreifen	attack	acc.
	anhaben[2]	gain advantage	einem etwas
15	anhalten	sue for	um
	anhängen[3]	attach, impute	einem etwas
	anklagen[4]	accuse	acc. and gen.
	ankommen (imp.)	come over[5]	acc. or dat.
		depend on[6]	auf, acc.
	anlächeln	smile on	acc.
20	anliegen	concern, importune[7]	dat.
	anmaßen (ſich)	arrogate to oneself	(1) gen., ſich being acc.[8] (2) acc., ſich being dat.
	annehmen (ſich)	interest oneself in	gen.
	anraten	advise	einem etwas
	anreden	address	acc.
25	anſchließen	attach	ſich einem etwas an with acc., or

[1] Literally *kick from one*, not *step away from*.

[2] In phrases like ihr werdet ihm nichts anhaben können, *you won't get the better of him*. [3] Er hat mir eins angehängt, *he has played me a trick*.

[4] Notice auf Leib und Leben anklagen, auf Schadenerſatz anklagen, *sue for damages*.

[5] Es kam mir eine Furcht an; es kommt mich eine Luſt an zu ſpielen.

[6] Es kommt viel auf das Glück an, *much depends on luck*.

[7] Literally *lie against, stick to*. [8] Not in modern German.

anſehen	look on as	einen für or als
	see in	einem etwas
anſchuldigen	accuse	acc. of person and gen.
anſprechen	ask for	einen um
anſtehen	suit, become	dat.
30 antreiben	incite	einen zu
ärgern (ſich)	be vexed	(1) über with acc. ; (2) an with dat. (old)
auflegen	impose on	einem etwas
bangen (imp.)	tremble	einem vor with dat.
bedenken (ſich)	bethink oneself	gen.
35 bedienen	serve	acc.
bedienen (ſich)	avail oneself of	gen.
bedrohen	threaten	einen mit
bedürfen	need	gen., sometimes acc.
befehlen	command	(1) dat. ; (2) einem etwas
befleißen or befleißigen (ſich)	devote oneself to	gen., rarely auf with acc.
befreien	deliver	einen von
begeben [1] (ſich)	resign	gen.
begegnen	meet	dat.
begehren	desire, demand	gen. or acc. [dat.
45 beharren	persevere, insist	bei with dat., auf with
behagen	suit	dat.
beibringen	apply, inculcate	einem etwas
bekommen	get	acc.
	suit, agree with	dat.
belieben [2] (intr.)	please	dat. [über or von of thing
50 belehren	instruct in	acc. of person, gen. or
bemächtigen (ſich)	make oneself master	gen.
bemeiſtern (ſich)	of	gen.
bemühen (ſich)	trouble oneself	um
benehmen	take away	einem etwas [um etwas
55 beneiden	envy	einem etwas [3] or einen
berauben	rob	(1) acc. and gen. ; (2) einem etwas (rare)
bergen	hide	etwas vor with dat.
berufen (ſich)	appeal	auf with acc.
beſcheiden (ſich)	acquiesce in	gen.
60 beſchuldigen	accuse	acc. and gen.
beſchweren (ſich)	complain	über with acc.
beſinnen (ſich)	bethink oneself	gen. (sometimes auf, acc.)
beſtehen	consist	aus or in
	insist	auf with acc.
bewahren	protect	einen vor with dat.

[1] Literally *betake oneself from ;* the verb is used in other ways : ſich in die Kirche begeben ; ſich begeben, *to happen*, &c.

[2] Also a personal verb : *to like, approve.*

[3] But if the person only or the thing only is expressed, it is put in the accusative.

bitten[1]	ask	einen um
brauchen	need, use	acc., sometimes gen.
dauern (imp.)	grieve	acc.
denken[2]	think	(1) gen.; (2) an acc.; (3) auf acc.; (4) über acc.; (5) von
dienen	serve	dat, (zu in another sense)
dünken (imp.)	seem	acc. or dat.
dürſten (imp.)	thirst	einen nach
einflößen	inspire	einem etwas
eingeben	inspire	einem etwas
einbilden (ſich)	imagine	mir etwas
ekeln (imp.)	*taedet.*	einem vor with dat.[3]
entäußern (ſich)	renounce	gen.
entbehren	do without	acc. or gen.
entbinden	release, deliver	acc. and gen. or von
entblößen	strip	acc. and gen. or von
entbrechen (ſich)	abstain from	gen.
entfallen	escape	dat.
entgelten[4]	pay the penalty of	acc. (formerly gen.)
enthalten (ſich)	abstain from	gen. or von
entladen	unburden	acc. and gen. or von
entlaſſen	dismiss, release	acc. and gen.
entledigen	release	acc. and gen. or von
entraten	do without	gen. or acc.
entrüſten (ſich)	get angry	über acc.
entſchlagen (ſich)	renounce, get rid of	gen.
entſetzen	deprive	acc. and gen.
entſinnen (ſich)	remember	gen.
entwöhnen	disaccustom	acc. and gen. or von
entziehen	take away	acc. and dat.
erbarmen (ſich)	take pity on	gen. or über acc.
erboſen (ſich)	get angry	über acc.
erfrechen (ſich)[5]	dare [joy	gen.
erfreuen (ſich)	take pleasure in, en-	gen. or an dat.
erinnern[6]	remind	acc. and gen. or an with
erklären	declare	einen für; also zu [acc.
erkühnen (ſich)[5]	dare [give	gen. or zu
erlaſſen	remit, excuse, for-	einem etwas
erledigen	release	acc. and gen. or von

[1] Also das bitt' ich dich, when the thing is expressed by a neuter pronoun.

[2] (1) (2) call to mind, remember; (3) excogitate, devise; (4) (5) was denken Sie darüber (davon)?

[3] Sometimes an acc. of the person, sometimes a gen. of the thing is found.

[4] Sometimes takes an ethic dative as well: er ſoll es mir entgelten.

[5] Be bold enough to commit, eines Frevels, &c.

[6] As a reflexive verb it has the reflexive pronoun in the accusative. A few instances are found of the pronoun being in the dative, and the thing remembered in the accusative.

erliegen	succumb	dat.
erlöſen	redeem	acc. and von
ermangeln[1]	want	gen.
	be wanting	dat.
ernennen[2]	appoint	acc. and zu
erſchrecken	be frightened	vor dat., or über acc. formerly gen.
erſtaunen	be astonished	über acc.
erwähnen	mention	gen. or acc.
erwehren (ſich)[3]	abstain from	gen.
fehlen	miss, not hit	acc., sometimes gen.
	be wanting to	dat.[4]
finden (ſich)	adapt oneself to	in with acc.
flehen	pray	zu, sometimes dat. only
	ask, entreat	einen um
fliehen	run away	vor dat.
fluchen[5]	curse	dat., sometimes auf [acc. with
folgen[6]	follow	dat.
freuen (ſich)	take pleasure	gen. or an dat.; über acc.; auf acc.
freuen (imp.)	be pleased	acc.
frieren (imp.)	be cold	acc. (mich in die Beine)
fröhnen	serve	dat.
frommen	profit, avail	dat.
fürchten (ſich)	fear	vor with dat.
gebieten	command, rule	dat. or über with acc.
gebrauchen	use	acc. or gen.
gebrechen (imp.)	be wanting	mir an Rat (dat.)
gebühren	be due	dat.
gedenken	mention	gen.[9]
gefallen	please	dat.
gehorchen	obey	dat.
gehören[7]	belong	dat. or zu or in with acc.
geizen	be sparing	mit
gelangen	arrive	zu, an, auf, with acc.
gelingen (imp.)	succeed	dat.
gelten	pass as	für with acc.
(imp.)[8]	concern, be worth	acc.
gelüſten (imp.)	desire	einen nach
gemahnen	remind	acc. and gen., or an acc.
genießen	enjoy	gen. or acc.

[1] Also used impersonally with an.
[2] Einen zum Richter, &c., ernennen.
[3] Also occasionally, mir etwas erwehren.
[4] If used impersonally, es fehlt mir an Zeit.
[5] A genitive is occasionally found with fluchen.
[6] Gefolgt von is used in the passive, but is scarcely correct.
[7] With dative, *belong;* with zu in *form a part of*, das gehört zu meinem Gute. Also unter ein Gericht, in ein Amt, &c.
[8] Es gilt ſein Leben, *his life is at stake;* dieſe Worte gelten mir, *I am meant.*
[9] Also einem etwas, remember against.

gereichen [1]	tend, redound	einem zu
gereuen (imp.) [2]	repent	acc. and gen.
geſchweigen	keep silence about	gen. or von
gewahren	become aware of	gen. or acc.
gewöhnen	accustom	einen an with acc.
glauben	believe	(1) dat. of person (2) acc. es, das (3) an with acc.[3]
gleichen	resemble	dat. also an with dat. (*in respect of*)
grauen (imp.)	shudder	einem [4] vor with dat.
halten	consider as	einen für
	lay stress on	auf acc.
	cling to	an dat.
harren	await	gen. or auf with acc.
heißen	bid	acc.
	be called	same case as subject
helfen	help	dat.[5]
hinreichen	suffice	einem zu
hinterhalten	withhold	einem etwas
hoffen [6]	hope	acc. (neut. pron.) or auf acc. [with acc.
hören	hear	
	listen to	auf acc.
huldigen	do homage to	dat.
hungern (imp.)	hunger	einen nach
klagen	complain	über acc.
koſten	cost	acc. of price, dat. or acc. of person
lachen	laugh at [7]	gen. or über acc.
	smile on, please [8]	dat.
lächeln	smile on, please	dat.
leben	live on	von (rarely gen.)
lehren	teach	two acc.
losſprechen	release, absolve	von or gen.
lüſten (imp.)	desire	einen nach
machen	make	einen zu
mahnen	remind	acc. of person ; gen. or gen. [an with acc.
mangeln	be without	
mangeln (imp.)	be wanting	dat. of person, an with dat. of thing
mißbrauchen	misuse	acc. or gen.
mißfallen	displease	dat.
mißglücken (imp.)	fail	dat.

[1] Das gereicht ihm zur Ehre.
[2] The more common construction is dieſes Wort gereut mich.
[3] An Geſpenſter, an Wunder glauben, *to believe in ghosts, miracles*, &c.
[4] Sometimes acc. of the person. [5] Acc. rare.
[6] Formerly took genitive : auf is used both with persons and things, the simple acc. of things only.
[7] Gen. of the person or thing mocked at ; über of the cause of laughter.
[8] *Ille terrarum mihi præter omnes angulus ridet.*

170	mißlingen (imp.)	fail	dat.
	mißtrauen	distrust	dat.
	nachahmen [1]	imitate	dat. or acc. or both
	nachdenken	follow in thought	dat.
		reflect on	über acc.
	nachmachen	imitate	einem etwas
175	nachſehen	overlook	einem etwas
	nachſtehen	be inferior to	dat.
	nahen	approach	dat.
	nähern, [5]	bring near	acc. and dat.
	nehmen	take away	einem etwas
	nützen [2]	be useful	einem zu
180	obliegen	be incumbent on	dat.
	pflegen [3]	take care of, devote oneself to	gen. or acc.
	rächen (ſich)	avenge oneself	an dat.
	raten	advise	[person acc. of thing, dat. of acc.
	rufen	summon	
185	ſchaden	injure	dat.
	ſchämen (ſich)	be ashamed	[vor with dat.
	ſchalten	dispose of	gen. or über with acc. or über with acc.
	ſchelten	rail	über acc.
		call derisively	two acc.
	ſcheuen (ſich)	shrink	gen. or vor dat.
190	ſchmeicheln	flatter	dat.
	ſchonen	spare	gen. or acc.
	ſehnen (ſich)	long	nach
	ſinnen	think	auf acc.
	ſparen	spare	acc., formerly gen.
195	ſpielen	play	um
	ſteuern	steer	acc.
		stem, resist	dat.
	ſtreiten	fight	um (also über)
	ſtreben	strive	nach
	teilnehmen	participate	an with dat.
200	trachten	aim	nach
	trauen	trust	dat.
	träumen (imp.)	dream	einem von
	trotzen {	(1) defy	dat.
		(2) presume upon	auf with acc.
	überführen	convict	acc. and gen.
205	überheben	relieve from	acc. and gen.
	überheben (ſich,)	presume on	gen.
	übertreffen	surpass	einen an or in with dat.
	überzeugen	convince	acc. and gen. [4]

[1] If both person and thing are expressed, the person is in the dative, and the thing in the accusative.
[2] Also with acc.
[3] Notice Rats pflegen, der Wolluſt pflegen, &c.
[4] Also takes von. [5] Sich nähern, approach. [6] Acc. meaning *scold*.

	unterfangen (ſich)	undertake [1]	gen.
210	unterliegen	succumb	dat.
	unterwinden (ſich)	undertake [1]	gen.
	verargen	take in ill part,	einem etwas
	verbieten	forbid [blame for	einem etwas
	verfehlen	miss	acc. (rarely gen.)
215	vergeſſen	forget	gen. or acc.
	verlaſſen (ſich)	rely on	auf with acc.
	verleiden	make unpleasant	einem etwas
	vermeſſen (ſich)	presume to	gen.
	verſehen	provide	einen mit
220	verſehen (ſich)	expect	gen. or acc. [2]
	verſichern (ſich)	make sure of	gen.
	vertrauen	entrust, trust	einem etwas or dat. only
	vertröſten	console with the hope of	acc. and auf with acc. (rarely gen.)
	verweiſen	banish [3]	acc. and gen.
225	verwundern (ſich)	wonder	gen. or über with acc.
	verzichten	renounce	auf with acc.
	verzweifeln	despair	an with dat.
	wählen	choose	einen zu
	wahren	guard	acc., sometimes gen.
230	wahrnehmen	observe	acc. sometimes gen.
	walten	exercise authority	gen., or über with acc.
	warten	(1) attend to	gen., or acc.
		(2) wait for	gen., or auf with acc.
	wehren	stem, resist	dat.
	wehren (ſich)	abstain from	gen.
235	weichen	yield	dat.
	weigern (ſich)	refuse to adopt	gen.
	weismachen	persuade of [4]	acc. of thing, dat. of [person
	werden	become	same case as subject,
	werden (imp.)	begin to feel	dat. [or zu
240	widerfahren	befall	dat.
	widerſprechen	contradict	dat.
	widerſtehen	resist	dat.
	willigen	consent	in with acc.
	willfahren	oblige	dat.
245	würdigen	deem worthy of	acc. and gen.
	zählen	reckon (on)	auf with acc.
		reckon (among)	zu with dat, unter
	zeihen	accuse	acc. and gen.
	ziemen	befit	dat.
	zuſehen	look at	dat.
250	zuſprechen	promise, award	acc. and dat.
	zürnen	be angry with	dat.

[1] Generally something presumptuous.

[2] If the expected is in the acc., ſich is in the dative; if in the genitive, ſich is the accusative. The latter is the more usual.

[3] Generally with des Landes. In other meanings ordinary rules apply.

[4] With the idea of imposing upon.

ADJECTIVES.

abgeneigt	averse	dat.
abhold	unpropitious	dat.
abtrünnig	disloyal	dat.
ähnlich	similar	an or in with dat.[1]
angeboren	innate	dat.
angehörig	belonging to	dat.
angelegen	important	dat.
angenehm	agreeable	dat.
ansichtig	in sight of	gen.[2]
anständig	becoming	dat.
anstößig	offensive	dat.
arm	poor	an with dat.
auffällig	striking, strange,	dat.
bang	afraid [offensive	vor
bedürftig	in need of	gen.
beflissen	devoted to	gen.
begierig	greedy	gen. or auf with acc. or nach
bekannt	acquainted	mit
bewandert	versed	in with dat.
bewußt	conscious	gen.[2]
eifersüchtig	jealous[3]	auf with acc.
eigen	peculiar	dat.
eingedenk	mindful	gen.
einig	agreed	in with dat. or über with acc.[4]
erfahren	experienced	in with dat.
fähig	capable	gen.[2]
feind	hostile	dat.
fertig	finished, ready	mit
frei	free	von or gen.
fremd	stranger to	dat.
froh	glad, proud	gen. or über with acc.
fruchtbar	productive	an with dat.
gedenk	mindful	gen.
gefaßt	prepared	auf with acc.
gehorsam	obedient	dat.
geizig	sparing	mit
geschickt	skilful	in with dat.
gerecht	just	gegen
gewahr	aware	gen. or acc.
gewärtig	expecting	gen.
gewiß	certain	gen.

[1] Also a dative of the person or thing resembled.

[2] Also takes an accusative of words like es, was. The sich which often accompanies bewußt is a dative, like *sibi conscius*.

[3] Of one's power, honour, &c.

[4] A gen. in one or two phrases, and in poetry.

gewohnt	accustomed	gen., acc. or an with acc.
gewogen	favourably inclined	dat.
gierig	desirous	gen. or nach
groß	great	an or in with dat.
habhaft	in possession of	gen.
hinlänglich	sufficient	zu
karg	chary	mit
kund, kundig	acquainted with	gen.
ledig	empty, free	gen. or von
leer	empty	gen. or an with dat.
los	rid	gen. or acc.
lüstern	desirous	nach
mächtig	master of	gen.
müde	tired	gen., sometimes acc.
neidisch	envious	auf with acc.
offen	frank	gegen
quitt	rid	gen.[1]
reich	rich	an with dat.
satt	weary of, satiated	gen. or acc.
schuld	to blame for [with	an with dat.
schuldig	guilty[2]	gen.
	indebted	acc. of measure
sicher	safe, certain	gen. *of*, vor with dat. *from*
sparsam	sparing	mit
taub	deaf	gegen
teilhaftig	participating	gen. or an with dat.
treu	faithful	dat. or gegen
überdrüssig	weary of	gen.
überlegen	superior	einem an, or in (dat.)[3]
verhaßt	hateful	dat.
verlustig	forfeiting	gen.[1]
verschwenderisch	lavish	mit
verschlossen	reserved	gegen
voll	full	gen. or von
wert	worth	gen. or acc. of price
	worthy	gen.
würdig	worthy	gen.
zufrieden	content	mit.[1]

[1] Also acc. of es, das, &c.
[2] Also des Todes schuldig.
[3] An Kraft, but in einer Kunst.

APPENDIX III.

List of Strong and Irregular Verbs.

Parts printed in ordinary type are formed without irregularity according to the weak conjugation.

The last column contains a few of the nouns and adjectives formed from the root of the verb, or cognate to it. Of course only a few can be given. In many cases one of several compounds has been given instead of the uncompounded noun. One or two English derivatives have been inserted.

Verbs marked with * are also conjugated in the weak form.

The imperative is generally given with the final e, which is often dispensed with in strong verbs.

Forms in brackets are less common.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.
*Backen [1]	bake	**bäckſt, bäckt**	**backe**
Befehlen [11]	command	**befiehlſt, befiehlt**	**befiehl**
Befleißen (ſich) [2]	apply one's self	befleißeſt, befleißt	befleiße
Beginnen [3]	begin	beginnſt, beginnt	beginne
Beißen	bite	beißeſt, beißt	beiße
Bergen	hide, secure	**birgſt, birgt**	**birg**
Berſten	burst	**birſt(eſt), birſt** (or weak)	(birſt) berſte
*Bewegen [4], [13]	move, induce	bewegſt, bewegt	bewege
Biegen [5]	bend	biegſt, biegt	biege
Bieten [6]	bid, offer	bieteſt, bietet	biete
Binden	bind	bindeſt, bindet	binde
Bitten [6]	beg	bitteſt, bittet	bitte
Blaſen	blow	**bläſ(eſ)t, bläſt** (or weak)	blaſe
Bleiben [7]	remain	bleibſt, bleibt	bleibe
Bleichen [8]	turn pale	bleichſt, bleicht	bleiche
*Braten [9]	roast	**brätſt, brät**	brate
Brechen	break	**brichſt, bricht**	**brich**
Brennen	burn	brennſt, brennt	brenne
Bringen	bring	bringſt, bringt	bringe
Denken	think	denkſt, denkt	denke
*Dingen [10]	hire	dingſt, dingt	dinge
Dreſchen	thrash	**driſcheſt, driſcht**	(driſch) dreſche
Dringen	press, throng	dringſt, dringt	dringe
Dürfen	dare, may, need	**darf, darfſt, darf**	(dürfe)
Empfehlen [11]	recommend	**empfiehlſt, empfiehlt**	**empfiehl**
*Erſchrecken [12]	be frightened	**erſchrickſt, erſchrickt**	**erſchrick**
Erwägen [13]	consider	erwägſt, erwägt	erwäge

[1] Strong conjugation not much used, except in phrases with past participle, as hausgebacken or hausbacken.

[2] Befleißigen, weak, is also used.

[3] Same root as gähnen, *yawn, open.*

[4] Weak when it means to set in motion, move physically.

[5] Old form beugſt, beugt, beug.

[6] Distinguish these two verbs from each other, and from beten, to pray, which is weak throughout. From bieten there are the old forms beutſt, beut, beut.

[7] Really be-leiben, the latter part being now represented by leben.

Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group	Cognate Nouns, &c.
buk	büke	gebacken	5	Zwieback, batch
befahl	beföhle (befähle)	befohlen	6	Befehl
befliß	beflisse	beflissen	3	Fleiß
begann	begönne (gänne)	begonnen	6	Beginn
biß	bisse	gebissen	3	Biß, bit
barg	bürge (bärge)	geborgen	6	Burg, Berg, Herberge [borough
barst or borst	börste (bärste)	geborsten	1	
bewog	bewöge	bewogen	1	Wagen, Weg
bog	böge	gebogen	4	Bug, Bucht, Bogen
bot	böte	geboten	4	Gebot, Bote, Gebiet
band	bände (bünde)	gebunden	6	Band, Bund, bond
bat	bäte	gebeten	2	Gebet, bead
blies	bliese	geblasen	7	Blase, Blatter, blast
blieb	bliebe	geblieben	3	Leib, Leben, Leber
blich	bliche	geblichen	3	Bleich, Blech
briet	briete	gebraten	7	Wildpret=Wild-brat
brach	bräche	gebrochen	1	Bruch, brach, Brocken
brannte	brannte or weak	gebrannt		Brunst, Brand [breach
brachte	brächte	gebracht		
dachte	dächte	gedacht		Gedanke
(dang, dung)	(dänge, dünge)	gedungen	6	Ding, Bedingung
drosch (drasch)	drösche (dräsche)	gedroschen	1	[throng
drang	dränge	gedrungen	6	Drang, Gedränge,
durfte	dürfte	gedurft		Notdurft, Bedürfnis
empfahl	empföhle (fähle)	empfohlen	6	
erschrak	erschräke	erschrocken	1	Schreck
erwog	erwöge	erwogen	1	

[8] Bleichen, *bleach*, is weak. As intransitive the compound erbleichen is commoner than the simple verb.

[9] Weak in transitive sense, but Past Part. always gebraten.

[10] Bedingen is generally weak.

[11] Fehlen, the obsolete word from which these two verbs are formed is a genuine German word, and has nothing to do with fehlen, *fail*, *be wanting*, which is of French origin.

[12] The transitive verb erschrecken, *to frighten*, is weak, as is also the simple schrecken.

[13] Really a compound of wiegen. So is bewegen.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.
Eſſen	eat	**iſſeſt, ißt**	**iß**
Fahren [14]	go, drive (fare)	**fährſt, fährt**	fahre
30 Fallen	fall	**fällſt, fällt**	falle
Fangen	catch	**fängſt, fängt**	fange
Fechten	fight	**ficht(t)ſt, ficht**	(ficht) fechte
Finden	find	findeſt, findet	finde
Flechten	plait	**flicht(t)ſt, flicht**	(flicht) flechte
35 Fliegen [15]	fly (as a bird)	fliegſt, fliegt	fliege
Fliehen [16]	flee	fliehſt, flieht	fliehe
Fließen [17]	flow	fließeſt, fließt	fließe
*Fragen [18]	ask	fragſt, fragt (also ä)	frage
Freſſen [19]	devour	**friſſeſt, frißt**	**friß**
40 Frieren	freeze	frierſt, friert	friere
*Gären	ferment	gärſt, gärt	gäre
Gebären [20]	bring forth, bear	**gebierſt, gebiert**	**gebier**
Geben	give	**gibſt** or **gibſt, gibt** or [**gibt**	**gieb** or **gib**
Gedeihen	prosper	gedeihſt, gedeiht	gedeihe
45 Gehen [21]	go	gehſt, geht	gehe
Gelingen [22]	succeed	es gelingt	es gelinge
Gelten	be worth	**giltſt, gilt**	**gilt**
Geneſen [23]	recover	geneſeſt, geneſt	geneſe
Genießen [24]	enjoy	genießeſt, genießt	genieße
50 Geſchehen [25]	happen	**geſchieht**	es geſchehe
Gewinnen	win	**gewinnſt, gewinnt**	gewinne
Gießen [26]	pour, found, cast	gießeſt, gießt	gieße
Gleichen	resemble	gleichſt, gleicht	gleiche
*Gleiten [27]	glide	gleiteſt, gleitet	gleite

[14] Wallfahren, willfahren, are weak, and so is befahren, *to fear*, from another root. Fahren is used of going in a carriage, boat, or other conveyance, not of riding on horseback.

[15] Fleugſt, fleugt, fleug, old.

[16] Fleuchſt, fleucht, fleuch, old.

[17] Fleußt, fleußt, fleuß, old.

[18] Mostly weak. Frug, früge are not now used.

[19] For vereſſen, applied mostly to animals.

[20] Or gebärſt, gebärt, gebäre. The simple verb, identical with *bear*, *fero*, &c., does not occur in modern German.

Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group	Cognate Nouns, &c.
aß, aßeſt	äße	gegeſſen	2	Aas (carrion)
fuhr	führe	gefahren	5	Fähre, Fahrt, Gefahr
fiel	fiele	gefallen	7	Fall, Gefallen
fing (fieng)	finge (fienge)	gefangen	7	Fang, Finger (?)
focht	föchte	gefochten	1	Gefecht, Fuchtel
fand	fände	gefunden	6	Fund
flocht	flöchte	geflochten	1	Flachs
flog	flöge	geflogen	4	Flug, Flügel, Flocke
floh	flöhe	geflohen	4	Flucht, Floh
floß, floſſeſt	flöſſe	geflоſſen	4	Fluß, Floß
(frug)	(früge)	gefragt	5	
fraß, fraßeſt	fräße	gefreſſen	2	Fraß
fror	fröre	gefroren	4	Froſt
gor	göre	gegoren	1	Gäſcht, yeast, Geiſt
gebar	gebäre	geboren	1	Bahre, Geburt, Geberde
gab	gäbe	gegeben	2	Gabe, Gift, Mitgift
gedieh	gediehe	gediehen	3	dicht, gediegen
ging (gieng)	ginge (gienge)	gegangen	7	Gang
gelang	gelänge	gelungen	6	leicht (?)
galt	gölte (gälte)	gegolten	6	Geld, gültig, Gilde
genas	genäſe	geneſen	2	
genoß, genoſſeſt	genöſſe	genoſſen	4	Genuß, Nutz, Genoſſe
geſchah	geſchähe	geſchehen	2	Schicht, Geſchichte
gewann	gewönne (ge-)	gewonnen	6	
goß, goſſeſt	göſſe [wänne)	gegoſſen	4	Guß, Goſſe
glich	gliche	geglichen	3	Vergleich
glitt	glitte	geglitten	3	glatt, Glitſche

[21] From the prefix ge and the widely-spread root *i*—.

[22] Distinguish this impersonal from the intransitive gelangen, *arrive.*

[23] The factitive corresponding to ·neſen is nähren, *make to thrive, nourish*

[24] Geneußt, geneußt, geneuß, old.

[25] The corresponding factitive is ſchicken, properly to *dispose, put.*

[26] Geußt, geuß, old.

[27] Begleiten is from be·geleiten and is weak.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.
*Glimmen	glimmer, glow	glimmſt, glimmt	glimme
Graben	dig	gräbſt, gräbt	grabe
Greifen	seize	greifſt, greift	greife
Haben [28]	have	haſt, hat	habe
Halten	hold	hältſt, hält	halte (halt)
Hangen [29]	hang (*intr.*)	hängſt, hängt, or weak	hange
*Hauen	hew	hau(e)ſt, haut	haue
Heben	heave, lift	hebſt, hebt	hebe
Heißen [30]	(1) bid; (2) be [called	heißeſt, heißt	heiße
Helfen	help	hilfſt, hilft	hilf
Kennen	know, ken	kennſt, kennt	kenne
*Kieſen(küren)	choose	kieſeſt or kieſt, kieſt	kieſe
*Klimmen	climb (clench)	klimmſt, klimmt	klimme
Klingen	sound	klingſt, klingt	klinge
Kneifen	nip	kneifſt, kneift	kneife
Kommen	come	weak or kömmſt, kömmt	komme (komm)
Können [32]	can, be able	kann, kannſt, kann	
Kriechen [33]	creep	kriecheſt, kriecht	krieche
Laden [34]	load, invite	lädſt, lädt or ladeſt, ladet	lade
Laſſen [35]	let	läſſeſt, läßt	laſſe, laß
Laufen	run	läufſt, läuft or weak	laufe
Leiden [36]	suffer	leideſt, leidet	leide
Leihen	lend	leihſt, leiht	leihe
Leſen [37]	read	lieſeſt or lieſt, lieſt	lies (leſe)
Liegen	lie (*jacere*)	liegſt, liegt	liege
Löſchen [38]	be extinguished	liſcheſt or liſcht, liſcht	liſch
Lügen [39]	lie (*mentiri*)	lügſt, lügt	lüge
Meiden	avoid	meideſt, meidet	meide

[28] The reflexive compounds behaben, gehaben are regular; so also is handhaben, § 181.

[29] When transitive generally weak, though in that sense the factitive hängen is preferred. But hing is often used transitively.

[30] In the sense *to bid*, the past participle is often heißen with another infinitive, following the analogy of verbs of mood.

[31] Uhland has erkoſen in past participle.

[32] Past participle also können, mögen, müſſen as verbs of mood.

[33] Kreuchſt, kreucht, kreuch, old.

Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group	Cognate Nouns, &c.
glomm	glömme	geglommen	6	
grub	grübe	gegraben	5	Grab, Grube, Gruft
griff	griffe	gegriffen	3	Griff
hatte	hätte	gehabt		Haft, Heft
hielt	hielte	gehalten	7	Halt, Statthalter
hing (hieng)	hinge (hienge)	gehangen	7	Hang, Henker
hieb	hiebe	gehauen	7	Hieb, Heu
hob	höbe or hübe	gehoben	5	erhaben
hieß, hießeſt	hieße	geheißen	7	Geheiß, anheiſchig
half	hülfe (hälfe)	geholfen	6	Hülfe or Hilfe
kannte	kennete or	gekannt		Kunde, Kunſt, uncouth
kor	köre [kannte	gekoren	4	Willkür, Kurfürſt
klomm	klömme	geklommen	6	Klamm
klang	klänge	geklungen	6	Klang, Klinge
kniff	kniffe	gekniffen	3	Kniff
kam	käme	gekommen	1	Ankunft, bequem
konnte	könnte	gekonnt		Kunde, Kunſt
kroch	kröche	gekrochen	4	Krüppel
lud (ladete)	lüde (ladete)	geladen	5	Laſt, Schublade
ließ, ließeſt	ließe	gelaſſen	7	Unterlaß, nachläſſig
lief	liefe	gelaufen	7	Lauf, Zeitläufte
litt	litte	gelitten	3	Leid, Leidenſchaft
lieh	liehe	geliehen	3	Anleihe, Lehen, loan
las	läſe	geleſen	2	
lag	läge	gelegen	2	Lage, Lager, Gele-
loſch	löſche	geloſchen	1	[genheit
log	löge	gelogen	4	Lug, Lüge
mied	miede	gemieden	3	

[34] The two meanings represent different roots; purists make the verb weak in the sense *invite* (einladen, vorladen).

[35] Past part. also laſſen as verb of mood; remember that veranlaſſen is weak by § 181.

[36] Verleiden (einem etwas) *to make unpleasant*, is weak; bemitleiden is from the noun Mitleid, § 181.

[37] The original meaning is that of the Latin *lego*, *gather*; cf. English *lease*, *to glean*.

[38] Is generally weak when used transitively.

[39] Leugſt, leugt, leugt old.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.
Meſſen	measure	miſſeſt or **mißt, mißt**	**miß**
Mögen[32]	may, like	**mag, magſt, mag**	
85 Müſſen[32]	must	**muß, mußt, muß**	
Nehmen	take	**nimmſt, nimmt**	**nimm**
Nennen	name	nennſt, nennt	nenne
Pfeifen	pipe, whistle	pfeifſt, pfeift	pfeife
Pflegen[40]	cherish, be wont	pflegſt, pflegt	pflege
90 Preiſen[41]	praise	preiſeſt, preiſt	preiſe
*Quellen	spring forth	**quillſt, quillt**	**quill**
Raten	advise	**rätſt, rät**	rate
Reiben	rub	reibſt, reibt	reibe
Reißen	tear	reißeſt, reißt	reiße
95 Reiten	ride	reiteſt, reitet	reite
Rennen[42]	run (a race)	rennſt, rennt	renne
Riechen	smell (reek)	riechſt, riecht	rieche
Ringen	wrestle	ringſt, ringt	ringe
Rinnen	run, flow	rinnſt, rinnt	rinne
100 Rufen	call	rufſt, ruft	rufe
Saufen[43]	drink (sup)	ſäufſt, ſäuft	ſaufe
Saugen	suck	ſaugſt, ſaugt[44]	ſauge
*Schaffen[45]	create, get	ſchaffſt, ſchafft	ſchaffe
Schallen	sound	ſchallſt, ſchallt	ſchalle
105 Scheiden	separate	ſcheideſt, ſcheidet	ſcheide
Scheinen	appear	ſcheinſt, ſcheint	ſcheine
Schelten	scold	**ſchiltſt, ſchilt**	**ſchilt**
*Scheren[47]	shear	**ſchierſt, ſchiert**	**ſchier**
Schieben	shove	ſchiebſt, ſchiebt	ſchiebe
110 Schießen	shoot	ſchießeſt, ſchießt	ſchieße

[40] Is weak in the sense *to be wont*, and generally so in the sense *to cherish, to take care of.*

[41] Lobpreiſen sometimes weak, sometimes strong; preisgeben is referred to the Italian *dar presa.*

[42] Is weak when used as factitive of rinnen.

[43] Like an animal, opposed to trinken.

Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group	Cognate Nouns, &c.
maß	mäße	gemeſſen	2	Maß, vermeſſen
mochte	möchte	gemocht		Macht
mußte	müßte	gemußt		
nahm	nähme	genommen	1	Vernunft, Annahme
nannte	nennete,	genannt		Name
pfiff	pfiffe	gepfiffen	3	pfiffig
pflog	pflöge	gepflogen	1	Pflicht, Pflege,
pries	prieſe	geprieſen	3	Preis [plight
quoll	quölle	gequollen	6	Quelle
riet	riete	geraten	7	Rat, Rätſel, Gerät
rieb	riebe	gerieben	3	
riß, riſſeſt	riſſe	geriſſen	3	Riß, Ritz, write
ritt	ritte	geritten	3	Ritt, Ritter, road
rannte	rennete	gerannt		
roch	röche	gerochen	4	Rauch, Geruch
rang	ränge	gerungen	6	Ranke, wrong
rann	rönne or ränne	geronnen	6	Blutrunſt
rief	rieſe	gerufen	7	Ruf, Gerücht
ſoff	ſöffe	geſoffen	4	Suppe, sup
ſog	ſöge	geſogen	4	Säugling
ſchuf	ſchüfe	geſchaffen	5	Geſchäft, -ſchaft (suffix)
ſcholl	ſchölle	(geſchollen)[46]	6	Schall, Schelle
ſchied	ſchiede	geſchieden	3	Abſchied, Scheitel,
ſchien	ſchiene	geſchienen	3	Schein [Beſcheid
ſchalt	ſchölte	geſcholten	6	unbeſcholten
ſchor	ſchöre	geſchoren	1	Pflugſchar
ſchob	ſchöbe	geſchoben	4	Aufſchub, Schublade
ſchoß, ſchoſſeſt	ſchöſſe	geſchoſſen	4	Schoß,[48] Schuß, Schütze

[44] Distinguished from the factitive ſäugen, *suckle*.

[45] Strong in the sense *create*, weak in the sense *get*, for which verſchaffen is the usual word.

[46] Chiefly in the compounds erſchollen, verſchollen.

[47] The past part. is always geſchoren; beſcheren, *allot*, is weak.

[48] Our *scot* or *shot* (paying one's shot).

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.
Schinden	flay	ſchindeſt, ſchindet	ſchinde
Schlafen	sleep	**ſchläfſt, ſchläft**	ſchlafe
Schlagen [49]	strike	**ſchlägſt, ſchlägt**	ſchlage
Schleichen	sneak	ſchleichſt, ſchleicht	ſchleiche
115*Schleifen [50]	slip, whet, raze	ſchleifſt, ſchleift	ſchleife
Schleißen	slit	ſchleißeſt, ſchleißt	ſchleiße
Schließen [51]	shut	ſchließeſt, ſchließt	ſchließe
Schlingen [52]	sling, swallow	ſchlingſt, ſchlingt	ſchlinge
Schmeißen	smite, fling	ſchmeißeſt, ſchmeißt,	ſchmeiße
120*Schmelzen [53]	melt, smelt	**ſchmilzeſt, ſchmilzt,** or [weak	**ſchmilz**
Schnauben [55]	snort	ſchnaubeſt, ſchnaubt	ſchnaube
Schneiden	cut	ſchneideſt, ſchneidet	ſchneide
*Schrauben	screw	ſchraubſt, ſchraubt	ſchraube
Schreiben	write	ſchreibſt, ſchreibt	ſchreibe
125 Schreien	cry, shriek	ſchreiſt, ſchreit	ſchreie
Schreiten	step, stride	ſchreiteſt, ſchreitet	ſchreite
Schwären	fester	**ſchwierſt, ſchwiert,** or	ſchwäre
Schweigen	be silent	ſchweigſt, ſchweigt [weak	ſchweige
*Schwellen [57]	swell	**ſchwillſt, ſchwillt**	**ſchwill**
130 Schwimmen	swim	ſchwimmſt, ſchwimmt	ſchwimme
Schwinden	vanish	ſchwindeſt, ſchwindet	ſchwinde
Schwingen [58]	swing	ſchwingſt, ſchwingt	ſchwinge
Schwören	swear	ſchwörſt, ſchwört	ſchwöre
Sehen	see	**ſiehſt, ſieht**	**ſieh(e)**
135*Sieden [59]	boil, seethe	ſiedeſt, ſiedet	ſiede
Singen	sing	ſingſt, ſingt	ſinge

[49] For **ratſchlagen, veranſchlagen**, see § 130 (181).

[50] Weak in the senses *to raze, to convey in a sledge*, and sometimes in other meanings.

[51] **Schleußt, ſchleußt, ſchleuß**, old.

[52] The meanings *wind* and *swallow* belong to different verbs, which have now the same form. The latter was originally ſchlinden, whence Schlund.

[53] Properly strong only in its intransitive sense; in its transitive sense it is more correctly weak, but not always so used; as a derivative of Schmelz, *to enamel*, it is weak.

Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group	Cognate Nouns, &c.
ſchund, ſchand	ſchünde, ſchände	geſchunden	6	Schund (offal)
ſchlief	ſchliefe	geſchlafen	7	Schlaf, ſchlaff
ſchlug	ſchlüge	geſchlagen	5	Schlag Schlacht
ſchlich	ſchliche	geſchlichen	3	Schlich, sleek
ſchliff	ſchliffe	geſchliffen	3	Schliff
ſchliß	ſchliſſe	geſchliſſen	3	Schlitz, Verſchleiß
ſchloß	ſchlöſſe	geſchloſſen	4	Schloß, Schluß, Schlüſſel
ſchlang	ſchlänge	geſchlungen	6	Schlinge, Schlange
ſchmiß, ſchmiſſeſt	ſchmiſſe	geſchmiſſen	3	
ſchmolz	ſchmölze	geſchmolzen	6	Schmalz, Schmelz, [émail [54]
ſchnob	ſchnöbe	geſchnoben	4	Schnuppe, Schnupfen
ſchnitt	ſchnitte	geſchnitten	3	Schnitt
ſchrob	ſchröbe	geſchroben [56]	4	Schraube
ſchrieb	ſchriebe	geſchrieben	3	Schrift
ſchrie	ſchrie(e)	geſchrie(e)n	3	Schrei, Geſchrei
ſchritt	ſchritte	geſchritten	3	Schritt
ſchwor	ſchwöre	geſchworen	1	Geſchwür, ſchwer
ſchwieg	ſchwiege	geſchwiegen	3	
ſchwoll	ſchwölle	geſchwollen	6	Schwulſt, Schwelle
ſchwamm	ſchwämme or [ſchwömme	geſchwommen	6	Schwamm, Schwemme, Sumpf
ſchwand	ſchwände	geſchwunden	6	Schwindel
ſchwang	ſchwänge	geſchwungen	6	Schwung, ſchwank
(ſchwor)	ſchwüre	geſchworen	5	Schwur, answer
ſah	ſähe	geſehen	2	Geſicht, Vorſicht
ſott	ſötte	geſotten	4	Sud, soapsuds,
ſang	ſänge	geſungen	6	Geſang [sodden

[54] Through Italian *smalto*.

[55] Also written ſchnieben. There are old forms of the present with eu (ſchneubſt, &c.)

[56] Especially in the form verſchroben.

[57] Generally weak when transitive, strong when intransitive.

[58] Beſchwingen, *to provide with wings* (Schwinge), is weak.

[59] Mostly weak in past tense, not in past participle.

Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative.
Sinken	sink	ſinkſt, ſinkt	ſinke
Sinnen [60]	think, muse	ſinnſt, ſinnt	ſinne
Sitzen	sit	ſitzeſt, ſitzt	ſitze
140 Sollen	shall	ſoll, ſollſt, ſoll	
Speien	spit	ſpei(e)ſt, ſpei(e)t	ſpeie
Spinnen	spin	ſpinnſt, ſpinnt	ſpinne
Sprechen	speak	ſprichſt, ſpricht	ſprich
Sprießen	sprout	ſprießeſt, ſprießt	ſprieße
145 Springen	spring	ſpringſt, ſpringt	ſpringe
Stechen	sting	ſtichſt, ſticht	ſtich
*Stecken [61]	stick	(ſtickſt, ſtickt) or weak	ſtecke
Stehen	stand	ſtehſt, ſteht	ſtehe
Stehlen	steal	ſtiehlſt, ſtiehlt	ſtiehl
150 Steigen	mount	ſteigſt, ſteigt	ſteige
Sterben	die	ſtirbſt, ſtirbt	ſtirb
Stieben [62]	disperse (*intr.*)	ſtiebſt, ſtiebt	ſtiebe
Stinken	stink	ſtinkſt, ſtinkt	ſtinke
Stoßen	push	ſtößeſt, ſtößt, or weak	ſtoße
155 Streichen	stroke	ſtreichſt, ſtreicht	ſtreiche
Streiten	contend, strive	ſtreiteſt, ſtreitet	ſtreite
Thun [63]	do	thuſt, thut (ihr thut)	thue
Tragen [64]	bear	trägſt, trägt	trage
Treffen	hit	triffſt, trifft	triff
160 Treiben	drive	treibſt, treibt	treibe
Treten	tread	trittſt, tritt	tritt
Trinken	drink	trinkſt, trinkt	trinke
*Triefen [65]	drip	trieſſt, trieft	trieſe
Trügen	deceive	trügſt, trügt	trüge
165 Verderben [66]	spoil	verdirbſt, verdirbt	verdirb

[60] Geſinnt in phrases like gleich geſinnt is rather formed from Sinn than a part of the strong verb.

[61] Always strong as a transitive verb.

[62] Steubſt, steubt, steub, old.

[63] The past indicative (especially in the form thät) with an infinitive is used popularly for the past tense of an ordinary verb: ich thät kommen = ich kam; die Augen thäten ihm ſinken (Goe.)

Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group.	Cognate Nouns, &c.
ſank	ſänke	geſunken	6	
ſann	ſönne (ſänne)	geſonnen	6	Sinn, beſonnen
ſaß, ſaßeſt	ſäße	geſeſſen	2	Seſſel, anſäſſig
ſollte	ſollte	geſollt		Schuld, ſhall
ſpie	ſpie(e)	geſpie(e)n		Speichel
ſpann	ſpönne (ſpänne)	geſponnen	6	Spinne (ſpider)
ſprach	ſpräche	geſprochen	1	Sprache, Spruch,
ſproß, ſproſſeſt	ſpröſſe	geſproſſen	4	Sproß [Sprichwort
ſprang	ſpränge	geſprungen	6	Sprung
ſtach	ſtäche	geſtochen	1	Stich, Stachel
(ſtak)	(ſtäke)	geſteckt	1	Stock, Stück, Verſteck
ſtand (ſtund)	ſtände (ſtünde)	geſtanden	5	Stand, Stunde, Statt
ſtahl	ſtöhle	geſtohlen	1	Diebſtahl
ſtieg	ſtiege	geſtiegen	3	Steg, Stiege, stirrup
ſtarb	ſtürbe (ſtärbe)	geſtorben	6	
ſtob	ſtöbe	geſtoben	4	Staub
ſtank	ſtänke	geſtunken	6	Geſtank
ſtieß, ſtießeſt	ſtieße	geſtoßen	7	Stoß, ſtutzig
ſtrich	ſtriche	geſtrichen	3	Streich, Strich
ſtritt	ſtritte	geſtritten	3	Streit, ſtreitig
that	thäte	gethan		That, thätig
trug	trüge	getragen	5	Vertrag, Tracht
traf	träfe	getroffen	1	triftig
trieb	triebe	getrieben	3	Trieb, Triſt
trat	träte	getreten	2	Tritt
trank	tränke	getrunken	6	Trank, Trunk
troff	tröffe	getroffen	4	Tropfen, Traufe
trog	tröge	getrogen	4	Betrug
verdarb	verdürbe	verdorben	6	

[64] For beauftragt, beauftragen, see § 181.

[65] Treuſſt, treuſt, treuſl old.

[66] Intransitive strong, transitive weak, but the strong forms are often used for the transitive verb also. The participle verdorben has become practically an adjective.

	Infinitive.	English.	Present Ind.	Imperative
	Verdrießen [67]	vex	verdrießeſt, verdrießt	verdrieße
	Vergeſſen	forget	vergiſſeſt, vergißt	vergiß
	Verlieren	lose	verlierſt, verliert	verliere
	Wachſen	grow, wax	wächſeſt, wächſt	wachſe
170	Waſchen	wash	wäſcheſt, wäſcht	waſche
	*Weben [68]	weave	webſt, webt	webe
	Weichen	yield	weichſt, weicht	weiche
	Weiſen	show	weiſeſt, weiſt	weiſe
	*Wenden	turn (*tr.*)	wendeſt, wendet	wende
175	Werben	sue	wirbſt, wirbt	wirb
	Werden	become	wirſt, wird	werde
	Werfen	throw	wirfſt, wirft	wirf
	Wiegen(wägen) [69]	weigh	wiegſt, wiegt	wiege
	Winden	wind	windeſt, windet	winde
180	Wiſſen	know	weiß, weißt, weiß	wiſſe
	Wollen	wish, will	will, willſt, will	wolle
	Zeihen	tax with, accuse	zeihſt, zeiht	zeihe
	Ziehen	draw	ziehſt, zieht	ziehe
	Zwingen	compel	zwingſt, zwingt	zwinge

[67] Verdreußt, old.

[68] Mostly weak.

Past Ind.	Past Subj.	P. Participle.	Group	Cognate Nouns, &c.
verdroß, -drosseſt	verdrösse	verdrossen	4	Verdruß
vergaß, -gaßeſt	vergäße	vergeſſen	2	
verlor	verlöre	verloren	4	Verluſt, los
wuchs	wüchſe	gewachſen	5	Wuchs, Gewächs
wuſch	wüſche	gewaſchen	5	Wäſche
wob	wöbe	gewoben	6	Gewebe, Wabe
wich	wiche	gewichen	3	weich
wies	wieſe	gewieſen	3	Beweis
wandte	wendete	gewandt		bewandt, verwandt
warb	würbe	geworben	6	Wirbel
wurde or ward	würde	geworden	6	Würde
warf	würfe, wärfe	geworfen	6	Wurf, warp
wog	wöge	gewogen	4	Wucht, Gewicht
wand	wände	gewunden	6	Wand, Gewand
wußte	wüßte	gewußt		gewiß, Witz
wollte	wollte	gewollt		Wille
zieh	ziehe	geziehen	3	Verzicht
zog	zöge	gezogen	4	Zug, Zucht, Herzog,
zwang	zwänge	gezwungen	6	Zwang. [Zeug

☞ But wiegen, *rock*, is weak. The participle gewogen often means *well-disposed to*.

INDEX.

Page.

ab, prefix to nouns ... 139
— prefix to verbs ... 125
aber, conjunction ... 113
— prefix ... 139
ablautende Verben ... 90
abgelebt ... 254
Abſcheu, gender ... 39
abstract nouns ... 153
— article with ... 154
accent ... 9
according as ... 300
accusative ... 172
— absolute ... 178
— cognate ... 175
— double ... 175
— of extent ... 173
— of time when ... 172
— with adjectives ... 178
achten, with genitive ... 197
address, pronouns of ... 227
adjectival sentences, 277, 292, 306
— endings ... 52
adjectives after pers. pron. ... 170
— as adverbs ... 100
— comparison of ... 45
— declension of ... 40
— in relative clause ... 236
— neuter as nouns ... 166
— strong and weak ... 41, 166
— syntax of ... 160
— uninflected ... 161, 171
— used as complements only 163
adverbial additions, place of 271
adverbial sentences ... 278
— genitive ... 199
after prep. or conj. ... 116
after, prefix ... 139
ago ... 212
ahnt, es...mir ... 87
algebraical expressions ... 70

Page.

all, alle ... 167
allein, conjunction ... 113
allenthalben ... 56
allerdings ... 107
allerliebſt ... 165
alliteration ... 156
alphabet ... 1
als daß ... 292
— ob ... 301
— order after ... 273
als and da ... 296
— and wie ... 296, 300
alſo ... 107
Alters, von...her ... 220
am with superlative ... 103, 164
a most ... 165
an, prefix to nouns ... 139
— prefix to verbs ... 127
— preposition ... 202
— with noun after was ... 236
anderthalb ... 70
anerkennen, anvertrauen ... 97
annehmen, ſich, genitive ... 197
Anſchlag, derivation ... 127
anſichtig, with acc. ... 178
— — gen. ... 149
anſtatt ... 110
— with supine ... 251
ant, prefix ... 139
antecedent and relative ... 232
— omitted ... 235
Antlitz, derivation ... 139
Antwort, gender ... 39
any ... 66, 238
apodosis ... 302
apposition ... 149
— for partitive genitive ... 193
— to sentence ... 150
appositive complement ... 150
— — infinitive as ... 248

Page.

arm an 196, 203
articles 11, 153
— coalescing with preps. ... 159
— in apposition 158
— omitted.. .. ..154, 156
— repeated 158
ankommen, auf 205
as 115
as if 301
asking, verbs of ... .176, 226
ätzen, derivation..... 98
auch 106
auf, prefix 127
— preposition 204
auferſtehen 97
auf's with superlative 103
Auge, declined 24
aus, prefix 127, 139
— preposition 214
ausgedient 254
außen, prefix 139
außer, preposition..... 215
auxiliaries 72, 255
— of mood 94
— in final sentence 295
— of passive.....81, 83, 256
— omitted..... ..... 256, 259
— variable 255

Baier, declined 15
bald, compared 47
bald.....bald 109
Band, gender 38
— plurals 28
Bank, plurals 28
-bar, adject. termination 53
— adject. in, with dat. 181
Bau, plural..... 29
Bauer, gender..... 38
— declined 24
be, prefix 47, 174
beaufſichtigen 98
beauftragen..... 97
bedürfen, gen. or acc..... 174, 196
beeinfluſſen 97
befehlen, dat. or acc. 174
befehligen, acc. 174
before, prep., conj. or adverb, 116
begeben, ſich..... 118
— with gen..... 196
begegnen, dat..... 183
begehren, gen. or acc. 174

Page.

beginnen, derivation 118
Begriffswörter 11
behagen, dat. 174
behaupten, with zu 250
behende, accent 9
bei, prefix to nouns 140
— prefix to verbs 129
— preposition 215
— weitem nicht 217
beide, beides..... ..... 66, 70
bekommen 118
— with dat..... 174
belehren, acc. or gen..... 175
belieben, dat. 174
belonging, verbs of 180
bemächtigen, ſich, gen. 199
bemitleiden 97
benehmen, ſich 118
beobachten 97
bequem, derivation 91
Beſtreben, plural 29
Betrug, plural..... 29
bewenden laſſen 174
bewußt, ſich with gen. 195
binnen 217
bitten, two acc. 176
— with um 226
bleiben, derivation 118
—, with infinitive 249
body, parts of 156, 184
brauchen, gen. or acc. 196
Buckel, gender..... 38
Bund, plural 29
but 113

Capitals 9
— adjectives with 164
— infinitive with 247
Ceremonie, plural 16
-chen, suffix 50
Chor, gender 38
Christian names, declined ... 27
Chriſtus, declined 26
classical names, declined..... 27
collective nouns, gender 32
— — syntax 146, 154
commas, inverted 11
common nouns 153
comparative sentences 301
comparatives, declined..... 47
— formed with mehr..... 165
comparison of adjectives 45

Page.

comparison of adverbs ... 46, 103
complex sentences 275
compound nouns for adject. 160
concessive adverbs..... 107
— sentences 306
concord, first 145
— second 160
— third 232
concrete nouns 153
conditional mood 72, 244
— sentences 302
conjunctions, classified 111
connotative..... 153
consecutive sentences 291
consonants classified..... 5
coordinate sentences, order... 270
coordinative conjunctions ... 111
copulative verbs..... 142, 150
could have 260, 263
coupled nouns 145, 156

da, compounds of 56, 61
— and weil 299
— as conjunction..... 296, 299
— for relative 237
dafür 114
daher..... 107
damals..... 107
damit, in final sentences 294
Dank, plural 29
dann..... 107
dar, prefix 129
darum 107
dates..... 173
dative 179
— ethic..... 184
— for possessive 187
— of person interested 183
— of relation 183
— of remoter object 179
— of taking away 180
— with compound verbs ... 185
— with impersonals 182
— with intransitives 182
day, time of 70
days of month 70
decimals 70
declaratory sentences 267
declension of nouns 13
demnach 107
demonstrative pronouns ...60, 232
denken, gen. or an 198

Page.

denken, auf 206
— über 211
denn 107
dennoch..... 114
dentals..... 4
der and welcher 234
— article 12
— demonstrative 60
— relative..... 62
derentwegen..... 56
dergleichen 194
derjenige 61
dero 60
derselbe..... 61
deshalb 107
dessen, *his*..... 231
dessentwegen 56
desto 114, 301
deswegen 107
dienen, dat. 183
dieser, declined 60
dieser and jener 232
dieses or dies 60
diphthongs 3
disjunctives..... 112
displeasing, verbs of..... 182
distributive numerals 71
— pronouns 66
doch 105, 114
dont, French 234
Dorn, plurals 28
drein, ... 130
dritthalb 70
Druck, compounds modify ... 19
dünkt, es, acc. or dat..... 177, 180
du, declined..... 55
— when used 227
durch, prefix 135
— preposition 224
durchaus, durchaus nicht 109
dürfen 263

e in gen. and dat. 19
— suffix, gender 35
— — meaning 51
each other 66
eben, eben nicht 109
— prefix to nouns 140
-ei, suffix, gender 34
— — meaning..... 52
ein, einer 64
— eins 68

Page.

ein, prefix 129
— spaced 156
einander 66
einflößen 98
eingedenk, gen. 198
eingestehen 96
einige 65
— inflexion after 167
either 66
ekelt, es, dat. 182
-el, suffix 49
-el, -en, -er, nouns ending in ... 22
elf, derivation 69
ellipsis of auxiliaries ... 256, 259
— — nouns with adj. 160
— — subject 148
empor 130
-en, -ern, suffixes 52
ent, prefix 119
entbehren, gen. or acc. 195
entgegen, preposition 217
entlang 111
entsagen 181
entsprechen, dat. 182
entweder 113
epithets only 164
Er meaning *you* 228
-er, noun suffix 48
— numeral forms in 71
— from names of towns ... 170
er, prefix 120
erbarmen, sich, gen. 197
Erbe, gender 38
— plural 28
erfreuen, sich, gen. or an 197
erinnern an 203
— sich, gen. or an 198
erhalten, derivation 93
ermangeln, gen. 197
ermahnen, gen. or an 198
ersäufen, derivation 98
erst 104
erwehren, sich, gen. 196
erz, prefix 140
es 55
— introductory 147, 230
— pleonastic 231
— representing a noun 229
— with impersonals ... 148, 230
ethic, dative 184
etliche 65
etwas 65

Page.

etwas Gutes 65, 192
every other day 226
Ew. 59
explosive sounds 5
extent, acc. of 173

-fach, suffix 71
factitive verbs 98
falls 304
fast 102
fehlschlagen 97
fehlt, es 196
Fels, declined 23
final sentences 294
finite verb 142
folgen, dat. 183
— personally in passive 258
folglich 107
for- (forbid, &c.) 123
Formwörter 11
fort 130
fractions 70
fragen, two acc. 176
freilich 107
freuen, sich, gen. or an 197
fricative sounds 5
Friede, plural 29
froh, gen. 197
from behind 206
— *under* 211
früh, compared 47
fühlen, with infin. 249
Fürst 13
Fuß, plurals 28
future, meaning probably ... 244
— present for 241
für 224
— und für 224

Gänsefüßchen 10
ganz, undeclined 170
gar, gar nicht 109
ge-, dropped in past part. 89
— prefix to nouns 140
— prefix to verbs 122
gefallen, derivation 122
— with dat. 182
gegen, prefix to nouns 140
— preposition 225
gegenüber, preposition 217
gehören, dat. or zu 222
Geisel (Geißel), gender 38

Page.

gelingt, es 70
gelten, für, &c. 150
gelüſtet, es, nach 198
gemäß 109, 217
gender 31
— double 38
genießen, acc. or gen. 197
genitive 188
— adverbial 199
— elliptical 193, 194
— objective 191
— of fulness 195
— of material 193
— of quality 193
— of separation 196
— or von 189
— partitive 191
— petrified 193
— possessive 190
— prepositions with 110
— Saxon 157, 189
— subjective 190
— with adjectives 198
— with verbs of feeling 196
genug, with genitive 192
geographical names, declined 28
— gender 33
geraten, derivation 122
gern, compared 47, 103
gerund 251
geſchieht, es 76
Geſicht, plurals 28
geſtehen, derivation 122
gewähren, derivation 122
Gewalt, plural 29
gewärtig, gen. 198
gewiß, gen. 198
gewohnt, acc. 178
— gen. or an 195
gewöhnen, an, zu 195
giebt, es 86, 177
gilt, es 177
giving, verbs of 179
glauben, with supine 250
gleichen, dat. 182
Gleichen, meines 194
Glück, plural 29
grauet, es, dat. 189
Grimm's law 5
groß, compared 46
großthun 97
Gunſt, plural 29

Page.

Gunſten, zu 110
gut, compared 46
gutheißen 97
gutturals 4

haben, conjugated 74
habhaft, gen. 198
-haft, suffix 54
Haft, gender 38
halb, undeclined 170
halben, halber 111
halten, für 152
handeln, conjugation 94
handhaben 97
harren, gen. or auf 198
Harz, gender 38
Heide, gender 38
Heiland, derivation 88
heißen, with inf. 249
-heit, suffix 50
helfen, with inf. 249
her, prefix 130
Herr, declined 15
Herz, declined 23
hin, prefix 130
hinter, prefix 138, 140
— preposition 206
hinterhalten, acc. and dat. ... 181
his 231
historical present 240
hoch, compared 46
hochachten 97
höchſt, höchſtens 103
Hochton 9
hoffen, gen. or auf 198
hören, with inf. 249
Horn, plurals 28
however, ſo 300
hübſch, derivation 53
hungert, es...mich 87
Hut, gender 38
hüten, ſich, *take care not* 250
hyphen 11

ich declined 55
-ich, -ig, gender 34
-icht, suffix 53
-ie, gender 34
-ier, gender 34
-ieren, verbs in 89
if omitted 304
— rendered by ſo 108

	Page.
-ig, suffix	52
Ihr, when used	228
Ihro	59
imperative	90
— substitutes for	245
— passive	258
— in oblique oration	286
imperfect and perfect	242
— subjunctive	91
impersonal use of verbs	148
— verbs	86
— — with acc.	176
— — with dat.	182
-in, suffix	49
-in, plural -innen	16
in, preposition	207
— prefix to nouns	140
indefinite pronouns	64
indem	252, 297
indeſſen	102, 297
infinitive	247
— gender	32
— or supine	248
— without zu	249
-ing, verbal noun in	251
-ing, suffix	50
inseparable prefixes	96, 117
— verbs	85
interrogation, oblique	288
interrogative pronouns	63
— sentences	269
intransitives, passive of	258
— with acc.	173
— with ſein	83, 256
-iren, verbs in	89
irgend ein	66
-iſch, suffix	53
iteratives	71
jammert, es, gen.	197
je.....deſto	114, 301
jeder, jedermann	66
— meaning *any*	238
jeglicher	66
jemand	65
jener	60
— and dieſer	232
Jeſus, declined	26
jetzt	107
Käſe, declension	23
Kein, keiner	64
-keit	50
Kiefer, gender	38
Koller, gender	38
kommen, conjugated	80
— um, *lose*	226
können	263
kraft, prep.	110
Kummer, plurals	28
Kunde, gender	38
kundig, gen.	195, 198
kurz, kurzlich	149
Labials	4
Laden, plurals	28
Land, plurals	28
längs	111
laſſen	265
— for imperative	245
— acc. and with inf.	177
Latin nouns declined	24
laut, prep.	110
lauter	170
Lautverſchiebung	6
le representing a noun	230
lebendig, accent	9
lehren, two acc.	175
— with inf.	249
-lei, numerals in	71
-lein, suffix	34, 50
Leiter, gender	38
lernen, with inf.	249
les Newton	155
-lich, adjectival suffix	54
— adverbial suffix	101
Liebe, plural	29
lieben, conjugated	77
-ling, suffix	50
Lob, plural	29
los, prefix	132
los, with acc.	178
machen, zu	152
— with inf.	249
mahnen an, with acc.	198
making, verbs of	151
-mal, -mäler	17
man	64
manch	66, 167
Mangel, gender	38
Mann, compounds	30
— plurals	28
Mark, gender	38

Page.

Maſt, gender 38
may have 263
measures, no plural of 29, 157
mehr, mehre, mehrere 169
— for comparative 165
— with genitive 192
Menſch, gender 38
Meſſer, gender 38
miauen, without ge 89
middle voice 258
miß, prefix to nouns 140
— prefix to verbs 96
mit, prefix to nouns 140
— prefix to verbs 132
— preposition 218
mitſamt 219
mittelſt 111
Mitgift, gender 39
mithin 107
mixed conjugation 95
— declension 24
modification 3
mögen 264
— for imperative 245
Moment, gender 38
Monat 20
Mond, plurals 28
mood, verbs of 94, 259
— inf. with verbs of ... 249, 259
moods 72
motion, verbs of 186, 255
most, a 165
müde, with acc. 178
multitude, nouns of 146
must have 260

nach, prefix to nouns 140
— prefix to verbs 132
— preposition 218
nachahmen, dat. or acc. 185
Nachbar, declined 24
nachmachen, dat. or acc. 185
nachſehen, acc. and dat. 186
nahe, compared 47
neben, prefix to nouns 140
Nebenton 9
nebſt 219
negative after als, than 300
nehmen, dative 181
neuter of persons 166
nichts 65
— Neues 65, 192

Page.

nieder, prefix 132
Niemand 65
-nis, suffix 20, 34, 51
noch 105
— nicht 105
nor 112
noun-endings 48
now 107
numerals 67
nun, nunmehr 107

ob, *whether* 281
ob, prefix to nouns 140
— prefix to verbs 132
obgleich, obſchon 307
Oberſt 15
object, nearer 173
— place of 270
— remoter 179
— infinitive as 249
— sentence as 279
objective genitive 191
obliegen 132
oblique oration 282
— — implied 290
offenbaren, ge or not 89
oft, compared 47
Ohm, gender 39
ohne 225
— daß 293
— with supine 251
o'nights 199
order of words 267
— irregularities of 274
Ort, plurals 28
orthography, new 6
Oſtern 30

Participation, genitive of 190
participles 88, 252
— as adjectives 253
— comparison of 165
— in *-dus* 252
— past for imperative 246
— — of neuter verbs 253
— — with verbs of motion 254
— present loosely used 253
partitive genitive 191
passive conjugated 81
passive impersonal, use of 148, 258
— of verbs with dative 186
— with ſein 83, 256

	Page.
past indicative formation	91
perfect and imperfect	242
— double	244
— infinitive	250
petition, oblique	287
personal pronouns	55
— — dative of	184
— — as antecedent	232
Pfau, declined	24
Pfingſten	30
pflegen, gen. or acc.	197
pleasing, verbs of	152
pluperfect, double	244
plurals, borrowed	29
— double	28
— without singular	30
Pommer, declined	15
poſaunen, without ge	89
possessive adjectives	57
— genitive	190
— pronouns	58
powers, algebraical	70
predicate	142
— secondary	162
prefixes of nouns	139
— of verbs	96, 117
— accent of	96
preisgeben	97
prepositions	109, 200
present	240
— for future	241
— for imperative	246
— for English perfect	241
— historical	240
primus fecit	109
Prinz	14
pronominal verbs	84
pronouns	55, 227
proper names declined	26
— article with	155
prophezeien, without ge	89
quality, genitive of	193
quantity, adverbs of	192
questions, indirect	288
— repeated	289
Rat, plural	28
ratſchlagen	97
Raub, plural	28
reciprocal pronouns	66, 231
reden, conjugated	94
reduplicating verbs	93
reflexive pronouns	56
— verbs	84
— — as middle	258
reich an	196, 203
Reis, gender	39
relation, dative of	183
relative pronouns	62, 232
roots, algebraical	70
— of verbs, gender	33
rühmen, ſich, gen., &c.	197
s, adverbial ending	101
— plurals in	25
-ſal, suffix	30, 34, 52
-ſam, suffix	53
ſamt	219
ſatt, with acc.	178
Satzzeichen	10
Sau, plurals	28
Saxon genitive	157, 189
Schade, declined	23
ſchaden, dat.	183
ſchämen, ſich, gen. or über	197
-ſchaft, suffix	34, 51
Schenk, gender	39
ſcheint, es, dat.	180
ſcheuen, ſich, gen. or vor	196
ſchlechterdings	102
Schmuck, plural	29
Schnur, plurals	28
Schild, gender	39
ſchon	104
ſchonen, gen. or acc.	196
ſchuldig, gen. or acc.	195
ſchwindelt, es, dat.	182
Se., Sr., abbrev.	59
See, gender	39
Segen, plural	29
ſehen, with inf.	249
ſehr	102
ſei es denn....daß	308
ſein, auxiliary	255
— conjugated	75
—, impersonal with dat.	182
— passive with	83, 256
ſeit	220
— ſeitdem, tenses with	297
-ſel, suffix	34, 52
ſelbander	71
ſelber, ſelbſt	57
separable prefixes	125

Page.

separable verbs 85
sequence of tenses 286
ſetzt, es 177
should have 260
ſich 56
— reciprocal 56, 231
Sie, *you* 228
since 116
ſo 108
— in dependent sentence ... 300
ſogar 108
ſolch 62, 169
ſollen 262
some 65
sooner, no...than 298
ſonder 225
ſondern 113
ſonſt 109
ſpazieren, with gehen, &c. 249
Sporn, plural 24
ſprechen, conjugated 79
ſprengen, derivation 98
Stand halten, dat. 183
ſtatt 110
— with supine 251
ſtattfinden 97
ſtattgefunden 254
ſterben, genitive, accusative... 175
— an 203
Steuer, gender 39
Stift, gender 39
ſtolz auf 197, 206
stops 10
strong conjugation 73, 79, 90
— declension 13
— part. from weak verbs ... 99
Strauß, plurals 28
Streit, plural 31
ſtürbe, compared with ſtarb ... 91
subject 142, 145
— ellipsis of 148
— sentence as 279
subjective genitive 190
such 62, 169
such as 237
subjunctive in app. to dadurch 280
— in cond. sent. 303
— in consecutive sent. 291
— in final sent. 294
— in oblique oration 288
— with bis, ehe 297
subordinative conjunctions .. 112

Page

substantival sentences 219
suffixes of nouns, &c. 48
superlative absolute 164
— adverbs 103
— formation 45
supine 248
— in consecutive sent. 293
— in final sent. 295
— in substantival sent. 281
ß replaced by s 7

t euphonic 56
taking away, verbs of 180
teaching, verbs of 175
Teil, compounds of 39
— nehmen, an 195
— zu, werden 183
teilhaftig 195
tenses, use of 72, 239
— inconsistent in cond. sent. 305
th, retained 7
the.....the 114
then 107
therefore 107
Thor, gender 39
thun, conjugated 94
titles, with plural verb 148
-tiv, suffix 21
Tod, plural 30
Todes, des, ſein 194
towns, names of gender 33
— syntax 155
träumt, es, dat. 182
trees, gender 33
trotz, preposition 110
Tuch, plurals 29
tum, plural tümer 16
— suffix 51
tutoyer 229

über, prefix 136
— preposition 209
überall 109
überdrüſſig, acc. 178
überhaupt 109
— nicht 109
übrigens 109
um, prefix 137
— preposition 226
— with supine 251
Umlaut 3
umſonſt 107

	Page.
um.. willen	110
unabsehbar	126
unbeschadet	110
un-, prefix	141
Unbill, plural	30
unerachtet	110
unfern	110
-ung, suffix	49
ungeachtet	110
unter, prefix to nouns	141
— prefix to verbs	138
— preposition	211
unweit	110
unwürdig, gen.	199
ur-, prefix	141
ver-, prefix	123
verabschieden	97
Verdienst, gender	39
Verdruß, plural	30
vergessen, gen. or acc.	198
vergeben	125
verhören	125
verlegen	125
verlustig, gen.	198
vermögen	110
versehen	125
— sich, gen.	198
verteidigen, derivation	124
vertrauen, dat.	183
vertreten	125
verzeihen, acc. and dat.	180
viel, vieles	168
— compared	46
voll, prefix	96
— voller with gen.	195
von	220
— or genitive	189
vor, prefix to nouns	141
— prefix to verbs	133
— preposition	212
vorbehalten	97
vorder, prefix	141
vorgeben, with supine	250
Vorwand, gender	39
während, conjunction	297
— preposition	110
wahrnehmen	97
wandern, conjugated	94
wann	108
warten, gen. or auf	198
-wärts, suffix	101
was, interrogative	63
— relative	236
— für ein	63
weder, noch,	112, 146
wegen	110
wehren, dat.	183
— sich, gen.	196
weigern, sich, gen.	196
Weihe, gender	39
weil and da	299
weil, *while*	297
weissagen	97
welcher	63
— or der	234
wenn, *when*	296
— auch, gleich	306
wenig, weniges	168
— compared	47
wenigstens	103
wer, declined	63
— interrogative	238
— relative	235
werden, app. comp. with	150
— conjugated	76
— with dat.	180, 182
— with zu	150
wert, gen. or acc.	199
whatever	63
when	108, 296
— rendered by worauf	299
— with antecedent	298
—, *only*	298
whenever, wherever	299
whether...or	264
whoever	63
wider, prefix	125
— preposition	225
widern, dat.	182
wie	296
— er, sie, es, *such as*	237
wieder, prefix	133
wissen, conjugated	90
wo auch, wohin auch	299
wo, compounds of	237
wofern	304
wohl	106
— compared	47
wohlwollen	97
wollen	266
worauf	299
Wort, plurals	29

	Page.
würdig, gen.	199
würdigen, gen.	199
you, variously rendered	227
your, like ethic dat.	185
Zank, plural	30
zeigen, ſich als	152
ziemen, dat.	183
Zierrat, declined	24
-zig, numeral suffix	69
Zoll, plurals	29
zu, prefix	133
— preposition	221
zuerſt (*primus fecit*)	109
zufolge	110
zunächſt, adverb (*first*)	109
— preposition	111
zürnen, dat.	183
zuwider	111
zwar	107
zwiſchen	213
zwölf, derivation	69

ALLAMA IQBAL'S PERSONAL COLLECTION No.

WERTHEIMER, LEA & CO., PRINTERS, LONDON.

430 R E2S

This book was taken from the Library on the date last stamped. A fine of one anna will be charged for each day the book is kept overtime. M.A. SECTION

16359 / 3876

by A. W. DENNIS.

OTTO (DR. E.) FRENCH CONVERSATION GRAMMAR. Thirteenth Edition. 8vo. Cloth, 4s. Key, Boards, 2s.

MATERIALS FOR TRANSLATING ENGLISH ... With Grammatical Notes and a Vocabulary. Third Edi...

PAC... R... ...GENDERS IN

PA...

PI...

S...

...ACRE.

M.A. SECTION
430
E 2 5
Eve.
School German Gramma

ISLAMIA
COLLEGE
LIBRARY,
LAHORE.

Extract from the Rules:—

Books are issued for fourteen days only.

A fine of one anna per day will be charged for each volume kept over time.

Borrowers will be held responsible for any damage done to books while in their possession.